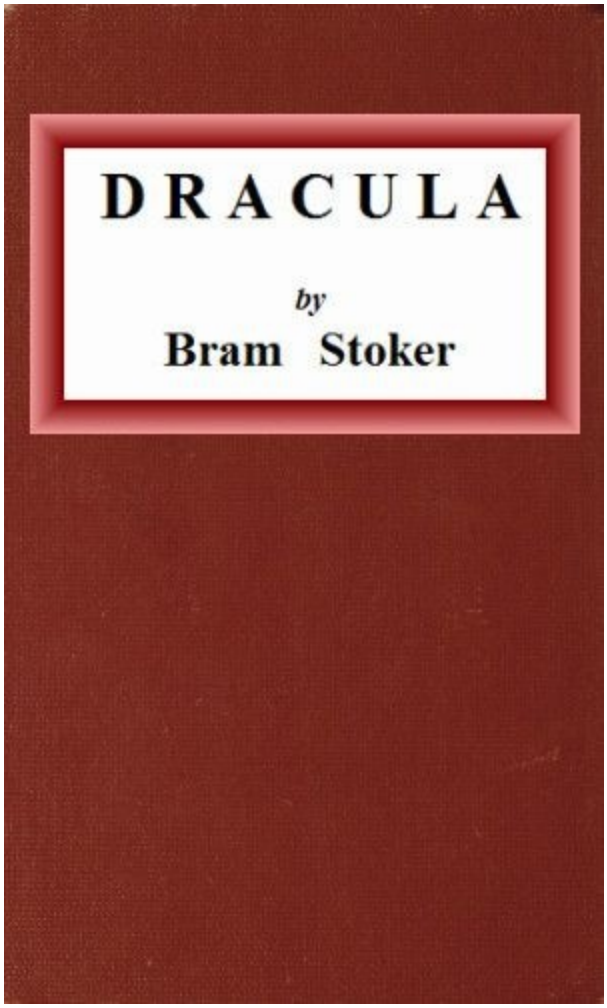
Dracula

Bram Stoker



The Project Gutenberg EBook of Dracula, by Bram Stoker

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with

almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or

re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included

with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org/license

Title: Dracula

Author: Bram Stoker

Release Date: August 16, 2013 [EBook #345]

Language: English

*** START OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK DRACULA ***

Produced by Chuck Greif and the Online Distributed

Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net (This file was

produced from images generously made available by The

Internet Archive)

Every attempt has been made to replicate the original as printed. Some

typographical errors have been corrected; a list follows the text.

(etext transcriber's note)

D R A C U L A

D R A C U L A

by

Bram Stoker

colophon

NEW YORK

GROSSET & DUNLAP

Publishers

Copyright, 1897, in the United States of America, according to Act of Congress, by Bram Stoker

[*All rights reserved.*]

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES

AT

THE COUNTRY LIFE PRESS, GARDEN CITY, N.Y.

TO

MY DEAR FRIEND

HOMMY-BEG

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

Page

Jonathan Harker’s Journal

1

CHAPTER II

Jonathan Harker’s Journal

14

CHAPTER III

Jonathan Harker’s Journal

26

CHAPTER IV

Jonathan Harker’s Journal

38

CHAPTER V

Letters—Lucy and Mina

51

CHAPTER VI

Mina Murray’s Journal

59

CHAPTER VII

Cutting from “The Dailygraph,” 8 August

71

CHAPTER VIII

Mina Murray’s Journal

84

CHAPTER IX

Mina Murray’s Journal

98

CHAPTER X

Mina Murray’s Journal

111

CHAPTER XI

Lucy Westenra’s Diary

124

CHAPTER XII

Dr. Seward’s Diary

136

CHAPTER XIII

Dr. Seward’s Diary

152

CHAPTER XIV

Mina Harker’s Journal

167

CHAPTER XV

Dr. Seward’s Diary

181

CHAPTER XVI

Dr. Seward’s Diary

194

CHAPTER XVII

Dr. Seward’s Diary

204

CHAPTER XVIII

Dr. Seward’s Diary

216

CHAPTER XIX

Jonathan Harker’s Journal

231

CHAPTER XX

Jonathan Harker’s Journal

243

CHAPTER XXI

Dr. Seward’s Diary

256

CHAPTER XXII

Jonathan Harker’s Journal

269

CHAPTER XXIII

Dr. Seward’s Diary

281

CHAPTER XXIV

Dr. Seward’s Phonograph Diary, spoken by Van Helsing 294

CHAPTER XXV

Dr. Seward’s Diary

308

CHAPTER XXVI

Dr. Seward’s Diary

322

CHAPTER XXVII

Mina Harker’s Journal

338

D R A C U L A

CHAPTER I

JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL

(*Kept in shorthand.*)

3 May. Bistritz. —Left Munich at 8:35 P. M., on 1st May, arriving at Vienna early next morning; should have arrived at 6:46, but train was an hour late.

Buda-Pesth seems a wonderful place, from the glimpse which I got of it from the

train and the little I could walk through the streets. I feared to go very far from

the station, as we had arrived late and would start as near the correct time as possible. The impression I had was that we were leaving the West and entering

the East; the most western of splendid bridges over the Danube, which is here of

noble width and depth, took us among the traditions of Turkish rule.

We left in pretty good time, and came after nightfall to Klausenburgh. Here I

stopped for the night at the Hotel Royale. I had for dinner, or rather supper, a chicken done up some way with red pepper, which was very good but thirsty.

(*Mem.* , get recipe for Mina.) I asked the waiter, and he said it was called

“paprika hendl,” and that, as it was a national dish, I should be able to get it anywhere along the Carpathians. I found my smattering of German very useful

here; indeed, I don’t know how I should be able to get on without it.

Having had some time at my disposal when in London, I had visited the

British Museum, and made search among the books and maps in the library

regarding Transylvania; it had struck me that some foreknowledge of the country

could hardly fail to have some importance in dealing with a nobleman of that country. I find that the district he named is in the extreme east of the country, just

on the borders of three states, Transylvania, Moldavia and Bukovina, in the

midst of the Carpathian mountains; one of the wildest and least known portions

of Europe. I was not able to light on any map or work giving the exact locality of

the Castle Dracula, as there are no maps of this country as yet to compare with

our own Ordnance Survey maps; but I found that Bistritz, the post town named

by Count Dracula, is a fairly well-known place. I shall enter here some of my notes, as they may refresh my memory when I talk over my travels with Mina.

In the population of Transylvania there are four distinct nationalities: Saxons

in the South, and mixed with them the Wallachs, who are the descendants of the

Dacians; Magyars in the West, and Szekelys in the East and North. I am going

among the latter, who claim to be descended from Attila and the Huns. This may

be so, for when the Magyars conquered the country in the eleventh century they found the Huns settled in it. I read that every known superstition in the world is

gathered into the horseshoe of the Carpathians, as if it were the centre of some

sort of imaginative whirlpool; if so my stay may be very interesting. (*Mem.* , I must ask the Count all about them.)

I did not sleep well, though my bed was comfortable enough, for I had all sorts of queer dreams. There was a dog howling all night under my window,

which may have had something to do with it; or it may have been the paprika,

for I had to drink up all the water in my carafe, and was still thirsty. Towards morning I slept and was wakened by the continuous knocking at my door, so I

guess I must have been sleeping soundly then. I had for breakfast more paprika,

and a sort of porridge of maize flour which they said was “mamaliga,” and egg-

plant stuffed with forcemeat, a very excellent dish, which they call “impletata.”

(*Mem.* , get recipe for this also.) I had to hurry breakfast, for the train started a little before eight, or rather it ought to have done so, for after rushing to the station at 7:30 I had to sit in the carriage for more than an hour before we began

to move. It seems to me that the further east you go the more unpunctual are the

trains. What ought they to be in China?

All day long we seemed to dawdle through a country which was full of

beauty of every kind. Sometimes we saw little towns or castles on the top of steep hills such as we see in old missals; sometimes we ran by rivers and streams

which seemed from the wide stony margin on each side of them to be subject to

great floods. It takes a lot of water, and running strong, to sweep the outside edge

of a river clear. At every station there were groups of people, sometimes crowds,

and in all sorts of attire. Some of them were just like the peasants at home or those I saw coming through France and Germany, with short jackets and round

hats and home-made trousers; but others were very picturesque. The women

looked pretty, except when you got near them, but they were very clumsy about

the waist. They had all full white sleeves of some kind or other, and most of them had big belts with a lot of strips of something fluttering from them like the

dresses in a ballet, but of course there were petticoats under them. The strangest

figures we saw were the Slovaks, who were more barbarian than the rest, with their big cow-boy hats, great baggy dirty-

white trousers, white linen shirts, and

enormous heavy leather belts, nearly a foot wide, all studded over with brass nails. They wore high boots, with their trousers tucked into them, and had long

black hair and heavy black moustaches. They are very picturesque, but do not look prepossessing. On the stage they would be set down at once as some old Oriental band of brigands. They are, however, I am told, very harmless and

rather wanting in natural self-assertion.

It was on the dark side of twilight when we got to Bistritz, which is a very interesting old place. Being practically on the frontier—for the Borgo Pass leads

from it into Bukovina—it has had a very stormy existence, and it certainly shows

marks of it. Fifty years ago a series of great fires took place, which made terrible

havoc on five separate occasions. At the very beginning of the seventeenth

century it underwent a siege of three weeks and lost 13,000 people, the

casualties of war proper being assisted by famine and disease.

Count Dracula had directed me to go to the Golden Krone Hotel, which I

found, to my great delight, to be thoroughly old-fashioned, for of course I wanted to see all I could of the ways of the

country. I was evidently expected, for

when I got near the door I faced a cheery-looking elderly woman in the usual peasant dress—white undergarment with long double apron, front, and back, of

coloured stuff fitting almost too tight for modesty. When I came close she bowed

and said, “The Herr Englishman?” “Yes,” I said, “Jonathan Harker.” She smiled,

and gave some message to an elderly man in white shirt-sleeves, who had

followed her to the door. He went, but immediately returned with a letter:—

“My Friend.—Welcome to the Carpathians. I am anxiously expecting you.

Sleep well to-night. At three to-morrow the diligence will start for Bukovina; a

place on it is kept for you. At the Borgo Pass my carriage will await you and will

bring you to me. I trust that your journey from London has been a happy one, and that you will enjoy your stay in my beautiful land.

“Your friend,

“DRACULA.”

4 May. —I found that my landlord had got a letter from the Count, directing

him to secure the best place on the coach for me; but on making inquiries as to

details he seemed somewhat reticent, and pretended that he could not understand

my German. This could not be true, because up to then he had understood it perfectly; at least, he answered my questions exactly as if he did. He and his wife, the old lady who had received me, looked at each other in a frightened sort

of way. He mumbled out that the money had been sent in a letter, and that was

all he knew. When I asked him if he knew Count Dracula, and could tell me anything of his castle, both he and his wife crossed themselves, and, saying that

they knew nothing at all, simply refused to speak further. It was so near the time

of starting that I had no time to ask any one else, for it was all very mysterious

and not by any means comforting.

Just before I was leaving, the old lady came up to my room and said in a very

hysterical way:

“Must you go? Oh! young Herr, must you go?” She was in such an excited

state that she seemed to have lost her grip of what German she knew, and mixed

it all up with some other language which I did not know at all. I was just able to

follow her by asking many questions. When I told her that I must go at once, and

that I was engaged on important business, she asked again:

“Do you know what day it is?” I answered that it was the fourth of May. She

shook her head as she said again:

“Oh, yes! I know that! I know that, but do you know what day it is?” On my

saying that I did not understand, she went on:

“It is the eve of St. George’s Day. Do you not know that to-night, when the

clock strikes midnight, all the evil things in the world will have full sway? Do you know where you are going, and what you are going to?” She was in such evident distress that I tried to comfort her, but without effect. Finally she went down on her knees and implored me not to go; at least to wait a day or two before starting. It was all very ridiculous but I did not feel comfortable.

However, there was business to be done, and I could allow nothing to interfere

with it. I therefore tried to raise her up, and said, as gravely as I could, that I thanked her, but my duty was imperative, and that I must go. She then rose and

dried her eyes, and taking a crucifix from her neck offered it to me. I did not know what to do, for, as an English Churchman, I have been taught to regard such things as in some measure idolatrous, and yet it seemed so ungracious to refuse an old lady meaning so well and in such a state of mind. She saw, I suppose, the doubt in my face, for she put the rosary round my neck, and said,

“For your mother’s sake,” and went out of the room. I am writing up this part of

the diary whilst I am waiting for the coach, which is, of course, late; and the crucifix is still round my neck. Whether it is the old lady’s fear, or the many ghostly traditions of this place, or the crucifix itself, I do not know, but I am not

feeling nearly as easy in my mind as usual. If this book should ever reach Mina

before I do, let it bring my good-bye. Here comes the coach!

5 May. The Castle. —The grey of the morning has passed, and the sun is high

over the distant horizon, which seems jagged, whether with trees or hills I know

not, for it is so far off that big things and little are mixed. I am not sleepy, and, as I am not to be called till I awake, naturally I write till sleep comes. There are many odd things to put down, and, lest who reads them may fancy that I dined

too well before I left Bistritz, let me put down my dinner exactly. I dined on what they called “robber steak”—bits of bacon, onion, and beef, seasoned with

red pepper, and strung on sticks and roasted over the fire, in the simple style of the London cat's meat! The wine was Golden Mediasch, which produces a queer

sting on the tongue, which is, however, not disagreeable. I had only a couple of

glasses of this, and nothing else.

When I got on the coach the driver had not taken his seat, and I saw him talking with the landlady. They were evidently talking of me, for every now and

then they looked at me, and some of the people who were sitting on the bench

outside the door—which they call by a name meaning "word-bearer"—came and

listened, and then looked at me, most of them pityingly. I could hear a lot of words often repeated, queer words, for there were many nationalities in the

crowd; so I quietly got my polyglot dictionary from my bag and looked them out. I must say they were not cheering to me, for amongst them were "Ordog"—

Satan, "pokol"—hell, "stregoica"—witch, "vrolok" and "vlkoslak"—both of

which mean the same thing, one being Slovak and the other Servian for

something that is either were-wolf or vampire. (*Mem.* , I must ask the Count about these superstitions)

When we started, the crowd round the inn door, which had by this time

swelled to a considerable size, all made the sign of the cross and pointed two fingers towards me. With some difficulty I got a fellow-passenger to tell me what they meant; he would not answer at first, but on learning that I was English, he explained that it was a charm or guard against the evil eye. This was

not very pleasant for me, just starting for an unknown place to meet an unknown

man; but every one seemed so kind-hearted, and so sorrowful, and so

sympathetic that I could not but be touched. I shall never forget the last glimpse

which I had of the inn-yard and its crowd of picturesque figures, all crossing themselves, as they stood round the wide archway, with its background of rich foliage of oleander and orange trees in green tubs clustered in the centre of the

yard. Then our driver, whose wide linen drawers covered the whole front of the

box-seat—“gotza” they call them—cracked his big whip over his four small

horses, which ran abreast, and we set off on our journey.

I soon lost sight and recollection of ghostly fears in the beauty of the scene as

we drove along, although had I known the language, or rather languages, which

my fellow-passengers were speaking, I might not have been able to throw them

off so easily. Before us lay a green sloping land full of forests and woods, with

here and there steep hills, crowned with clumps of trees or with farmhouses, the

blank gable end to the road. There was everywhere a bewildering mass of fruit

blossom—apple, plum, pear, cherry; and as we drove by I could see the green grass under the trees spangled with the fallen petals. In and out amongst these

green hills of what they call here the “Mittel Land” ran the road, losing itself as it swept round the grassy curve, or was shut out by the straggling ends of pine

woods, which here and there ran down the hillsides like tongues of flame. The road was rugged, but still we seemed to fly over it with a feverish haste. I could

not understand then what the haste meant, but the driver was evidently bent on

losing no time in reaching Borgo Prund. I was told that this road is in

summertime excellent, but that it had not yet been put in order after the winter

snows. In this respect it is different from the general run of roads in the Carpathians, for it is an old tradition that they are not to be kept in too good order. Of old the Hospadars would not repair them, lest the Turk should think that they

were preparing to bring in foreign troops, and so hasten the war which

was always really at loading point.

Beyond the green swelling hills of the Mittel Land rose mighty slopes of

forest up to the lofty steeps of the Carpathians themselves. Right and left of us

they towered, with the afternoon sun falling full upon them and bringing out all

the glorious colours of this beautiful range, deep blue and purple in the shadows

of the peaks, green and brown where grass and rock mingled, and an endless perspective of jagged rock and pointed crags, till these were themselves lost in the distance, where the snowy peaks rose grandly. Here and there seemed mighty

rifts in the mountains, through which, as the sun began to sink, we saw now and

again the white gleam of falling water. One of my companions touched my arm

as we swept round the base of a hill and opened up the lofty, snow-covered peak

of a mountain, which seemed, as we wound on our serpentine way, to be right before us:—

“Look! Isten szek!”—“God’s seat!”—and he crossed himself reverently.

As we wound on our endless way, and the sun sank lower and lower behind

us, the shadows of the evening began to creep round us. This was emphasised by

the fact that the snowy mountain-top still held the sunset, and seemed to glow out with a delicate cool pink. Here and there we passed Cszeks and Slovaks, all

in picturesque attire, but I noticed that goitre was painfully prevalent. By the roadside were many crosses, and as we swept by, my companions all crossed

themselves. Here and there was a peasant man or woman kneeling before a

shrine, who did not even turn round as we approached, but seemed in the self-

surrender of devotion to have neither eyes nor ears for the outer world. There were many things new to me: for instance, hay-ricks in the trees, and here and

there very beautiful masses of weeping birch, their white stems shining like silver through the delicate green of the leaves. Now and again we passed a leiter-wagon—the ordinary peasant’s cart—with its long, snake-like vertebra,

calculated to suit the inequalities of the road. On this were sure to be seated quite a group of home-coming peasants, the Cszeks with their white, and the Slovaks

with their coloured, sheepskins, the latter carrying lance-fashion their long

staves, with axe at end. As the evening fell it began to get very cold, and the growing twilight seemed to merge into one dark mistiness the gloom of the trees,

oak, beech, and pine, though in the valleys which ran deep between the spurs of

the hills, as we ascended through the Pass, the dark firs stood out here and there

against the background of late-lying snow. Sometimes, as the road was cut

through the pine woods that seemed in the darkness to be closing down upon us,

great masses of greyness, which here and there bestrewed the trees, produced a

peculiarly weird and solemn effect, which carried on the thoughts and grim

fancies engendered earlier in the evening, when the falling sunset threw into strange relief the ghost-like clouds which amongst the Carpathians seem to wind

ceaselessly through the valleys. Sometimes the hills were so steep that, despite

our driver’s haste, the horses could only go slowly. I wished to get down and walk up them, as we do at home, but the driver would not hear of it. “No, no,” he

said; “you must not walk here; the dogs are too fierce”; and then he added, with

what he evidently meant for grim pleasantry—for he looked round to catch the

approving smile of the rest—“and you may have enough of such matters before

you go to sleep.” The only stop he would make was a moment’s pause to light

his lamps.

When it grew dark there seemed to be some excitement amongst the

passengers, and they kept speaking to him, one after the other, as though urging

him to further speed. He lashed the horses unmercifully with his long whip, and

with wild cries of encouragement urged them on to further exertions. Then

through the darkness I could see a sort of patch of grey light ahead of us, as though there were a cleft in the hills. The excitement of the passengers grew greater; the crazy coach rocked on its great leather springs, and swayed like a boat tossed on a stormy sea. I had to hold on. The road grew more level, and we

appeared to fly along. Then the mountains seemed to come nearer to us on each

side and to frown down upon us; we were entering on the Borgo Pass. One by

one several of the passengers offered me gifts, which they pressed upon me with

an earnestness which would take no denial; these were certainly of an odd and varied kind, but each was given in simple good faith, with a kindly word, and a

blessing, and that strange mixture of fear-meaning movements which I had seen

outside the hotel at Bistritz—the sign of the cross and the guard against the evil

eye. Then, as we flew along, the driver leaned forward, and on each side the passengers, craning over the edge of the coach, peered eagerly into the darkness.

It was evident that something very exciting was either happening or expected, but though I asked each passenger, no one would give me the slightest

explanation. This state of excitement kept on for some little time; and at last we

saw before us the Pass opening out on the eastern side. There were dark, rolling

clouds overhead, and in the air the heavy, oppressive sense of thunder. It seemed

as though the mountain range had separated two atmospheres, and that now we

had got into the thunderous one. I was now myself looking out for the

conveyance which was to take me to the Count. Each moment I expected to see

the glare of lamps through the blackness; but all was dark. The only light was the

flickering rays of our own lamps, in which the steam from our hard-driven

horses rose in a white cloud. We could see now the sandy road lying white before us, but there was on it no sign of a vehicle. The passengers drew back with a sigh of gladness, which seemed to mock my own disappointment. I was

already thinking what I had best do, when the driver, looking at his watch, said

to the others something which I could hardly hear, it was spoken so quietly and

in so low a tone; I thought it was “An hour less than the time.” Then turning to

me, he said in German worse than my own:—

“There is no carriage here. The Herr is not expected after all. He will now come on to Bukovina, and return to-morrow or the next day; better the next day.”

Whilst he was speaking the horses began to neigh and snort and plunge wildly,

so that the driver had to hold them up. Then, amongst a chorus of screams from

the peasants and a universal crossing of themselves, a calèche, with four horses,

drove up behind us, overtook us, and drew up beside the coach. I could see from

the flash of our lamps, as the rays fell on them, that the horses were coal-black

and splendid animals. They were driven by a tall man, with a long brown beard

and a great black hat, which seemed to hide his face from us. I could only see the

gleam of a pair of very bright eyes, which seemed red in the lamplight, as he turned to us. He said to the driver:—

“You are early to-night, my friend.” The man stammered in reply:—

“The English Herr was in a hurry,” to which the stranger replied:—

“That is why, I suppose, you wished him to go on to Bukovina. You cannot

deceive me, my friend; I know too much, and my horses are swift.” As he spoke

he smiled, and the lamplight fell on a hard-looking mouth, with very red lips and

sharp-looking teeth, as white as ivory. One of my companions whispered to

another the line from Burger’s “Lenore”:—

“Denn die Todten reiten schnell”—

(“For the dead travel fast.”)

The strange driver evidently heard the words, for he looked up with a gleaming smile. The passenger turned his face away, at the same time putting out his two

fingers and crossing himself. “Give me the Herr’s luggage,” said the driver; and

with exceeding alacrity my bags were handed out and put in the calèche. Then I

descended from the side of the coach, as the calèche was close alongside, the driver helping me with a hand which caught my arm in a grip of steel; his strength must have been prodigious. Without a word he shook his reins, the

horses turned, and we swept into the darkness of the Pass. As I looked back I saw the steam from the horses of the coach by the light of the lamps, and projected against it the figures of my late companions crossing themselves. Then

the driver cracked his whip and called to his horses, and off they swept on their

way to Bukovina. As they sank into the darkness I felt a strange chill, and a lonely feeling came over me; but a cloak was thrown over my shoulders, and a

rug across my knees, and the driver said in excellent German:—

“The night is chill, mein Herr, and my master the Count bade me take all care

of you. There is a flask of slivovitz (the plum brandy of the country) underneath

the seat, if you should require it.” I did not take any, but it was a comfort to know it was there all the same. I felt a little strangely, and not a little frightened.

I think had there been any alternative I should have taken it, instead of

prosecuting that unknown night journey. The carriage went at a hard pace

straight along, then we made a complete turn and went along another straight road. It seemed to me that we were simply going over and over the same ground

again; and so I took note of some salient point, and found that this was so. I would have liked to have asked the driver what this all meant, but I really feared

to do so, for I thought that, placed as I was, any protest would have had no effect

in case there had been an intention to delay. By-and-by, however, as I was curious to know how time was passing, I struck a match, and by its flame looked

at my watch; it was within a few minutes of midnight. This gave me a sort of shock, for I suppose the general superstition about midnight was increased by my recent experiences. I waited with a sick feeling of suspense.

Then a dog began to howl somewhere in a farmhouse far down the road—a

long, agonised wailing, as if from fear. The sound was taken up by another dog,

and then another and another, till, borne on the wind which now sighed softly through the Pass, a wild howling began, which seemed to come from all over the

country, as far as the imagination could grasp it through the gloom of the night.

At the first howl the horses began to strain and rear, but the driver spoke to them

soothingly, and they quieted down, but shivered and sweated as though after a runaway from sudden fright. Then, far off in the distance, from the mountains on

each side of us began a louder and a sharper howling—that of wolves—which affected both the horses and myself in the same way—for I was minded to jump

from the calèche and run, whilst they reared again and plunged madly, so that the

driver had to use all his great strength to keep them from bolting. In a few minutes, however, my own ears got accustomed to the sound, and the horses so

far became quiet that the driver was able to descend and to stand before them.

He petted and soothed them, and whispered something in their ears, as I have heard of horse-tamers doing, and with extraordinary effect, for under his caresses

they became quite manageable again, though they still trembled. The driver

again took his seat, and shaking his reins, started off at a great pace. This time,

after going to the far side of the Pass, he suddenly turned down a narrow roadway which ran sharply to the right.

Soon we were hemmed in with trees, which in places arched right over the

roadway till we passed as through a tunnel; and again great frowning rocks

guarded us boldly on either side. Though we were in shelter, we could hear the

rising wind, for it moaned and whistled through the rocks, and the branches of the trees crashed together as we swept along. It grew colder and colder still, and

fine, powdery snow began to fall, so that soon we and all around us were

covered with a white blanket. The keen wind still carried the howling of the dogs, though this grew fainter as we went on our way. The baying of the wolves

sounded nearer and nearer, as though they were closing round on us from every

side. I grew dreadfully afraid, and the horses shared my fear. The driver,

however, was not in the least disturbed; he kept turning his head to left and right,

but I could not see anything through the darkness.

Suddenly, away on our left, I saw a faint flickering blue flame. The driver saw it at the same moment; he at once checked the horses, and, jumping to the

ground, disappeared into the darkness. I did not know what to do, the less as the

howling of the wolves grew closer; but while I wondered the driver suddenly appeared again, and without a word took his seat, and we resumed our journey. I

think I must have fallen asleep and kept dreaming of the incident, for it seemed

to be repeated endlessly, and now looking back, it is like a sort of awful nightmare. Once the flame appeared so near the road, that even in the darkness

around us I could watch the driver’s motions. He went rapidly to where the blue

flame arose—it must have been very faint, for it did not seem to illumine the place around it at all—and gathering a few stones, formed them into some

device. Once there appeared a strange optical effect: when he stood between me

and the flame he did not obstruct it, for I could see its ghostly flicker all the same. This startled me, but as the effect was only momentary, I took it that my

eyes deceived me straining through the darkness. Then for a time there were no blue flames, and we sped onwards through the gloom, with the howling of the wolves around us, as though they were following in a moving circle.

At last there came a time when the driver went further afield than he had yet

gone, and during his absence, the horses began to tremble worse than ever and to

snort and scream with fright. I could not see any cause for it, for the howling of

the wolves had ceased altogether; but just then the moon, sailing through the black clouds, appeared behind the jagged crest of a beetling, pine-clad rock, and

by its light I saw around us a ring of wolves, with white teeth and lolling red tongues, with long, sinewy limbs and shaggy hair. They were a hundred times more terrible in the grim silence which held them than even when they howled.

For myself, I felt a sort of paralysis of fear. It is only when a man feels himself

face to face with such horrors that he can understand their true import.

All at once the wolves began to howl as though the moonlight had had some

peculiar effect on them. The horses jumped about and reared, and looked

helplessly round with eyes that rolled in a way painful to see; but the living ring

of terror encompassed them on every side; and they had perforce to remain

within it. I called to the coachman to come, for it seemed to me that our only chance was to try to break out through the ring and to aid his approach. I shouted

and beat the side of the calèche, hoping by the noise to scare the wolves from that side, so as to give him a chance of reaching the trap. How he came there, I

know not, but I heard his voice raised in a tone of imperious command, and looking towards the sound, saw him stand in the roadway. As he swept his long

arms, as though brushing aside some impalpable obstacle, the wolves fell back

and back further still. Just then a heavy cloud passed across the face of the moon, so that we were again in darkness.

When I could see again the driver was climbing into the calèche, and the

wolves had disappeared. This was all so strange and uncanny that a dreadful fear

came upon me, and I was afraid to speak or move. The time seemed interminable

as we swept on our way, now in almost complete darkness, for the rolling clouds

obscured the moon. We kept on ascending, with occasional periods of quick

descent, but in the main always ascending. Suddenly, I became conscious of the

fact that the driver was in the act of pulling up the horses in the courtyard of a

vast ruined castle, from whose tall black windows came no ray of light, and whose broken battlements showed a jagged

line against the moonlit sky.

CHAPTER II

JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL— *continued*

5 May. —I must have been asleep, for certainly if I had been fully awake I must have noticed the approach of such a remarkable place. In the gloom the courtyard looked of considerable size, and as several dark ways led from it under

great round arches, it perhaps seemed bigger than it really is. I have not yet been

able to see it by daylight.

When the calèche stopped, the driver jumped down and held out his hand to

assist me to alight. Again I could not but notice his prodigious strength. His hand

actually seemed like a steel vice that could have crushed mine if he had chosen.

Then he took out my traps, and placed them on the ground beside me as I stood

close to a great door, old and studded with large iron nails, and set in a projecting

doorway of massive stone. I could see even in the dim light that the stone was

massively carved, but that the carving had been much worn by time and weather.

As I stood, the driver jumped again into his seat and shook the reins; the horses

started forward, and trap and all disappeared down one of the dark openings.

I stood in silence where I was, for I did not know what to do. Of bell or knocker there was no sign; through these frowning walls and dark window

openings it was not likely that my voice could penetrate. The time I waited seemed endless, and I felt doubts and fears crowding upon me. What sort of place had I come to, and among what kind of people? What sort of grim

adventure was it on which I had embarked? Was this a customary incident in the

life of a solicitor’s clerk sent out to explain the purchase of a London estate to a

foreigner? Solicitor’s clerk! Mina would not like that. Solicitor—for just before

leaving London I got word that my examination was successful; and I am now a

full-blown solicitor! I began to rub my eyes and pinch myself to see if I were awake. It all seemed like a horrible nightmare to me, and I expected that I should

suddenly awake, and find myself at home, with the dawn struggling in through

the windows, as I had now and again felt in the morning after a day of overwork.

But my flesh answered the pinching test, and my eyes were not to be deceived. I

was indeed awake and among the Carpathians. All I could do now was to be

patient, and to wait the coming of the morning.

Just as I had come to this conclusion I heard a heavy step approaching behind

the great door, and saw through the chinks the gleam of a coming light. Then

there was the sound of rattling chains and the clanking of massive bolts drawn back. A key was turned with the loud grating noise of long disuse, and the great

door swung back.

Within, stood a tall old man, clean shaven save for a long white moustache,

and clad in black from head to foot, without a single speck of colour about him

anywhere. He held in his hand an antique silver lamp, in which the flame burned

without chimney or globe of any kind, throwing long quivering shadows as it flickered in the draught of the open door. The old man motioned me in with his

right hand with a courtly gesture, saying in excellent English, but with a strange

intonation:—

“Welcome to my house! Enter freely and of your own will!” He made no

motion of stepping to meet me, but stood like a statue, as though his gesture of

welcome had fixed him into stone. The instant, however, that I had stepped over

the threshold, he moved impulsively forward, and holding out his hand grasped

mine with a strength which made me wince, an effect which was not lessened by

the fact that it seemed as cold as ice—more like the hand of a dead than a living

man. Again he said:—

“Welcome to my house. Come freely. Go safely; and leave something of the

happiness you bring!” The strength of the handshake was so much akin to that which I had noticed in the driver, whose face I had not seen, that for a moment I

doubted if it were not the same person to whom I was speaking; so to make sure,

I said interrogatively:—

“Count Dracula?” He bowed in a courtly way as he replied:—

“I am Dracula; and I bid you welcome, Mr. Harker, to my house. Come in;

the night air is chill, and you must need to eat and rest." As he was speaking, he

put the lamp on a bracket on the wall, and stepping out, took my luggage; he had

carried it in before I could forestall him. I protested but he insisted:—

"Nay, sir, you are my guest. It is late, and my people are not available. Let me

see to your comfort myself." He insisted on carrying my traps along the passage,

and then up a great winding stair, and along another great passage, on whose stone floor our steps rang heavily. At the end of this he threw open a heavy door,

and I rejoiced to see within a well-lit room in which a table was spread for supper, and on whose mighty hearth a great fire of logs, freshly replenished, flamed and flared.

The Count halted, putting down my bags, closed the door, and crossing the

room, opened another door, which led into a small octagonal room lit by a single

lamp, and seemingly without a window of any sort. Passing through this, he

opened another door, and motioned me to enter. It was a welcome sight; for here was a great bedroom well lighted and warmed with another log fire,—also added

to but lately, for the top logs were fresh—which sent a hollow roar up the wide

chimney. The Count himself left my luggage inside and withdrew, saying, before

he closed the door:—

“You will need, after your journey, to refresh yourself by making your toilet.

I trust you will find all you wish. When you are ready, come into the other room,

where you will find your supper prepared.”

The light and warmth and the Count’s courteous welcome seemed to have

dissipated all my doubts and fears. Having then reached my normal state, I

discovered that I was half famished with hunger; so making a hasty toilet, I went

into the other room.

I found supper already laid out. My host, who stood on one side of the great

fireplace, leaning against the stonework, made a graceful wave of his hand to the

table, and said:—

“I pray you, be seated and sup how you please. You will, I trust, excuse me

that I do not join you; but I have dined already, and I do not sup."

I handed to him the sealed letter which Mr. Hawkins had entrusted to me. He

opened it and read it gravely; then, with a charming smile, he handed it to me to

read. One passage of it, at least, gave me a thrill of pleasure.

"I must regret that an attack of gout, from which malady I am a constant

sufferer, forbids absolutely any travelling on my part for some time to come; but

I am happy to say I can send a sufficient substitute, one in whom I have every

possible confidence. He is a young man, full of energy and talent in his own way, and of a very faithful disposition. He is discreet and silent, and has grown

into manhood in my service. He shall be ready to attend on you when you will

during his stay, and shall take your instructions in all matters."

The Count himself came forward and took off the cover of a dish, and I fell to

at once on an excellent roast chicken. This, with some cheese and a salad and a

bottle of old Tokay, of which I had two glasses, was my supper. During the time

I was eating it the Count asked me many questions as to my journey, and I told

him by degrees all I had experienced.

By this time I had finished my supper, and by my host’s desire had drawn up

a chair by the fire and begun to smoke a cigar which he offered me, at the same

time excusing himself that he did not smoke. I had now an opportunity of

observing him, and found him of a very marked physiognomy.

His face was a strong—a very strong—aquiline, with high bridge of the thin

nose and peculiarly arched nostrils; with lofty domed forehead, and hair growing scantily round the temples but profusely elsewhere. His eyebrows were very

massive, almost meeting over the nose, and with bushy hair that seemed to curl

in its own profusion. The mouth, so far as I could see it under the heavy moustache, was fixed and rather cruel-looking, with peculiarly sharp white teeth;

these protruded over the lips, whose remarkable ruddiness showed astonishing

vitality in a man of his years. For the rest, his ears were pale, and at the tops extremely pointed; the chin was broad and

strong, and the cheeks firm though thin. The general effect was one of extraordinary pallor.

Hitherto I had noticed the backs of his hands as they lay on his knees in the

firelight, and they had seemed rather white and fine; but seeing them now close

to me, I could not but notice that they were rather coarse—broad, with squat fingers. Strange to say, there were hairs in the centre of the palm. The nails were

long and fine, and cut to a sharp point. As the Count leaned over me and his hands touched me, I could not repress a shudder. It may have been that his breath

was rank, but a horrible feeling of nausea came over me, which, do what I would, I could not conceal. The Count, evidently noticing it, drew back; and with a grim sort of smile, which showed more than he had yet done his

protuberant teeth, sat himself down again on his own side of the fireplace. We were both silent for a while; and as I looked towards the window I saw the first

dim streak of the coming dawn. There seemed a strange stillness over

everything; but as I listened I heard as if from down below in the valley the howling of many wolves. The Count’s eyes gleamed, and he said:—

“Listen to them—the children of the night. What music they make!” Seeing, I

suppose, some expression in my face strange to him, he added:—

“Ah, sir, you dwellers in the city cannot enter into the feelings of the hunter.”

Then he rose and said:—

“But you must be tired. Your bedroom is all ready, and to-morrow you shall

sleep as late as you will. I have to be away till the afternoon; so sleep well and

dream well!” With a courteous bow, he opened for me himself the door to the octagonal room, and I entered my bedroom....

I am all in a sea of wonders. I doubt; I fear; I think strange things, which I dare not confess to my own soul. God keep me, if only for the sake of those dear

to me!

7 May. —It is again early morning, but I have rested and enjoyed the last twenty-four hours. I slept till late in the day, and awoke of my own accord.

When I had dressed myself I went into the room where we had supped, and found a cold breakfast laid out, with coffee kept hot by the pot being placed on

the hearth. There was a card on the table, on which was written:—

“I have to be absent for a while. Do not wait for me.—D.” I set to and

enjoyed a hearty meal. When I had done, I looked for a bell, so that I might let

the servants know I had finished; but I could not find one. There are certainly odd deficiencies in the house, considering the extraordinary evidences of wealth

which are round me. The table service is of gold, and so beautifully wrought that

it must be of immense value. The curtains and upholstery of the chairs and sofas

and the hangings of my bed are of the costliest and most beautiful fabrics, and

must have been of fabulous value when they were made, for they are centuries

old, though in excellent order. I saw something like them in Hampton Court, but

there they were worn and frayed and moth-eaten. But still in none of the rooms

is there a mirror. There is not even a toilet glass on my table, and I had to get the

little shaving glass from my bag before I could either shave or brush my hair. I

have not yet seen a servant anywhere, or heard a sound near the castle except the

howling of wolves. Some time after I had finished my meal—I do not know

whether to call it breakfast or dinner, for it was between five and six o’clock when I had it—I looked about for something to read, for I did not like to go about the castle until I had asked the Count’s permission. There was absolutely

nothing in the room, book, newspaper, or even writing materials; so I opened another door in the room and found a sort of library. The door opposite mine I

tried, but found it locked.

In the library I found, to my great delight, a vast number of English books, whole shelves full of them, and bound volumes of magazines and newspapers. A

table in the centre was littered with English magazines and newspapers, though

none of them were of very recent date. The books were of the most varied kind

—history, geography, politics, political economy, botany, geology, law—all

relating to England and English life and customs and manners. There were even

such books of reference as the London Directory, the “Red” and “Blue” books,

Whitaker’s Almanac, the Army and Navy Lists, and—it somehow gladdened my

heart to see it—the Law List.

Whilst I was looking at the books, the door opened, and the Count entered.

He saluted me in a hearty way, and hoped that I had had a good night’s rest.

Then he went on:—

“I am glad you found your way in here, for I am sure there is much that will

interest you. These companions”—and he laid his hand on some of the books

—“have been good friends to me, and for some years past, ever since I had the

idea of going to London, have given me many, many hours of pleasure. Through them I have come to know your great England; and to know her is to love her. I

long to go through the crowded streets of your mighty London, to be in the midst

of the whirl and rush of humanity, to share its life, its change, its death, and all

that makes it what it is. But alas! as yet I only know your tongue through books.

To you, my friend, I look that I know it to speak.”

“But, Count,” I said, “you know and speak English thoroughly!” He bowed

gravely.

“I thank you, my friend, for your all too-flattering estimate, but yet I fear that

I am but a little way on the road I would travel. True, I know the grammar and

the words, but yet I know not how to speak them."

"Indeed," I said, "you speak excellently."

"Not so," he answered. "Well, I know that, did I move and speak in your

London, none there are who would not know me for a stranger. That is not

enough for me. Here I am noble; I am *boyar*; the common people know me, and

I am master. But a stranger in a strange land, he is no one; men know him not—

and to know not is to care not for. I am content if I am like the rest, so that no

man stops if he see me, or pause in his speaking if he hear my words, 'Ha, ha! a

stranger!' I have been so long master that I would be master still—or at least that

none other should be master of me. You come to me not alone as agent of my friend Peter Hawkins, of Exeter, to tell me all about my new estate in London.

You shall, I trust, rest here with me awhile, so that by our talking I may learn the

English intonation; and I would that you tell me when I make error, even of the

smallest, in my speaking. I am sorry that I had to be away so long to-day; but you will, I know, forgive one who has so many important affairs in hand."

Of course I said all I could about being willing, and asked if I might come into that room when I chose. He answered: "Yes, certainly," and added:—

"You may go anywhere you wish in the castle, except where the doors are

locked, where of course you will not wish to go. There is reason that all things

are as they are, and did you see with my eyes and know with my knowledge, you

would perhaps better understand." I said I was sure of this, and then he went on:

—

"We are in Transylvania; and Transylvania is not England. Our ways are not

your ways, and there shall be to you many strange things. Nay, from what you

have told me of your experiences already, you know something of what strange

things there may be."

This led to much conversation; and as it was evident that he wanted to talk, if

only for talking's sake, I asked him many questions regarding things that had already happened to me or come

within my notice. Sometimes he sheered off the

subject, or turned the conversation by pretending not to understand; but

generally he answered all I asked most frankly. Then as time went on, and I had

got somewhat bolder, I asked him of some of the strange things of the preceding

night, as, for instance, why the coachman went to the places where he had seen

the blue flames. He then explained to me that it was commonly believed that on

a certain night of the year—last night, in fact, when all evil spirits are supposed

to have unchecked sway—a blue flame is seen over any place where treasure has

been concealed. “That treasure has been hidden,” he went on, “in the region through which you came last night, there can be but little doubt; for it was the ground fought over for centuries by the Wallachian, the Saxon, and the Turk.

Why, there is hardly a foot of soil in all this region that has not been enriched by

the blood of men, patriots or invaders. In old days there were stirring times, when the Austrian and the Hungarian came up in hordes, and the patriots went

out to meet them—men and women, the aged and the children too—and waited

their coming on the rocks above the passes, that they might sweep destruction on

them with their artificial avalanches. When the invader was triumphant he found

but little, for whatever there was had been sheltered in the friendly soil."

"But how," said I, "can it have remained so long undiscovered, when there is

a sure index to it if men will but take the trouble to look?" The Count smiled, and as his lips ran back over his gums, the long, sharp, canine teeth showed out

strangely; he answered:—

"Because your peasant is at heart a coward and a fool! Those flames only

appear on one night; and on that night no man of this land will, if he can help it,

stir without his doors. And, dear sir, even if he did he would not know what to

do. Why, even the peasant that you tell me of who marked the place of the flame

would not know where to look in daylight even for his own work. Even you

would not, I dare be sworn, be able to find these places again?"

"There you are right," I said. "I know no more than the dead where even to

look for them.” Then we drifted into other matters.

“Come,” he said at last, “tell me of London and of the house which you have

procured for me.” With an apology for my remissness, I went into my own room

to get the papers from my bag. Whilst I was placing them in order I heard a rattling of china and silver in the next room, and as I passed through, noticed that

the table had been cleared and the lamp lit, for it was by this time deep into the

dark. The lamps were also lit in the study or library, and I found the Count lying

on the sofa, reading, of all things in the world, an English Bradshaw’s Guide.

When I came in he cleared the books and papers from the table; and with him I went into plans and deeds and figures of all sorts. He was interested in

everything, and asked me a myriad questions about the place and its

surroundings. He clearly had studied beforehand all he could get on the subject

of the neighbourhood, for he evidently at the end knew very much more than I

did. When I remarked this, he answered:—

“Well, but, my friend, is it not needful that I should? When I go there I shall

be all alone, and my friend Harker Jonathan—nay, pardon me, I fall into my country's habit of putting your patronymic first—my friend Jonathan Harker will

not be by my side to correct and aid me. He will be in Exeter, miles away, probably working at papers of the law with my other friend, Peter Hawkins. So!"

We went thoroughly into the business of the purchase of the estate at Purfleet.

When I had told him the facts and got his signature to the necessary papers, and

had written a letter with them ready to post to Mr. Hawkins, he began to ask me

how I had come across so suitable a place. I read to him the notes which I had

made at the time, and which I inscribe here:—

"At Purfleet, on a by-road, I came across just such a place as seemed to be required, and where was displayed a dilapidated notice that the place was for sale. It is surrounded by a high wall, of ancient structure, built of heavy stones,

and has not been repaired for a large number of years. The closed gates are of heavy old oak and iron, all eaten with rust.

"The estate is called Carfax, no doubt a corruption of the old *Quatre Face*, as

the house is four-sided, agreeing with the cardinal points of the compass. It contains in all some twenty acres, quite

surrounded by the solid stone wall above

mentioned. There are many trees on it, which make it in places gloomy, and there is a deep, dark-looking pond or small lake, evidently fed by some springs,

as the water is clear and flows away in a fair-sized stream. The house is very large and of all periods back, I should say, to mediæval times, for one part is of

stone immensely thick, with only a few windows high up and heavily barred

with iron. It looks like part of a keep, and is close to an old chapel or church. I

could not enter it, as I had not the key of the door leading to it from the house,

but I have taken with my kodak views of it from various points. The house has

been added to, but in a very straggling way, and I can only guess at the amount

of ground it covers, which must be very great. There are but few houses close at

hand, one being a very large house only recently added to and formed into a private lunatic asylum. It is not, however, visible from the grounds."

When I had finished, he said:—

"I am glad that it is old and big. I myself am of an old family, and to live in a

new house would kill me. A house cannot be made habitable in a day; and, after all, how few days go to make up a century. I rejoice also that there is a chapel of

old times. We Transylvanian nobles love not to think that our bones may lie amongst the common dead. I seek not gaiety nor mirth, not the bright

voluptuousness of much sunshine and sparkling waters which please the young

and gay. I am no longer young; and my heart, through weary years of mourning

over the dead, is not attuned to mirth. Moreover, the walls of my castle are broken; the shadows are many, and the wind breathes cold through the broken battlements and casements. I love the shade and the shadow, and would be alone

with my thoughts when I may." Somehow his words and his look did not seem to

accord, or else it was that his cast of face made his smile look malignant and saturnine.

Presently, with an excuse, he left me, asking me to put all my papers together.

He was some little time away, and I began to look at some of the books around

me. One was an atlas, which I found opened naturally at England, as if that map

had been much used. On looking at it I found in certain places little rings marked, and on examining these I noticed

that one was near London on the east

side, manifestly where his new estate was situated; the other two were Exeter, and Whitby on the Yorkshire coast.

It was the better part of an hour when the Count returned. “Aha!” he said;

“still at your books? Good! But you must not work always. Come; I am

informed that your supper is ready.” He took my arm, and we went into the next

room, where I found an excellent supper ready on the table. The Count again excused himself, as he had dined out on his being away from home. But he sat as

on the previous night, and chatted whilst I ate. After supper I smoked, as on the

last evening, and the Count stayed with me, chatting and asking questions on every conceivable subject, hour after hour. I felt that it was getting very late indeed, but I did not say anything, for I felt under obligation to meet my host’s

wishes in every way. I was not sleepy, as the long sleep yesterday had fortified

me; but I could not help experiencing that chill which comes over one at the coming of the dawn, which is like, in its way, the turn of the tide. They say that

people who are near death die generally at the change to the dawn or at the turn

of the tide; any one who has when tired, and tied as it were to his post, experienced this change in the atmosphere can well believe it. All at once we heard the crow of a cock coming up with preternatural shrillness through the clear morning air; Count Dracula, jumping to his feet, said:—

“Why, there is the morning again! How remiss I am to let you stay up so

long. You must make your conversation regarding my dear new country of

England less interesting, so that I may not forget how time flies by us,” and, with a courtly bow, he quickly left me.

I went into my own room and drew the curtains, but there was little to notice;

my window opened into the courtyard, all I could see was the warm grey of quickening sky. So I pulled the curtains again, and have written of this day.

8 May. —I began to fear as I wrote in this book that I was getting too diffuse; but now I am glad that I went into detail from the first, for there is something so

strange about this place and all in it that I cannot but feel uneasy. I wish I were

safe out of it, or that I had never come. It may be that this strange night-existence

is telling on me; but would that that were all! If there were any one to talk to I

could bear it, but there is no one. I have only the Count to speak with, and he!—I

fear I am myself the only living soul within the place. Let me be prosaic so far as

facts can be; it will help me to bear up, and imagination must not run riot with

me. If it does I am lost. Let me say at once how I stand—or seem to.

I only slept a few hours when I went to bed, and feeling that I could not sleep

any more, got up. I had hung my shaving glass by the window, and was just beginning to shave. Suddenly I felt a hand on my shoulder, and heard the

Count’s voice saying to me, “Good-morning.” I started, for it amazed me that I

had not seen him, since the reflection of the glass covered the whole room behind me. In starting I had cut myself slightly, but did not notice it at the moment. Having answered the Count’s salutation, I turned to the glass again to

see how I had been mistaken. This time there could be no error, for the man was

close to me, and I could see him over my shoulder. But there was no reflection of

him in the mirror! The whole room behind me was displayed; but there was no

sign of a man in it, except myself. This was startling, and, coming on the top of

so many strange things, was beginning to increase that vague feeling of

uneasiness which I always have when the Count is near; but at the instant I saw

that the cut had bled a little, and the blood was trickling over my chin. I laid down the razor, turning as I did so half round to look for some sticking plaster.

When the Count saw my face, his eyes blazed with a sort of demoniac fury, and

he suddenly made a grab at my throat. I drew away, and his hand touched the string of beads which held the crucifix. It made an instant change in him, for the

fury passed so quickly that I could hardly believe that it was ever there.

“Take care,” he said, “take care how you cut yourself. It is more dangerous than you think in this country.” Then seizing the shaving glass, he went on: “And

this is the wretched thing that has done the mischief. It is a foul bauble of man’s

vanity. Away with it!” and opening the heavy window with one wrench of his

terrible hand, he flung out the glass, which was shattered into a thousand pieces on the stones of the courtyard far below. Then he withdrew without a word. It is

very annoying, for I do not see how I am to shave, unless in my watch-case or

the bottom of the shaving-pot, which is fortunately of metal.

When I went into the dining-room, breakfast was prepared; but I could not

find the Count anywhere. So I breakfasted alone. It is strange that as yet I have

not seen the Count eat or drink. He must be a very peculiar man! After breakfast

I did a little exploring in the castle. I went out on the stairs, and found a room

looking towards the South. The view was magnificent, and from where I stood

there was every opportunity of seeing it. The castle is on the very edge of a terrible precipice. A stone falling from the window would fall a thousand feet without touching anything! As far as the eye can reach is a sea of green tree tops,

with occasionally a deep rift where there is a chasm. Here and there are silver threads where the rivers wind in deep gorges through the forests.

But I am not in heart to describe beauty, for when I had seen the view I explored further; doors, doors, doors everywhere, and all locked and bolted. In

no place save from the windows in the castle walls is there an available exit.

The castle is a veritable prison, and I am a prisoner!

CHAPTER III

JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL— *continued*

WHEN I found that I was a prisoner a sort of wild feeling came over me. I rushed

up and down the stairs, trying every door and peering out of every window I could find; but after a little the conviction of my helplessness overpowered all other feelings. When I look back after a few hours I think I must have been mad

for the time, for I behaved much as a rat does in a trap. When, however, the conviction had come to me that I was helpless I sat down quietly—as quietly as I

have ever done anything in my life—and began to think over what was best to be

done. I am thinking still, and as yet have come to no definite conclusion. Of one

thing only am I certain; that it is no use making my ideas known to the Count.

He knows well that I am imprisoned; and as he has done it himself, and has doubtless his own motives for it, he would only deceive me if I trusted him fully

with the facts. So far as I can see, my only plan will be to keep my knowledge

and my fears to myself, and my eyes open. I am, I know, either being deceived,

like a baby, by my own fears, or else I am in desperate straits; and if the latter be

so, I need, and shall need, all my brains to get through.

I had hardly come to this conclusion when I heard the great door below shut,

and knew that the Count had returned. He did not come at once into the library,

so I went cautiously to my own room and found him making the bed. This was

odd, but only confirmed what I had all along thought—that there were no

servants in the house. When later I saw him through the chink of the hinges of

the door laying the table in the dining-room, I was assured of it; for if he does

himself all these menial offices, surely it is proof that there is no one else to do

them. This gave me a fright, for if there is no one else in the castle, it must have

been the Count himself who was the driver of the coach that brought me here.

This is a terrible thought; for if so, what does it mean that he could control the

wolves, as he did, by only holding up his hand in silence. How was it that all the

people at Bistritz and on the coach had some terrible fear for me? What meant

the giving of the crucifix, of the garlic, of the wild rose, of the mountain ash?

Bless that good, good woman who hung the crucifix round my neck! for it is a

comfort and a strength to me whenever I touch it. It is odd that a thing which I

have been taught to regard with disfavour and as idolatrous should in a time of

loneliness and trouble be of help. Is it that there is something in the essence of

the thing itself, or that it is a medium, a tangible help, in conveying memories of sympathy and comfort? Some time, if it may be, I must examine this matter and

try to make up my mind about it. In the meantime I must find out all I can about

Count Dracula, as it may help me to understand. To-night he may talk of himself,

if I turn the conversation that way. I must be very careful, however, not to awake

his suspicion.

Midnight. —I have had a long talk with the Count. I asked him a few questions on Transylvania history, and he warmed up to the subject wonderfully.

In his speaking of things and people, and especially of battles, he spoke as if he

had been present at them all. This he afterwards explained by saying that to a *boyar* the pride of his house and name is

his own pride, that their glory is his glory, that their fate is his fate. Whenever he spoke of his house he always said

“we,” and spoke almost in the plural, like a king speaking. I wish I could put down all he said exactly as he said it, for to me it was most fascinating. It seemed to have in it a whole history of the country. He grew excited as he spoke,

and walked about the room pulling his great white moustache and grasping

anything on which he laid his hands as though he would crush it by main

strength. One thing he said which I shall put down as nearly as I can; for it tells

in its way the story of his race:—

“We Szekelys have a right to be proud, for in our veins flows the blood of many brave races who fought as the lion fights, for lordship. Here, in the whirlpool of European races, the Ugric tribe bore down from Iceland the fighting

spirit which Thor and Wodin gave them, which their Berserkers displayed to

such fell intent on the seaboards of Europe, ay, and of Asia and Africa too, till

the peoples thought that the were-wolves themselves had come. Here, too, when

they came, they found the Huns, whose warlike fury had swept the earth like a

living flame, till the dying peoples held that in their veins ran the blood of those

old witches, who, expelled from Scythia had mated with the devils in the desert.

Fools, fools! What devil or what witch was ever so great as Attila, whose blood

is in these veins?" He held up his arms. "Is it a wonder that we were a conquering race; that we were proud; that when the Magyar, the Lombard, the Avar, the Bulgar, or the Turk poured his thousands on our frontiers, we drove them back? Is it strange that when Arpad and his legions swept through the Hungarian fatherland he found us here when he reached the frontier; that the Honfoglalas was completed there? And when the Hungarian flood swept

eastward, the Szekelys were claimed as kindred by the victorious Magyars, and

to us for centuries was trusted the guarding of the frontier of Turkey-land; ay,

and more than that, endless duty of the frontier guard, for, as the Turks say,

'water sleeps, and enemy is sleepless.' Who more gladly than we throughout the

Four Nations received the 'bloody sword,' or at its warlike call flocked quicker

to the standard of the King? When was redeemed that great shame of my nation,

the shame of Cassova, when the flags of the Wallach and the Magyar went down

beneath the Crescent? Who was it but one of my own race who as Voivode

crossed the Danube and beat the Turk on his own ground? This was a Dracula indeed! Woe was it that his own unworthy brother, when he had fallen, sold his

people to the Turk and brought the shame of slavery on them! Was it not this Dracula, indeed, who inspired that other of his race who in a later age again and

again brought his forces over the great river into Turkey-land; who, when he was

beaten back, came again, and again, and again, though he had to come alone from the bloody field where his troops were being slaughtered, since he knew that he alone could ultimately triumph! They said that he thought only of

himself. Bah! what good are peasants without a leader? Where ends the war

without a brain and heart to conduct it? Again, when, after the battle of Mohács,

we threw off the Hungarian yoke, we of the Dracula blood were amongst their leaders, for our spirit would not brook that we were not free. Ah, young sir, the

Szekelys—and the Dracula as their heart’s blood, their brains, and their swords

—can boast a record that mushroom growths like the Hapsburgs and the

Romanoffs can never reach. The warlike days are over. Blood is too precious a

thing in these days of dishonourable peace; and the glories of the great races are

as a tale that is told.”

It was by this time close on morning, and we went to bed. (*Mem.* , this diary

seems horribly like the beginning of the “Arabian Nights,” for everything has to

break off at cockcrow—or like the ghost of Hamlet’s father.)

12 May. —Let me begin with facts—bare, meagre facts, verified by books and

figures, and of which there can be no doubt. I must not confuse them with experiences which will have to rest on my own observation, or my memory of them. Last evening when the Count came from his room he began by asking me

questions on legal matters and on the doing of certain kinds of business. I had spent the day wearily over books, and, simply to keep my mind occupied, went

over some of the matters I had been examined in at Lincoln’s Inn. There was a

certain method in the Count’s inquiries, so I shall try to put them down in sequence; the knowledge may somehow or some time be useful to me.

First, he asked if a man in England might have two solicitors or more. I told

him he might have a dozen if he wished, but that it would not be wise to have

more than one solicitor engaged in one transaction, as only one could act at a time, and that to change would be certain to militate against his interest. He seemed thoroughly to understand, and went on to ask if there would be any

practical difficulty in having one man to attend, say, to banking, and another to

look after shipping, in case local help were needed in a place far from the home

of the banking solicitor. I asked him to explain more fully, so that I might not by

any chance mislead him, so he said:—

“I shall illustrate. Your friend and mine, Mr. Peter Hawkins, from under the

shadow of your beautiful cathedral at Exeter, which is far from London, buys for

me through your good self my place at London. Good! Now here let me say

frankly, lest you should think it strange that I have sought the services of one so

far off from London instead of some one resident there, that my motive was that

no local interest might be served save my wish only; and as one of London residence might, perhaps, have some purpose

of himself or friend to serve, I went thus afield to seek my agent, whose labours should be only to my interest.

Now, suppose I, who have much of affairs, wish to ship goods, say, to

Newcastle, or Durham, or Harwich, or Dover, might it not be that it could with

more ease be done by consigning to one in these ports?" I answered that

certainly it would be most easy, but that we solicitors had a system of agency one for the other, so that local work could be done locally on instruction from any solicitor, so that the client, simply placing himself in the hands of one man,

could have his wishes carried out by him without further trouble.

"But," said he, "I could be at liberty to direct myself. Is it not so?"

"Of course," I replied; and "such is often done by men of business, who do

not like the whole of their affairs to be known by any one person."

"Good!" he said, and then went on to ask about the means of making

consignments and the forms to be gone through, and of all sorts of difficulties which might arise, but by forethought could be guarded against. I explained all

these things to him to the best of my ability, and he certainly left me under the

impression that he would have made a wonderful solicitor, for there was nothing

that he did not think of or foresee. For a man who was never in the country, and

who did not evidently do much in the way of business, his knowledge and

acumen were wonderful. When he had satisfied himself on these points of which

he had spoken, and I had verified all as well as I could by the books available, he

suddenly stood up and said:—

“Have you written since your first letter to our friend Mr. Peter Hawkins, or

to any other?” It was with some bitterness in my heart that I answered that I had

not, that as yet I had not seen any opportunity of sending letters to anybody.

“Then write now, my young friend,” he said, laying a heavy hand on my shoulder: “write to our friend and to any other; and say, if it will please you, that

you shall stay with me until a month from now.”

“Do you wish me to stay so long?” I asked, for my heart grew cold at the thought.

“I desire it much; nay, I will take no refusal. When your master, employer, what you will, engaged that someone should come on his behalf, it was

understood that my needs only were to be consulted. I have not stinted. Is it not

so?”

What could I do but bow acceptance? It was Mr. Hawkins’s interest, not

mine, and I had to think of him, not myself; and besides, while Count Dracula was speaking, there was that in his eyes and in his bearing which made me remember that I was a prisoner, and that if I wished it I could have no choice.

The Count saw his victory in my bow, and his mastery in the trouble of my face,

for he began at once to use them, but in his own smooth, resistless way:—

“I pray you, my good young friend, that you will not discourse of things other

than business in your letters. It will doubtless please your friends to know that you are well, and that you look forward to getting home to them. Is it not so?”

As he spoke he handed me three sheets of note-paper and three envelopes. They

were all of the thinnest foreign post, and looking at them, then at him, and noticing his quiet smile, with the sharp, canine teeth lying over the red underlip,

I understood as well as if he had spoken that I should be careful what I wrote, for

he would be able to read it. So I determined to write only formal notes now, but

to write fully to Mr. Hawkins in secret, and also to Mina, for to her I could write

in shorthand, which would puzzle the Count, if he did see it. When I had written

my two letters I sat quiet, reading a book whilst the Count wrote several notes,

referring as he wrote them to some books on his table. Then he took up my two

and placed them with his own, and put by his writing materials, after which, the

instant the door had closed behind him, I leaned over and looked at the letters,

which were face down on the table. I felt no compunction in doing so, for under

the circumstances I felt that I should protect myself in every way I could.

One of the letters was directed to Samuel F. Billington, No. 7, The Crescent,

Whitby, another to Herr Leutner, Varna; the third was to Coutts & Co., London,

and the fourth to Herren Klopstock & Billreuth, bankers, Buda-Pesth. The

second and fourth were unsealed. I was just about to look at them when I saw the

door-handle move. I sank back in my seat, having just had time to replace the letters as they had been and to resume my book before the Count, holding still

another letter in his hand, entered the room. He took up the letters on the table

and stamped them carefully, and then turning to me, said:—

“I trust you will forgive me, but I have much work to do in private this evening. You will, I hope, find all things as you wish.” At the door he turned, and after a moment’s pause said:—

“Let me advise you, my dear young friend—nay, let me warn you with all

seriousness, that should you leave these rooms you will not by any chance go to

sleep in any other part of the castle. It is old, and has many memories, and there

are bad dreams for those who sleep unwisely. Be warned! Should sleep now or

ever overcome you, or be like to do, then haste to your own chamber or to these

rooms, for your rest will then be safe. But if you be not careful in this respect,

then”—He finished his speech in a gruesome way, for he motioned with his

hands as if he were washing them. I quite understood; my only doubt was as to

whether any dream could be more terrible than the unnatural, horrible net of gloom and mystery which seemed closing around me.

Later. —I endorse the last words written, but this time there is no doubt in question. I shall not fear to sleep in any place where he is not. I have placed the

crucifix over the head of my bed—I imagine that my rest is thus freer from dreams; and there it shall remain.

When he left me I went to my room. After a little while, not hearing any sound, I came out and went up the stone stair to where I could look out towards

the South. There was some sense of freedom in the vast expanse, inaccessible though it was to me, as compared with the narrow darkness of the courtyard.

Looking out on this, I felt that I was indeed in prison, and I seemed to want a breath of fresh air, though it were of the night. I am beginning to feel this nocturnal existence tell on me. It is destroying my nerve. I start at my own shadow, and am full of all sorts of horrible imaginings. God knows that there is

ground for my terrible fear in this accursed place! I looked out over the beautiful

expanse, bathed in soft yellow moonlight till it was almost as light as day. In the

soft light the distant hills became melted, and the shadows in the valleys and gorges of velvety blackness. The mere

beauty seemed to cheer me; there was

peace and comfort in every breath I drew. As I leaned from the window my eye

was caught by something moving a storey below me, and somewhat to my left,

where I imagined, from the order of the rooms, that the windows of the Count’s

own room would look out. The window at which I stood was tall and deep,

stone-mullioned, and though weatherworn, was still complete; but it was

evidently many a day since the case had been there. I drew back behind the stonework, and looked carefully out.

What I saw was the Count’s head coming out from the window. I did not see the face, but I knew the man by the neck and the movement of his back and arms. In any case I could not mistake the hands which I had had so many

opportunities of studying. I was at first interested and somewhat amused, for it is

wonderful how small a matter will interest and amuse a man when he is a

prisoner. But my very feelings changed to repulsion and terror when I saw the whole man slowly emerge from the window and begin to crawl down the castle

wall over that dreadful abyss, *face down* with his cloak spreading out around him like great wings. At first I could

not believe my eyes. I thought it was some trick

of the moonlight, some weird effect of shadow; but I kept looking, and it could

be no delusion. I saw the fingers and toes grasp the corners of the stones, worn

clear of the mortar by the stress of years, and by thus using every projection and

inequality move downwards with considerable speed, just as a lizard moves

along a wall.

What manner of man is this, or what manner of creature is it in the semblance

of man? I feel the dread of this horrible place overpowering me; I am in fear—in

awful fear—and there is no escape for me; I am encompassed about with terrors

that I dare not think of....

15 May. —Once more have I seen the Count go out in his lizard fashion. He

moved downwards in a sidelong way, some hundred feet down, and a good deal

to the left. He vanished into some hole or window. When his head had

disappeared, I leaned out to try and see more, but without avail—the distance was too great to allow a proper angle of

sight. I knew he had left the castle now,

and thought to use the opportunity to explore more than I had dared to do as yet.

I went back to the room, and taking a lamp, tried all the doors. They were all locked, as I had expected, and the locks were comparatively new; but I went down the stone stairs to the hall where I had entered originally. I found I could

pull back the bolts easily enough and unhook the great chains; but the door was

locked, and the key was gone! That key must be in the Count’s room; I must watch should his door be unlocked, so that I may get it and escape. I went on to

make a thorough examination of the various stairs and passages, and to try the doors that opened from them. One or two small rooms near the hall were open,

but there was nothing to see in them except old furniture, dusty with age and moth-eaten. At last, however, I found one door at the top of the stairway which,

though it seemed to be locked, gave a little under pressure. I tried it harder, and

found that it was not really locked, but that the resistance came from the fact that

the hinges had fallen somewhat, and the heavy door rested on the floor. Here was

an opportunity which I might not have again, so I exerted myself, and with many efforts forced it back so that I could enter. I was now in a wing of the castle further to the right

than the rooms I knew and a storey lower down. From the windows I could see that the suite of rooms lay along to the south of the castle,

the windows of the end room looking out both west and south. On the latter side,

as well as to the former, there was a great precipice. The castle was built on the

corner of a great rock, so that on three sides it was quite impregnable, and great

windows were placed here where sling, or bow, or culverin could not reach, and

consequently light and comfort, impossible to a position which had to be

guarded, were secured. To the west was a great valley, and then, rising far away,

great jagged mountain fastnesses, rising peak on peak, the sheer rock studded with mountain ash and thorn, whose roots clung in cracks and crevices and

crannies of the stone. This was evidently the portion of the castle occupied by the ladies in bygone days, for the furniture had more air of comfort than any I had seen. The windows were curtainless, and the yellow moonlight, flooding in

through the diamond panes, enabled one to see even colours, whilst it softened

the wealth of dust which lay over all and disguised in some measure the ravages

of time and the moth. My lamp seemed to be of little effect in the brilliant moonlight, but I was glad to have it with me, for there was a dread loneliness in

the place which chilled my heart and made my nerves tremble. Still, it was better

than living alone in the rooms which I had come to hate from the presence of the

Count, and after trying a little to school my nerves, I found a soft quietude come

over me. Here I am, sitting at a little oak table where in old times possibly some

fair lady sat to pen, with much thought and many blushes, her ill-spelt love-letter, and writing in my diary in shorthand all that has happened since I closed it

last. It is nineteenth century up-to-date with a vengeance. And yet, unless my senses deceive me, the old centuries had, and have, powers of their own which

mere “modernity” cannot kill.

Later: the Morning of 16 May. —God preserve my sanity, for to this I am reduced. Safety and the assurance of safety are things of the past. Whilst I live

on here there is but one thing to hope for, that I may not go mad, if, indeed, I be

not mad already. If I be sane, then surely it is maddening to think that of all the

foul things that lurk in this hateful place the Count is the least dreadful to me; that to him alone I can look for safety, even though this be only whilst I can serve his purpose. Great God! merciful God! Let me be calm, for out of that way

lies madness indeed. I begin to get new lights on certain things which have puzzled me. Up to now I never quite knew what Shakespeare meant when he

made Hamlet say:—

“My tablets! quick, my tablets!

’Tis meet that I put it down,” etc.,

for now, feeling as though my own brain were unhinged or as if the shock had

come which must end in its undoing, I turn to my diary for repose. The habit of

entering accurately must help to soothe me.

The Count’s mysterious warning frightened me at the time; it frightens me

more now when I think of it, for in future he has a fearful hold upon me. I shall

fear to doubt what he may say!

When I had written in my diary and had fortunately replaced the book and

pen in my pocket I felt sleepy. The Count’s warning came into my mind, but I

took a pleasure in disobeying it. The sense of sleep was upon me, and with it the

obstinacy which sleep brings as outrider. The soft moonlight soothed, and the wide expanse without gave a sense of freedom which refreshed me. I determined

not to return to-night to the gloom-haunted rooms, but to sleep here, where, of old, ladies had sat and sung and lived sweet lives whilst their gentle breasts were

sad for their menfolk away in the midst of remorseless wars. I drew a great couch out of its place near the corner, so that as I lay, I could look at the lovely

view to east and south, and unthinking of and uncaring for the dust, composed myself for sleep. I suppose I must have fallen asleep; I hope so, but I fear, for all

that followed was startlingly real—so real that now sitting here in the broad, full

sunlight of the morning, I cannot in the least believe that it was all sleep.

I was not alone. The room was the same, unchanged in any way since I came

into it; I could see along the floor, in the brilliant moonlight, my own footsteps

marked where I had disturbed the long accumulation of dust. In the moonlight opposite me were three young women, ladies by their dress and manner. I

thought at the time that I must be dreaming when I saw them, for, though the moonlight was behind them, they

threw no shadow on the floor. They came

close to me, and looked at me for some time, and then whispered together. Two

were dark, and had high aquiline noses, like the Count, and great dark, piercing

eyes that seemed to be almost red when contrasted with the pale yellow moon.

The other was fair, as fair as can be, with great wavy masses of golden hair and

eyes like pale sapphires. I seemed somehow to know her face, and to know it in

connection with some dreamy fear, but I could not recollect at the moment how

or where. All three had brilliant white teeth that shone like pearls against the ruby of their voluptuous lips. There was something about them that made me

uneasy, some longing and at the same time some deadly fear. I felt in my heart a

wicked, burning desire that they would kiss me with those red lips. It is not good to note this down, lest some day it should meet Mina’s eyes and cause her pain;

but it is the truth. They whispered together, and then they all three laughed—

such a silvery, musical laugh, but as hard as though the sound never could have

come through the softness of human lips. It was like the intolerable, tingling sweetness of water-glasses when played on by a cunning hand. The fair girl

shook her head coquettishly, and the other two urged her on. One said:—

“Go on! You are first, and we shall follow; yours is the right to begin.” The

other added:—

“He is young and strong; there are kisses for us all.” I lay quiet, looking out

under my eyelashes in an agony of delightful anticipation. The fair girl advanced

and bent over me till I could feel the movement of her breath upon me. Sweet it

was in one sense, honey-sweet, and sent the same tingling through the nerves as

her voice, but with a bitter underlying the sweet, a bitter offensiveness, as one smells in blood.

I was afraid to raise my eyelids, but looked out and saw perfectly under the

lashes. The girl went on her knees, and bent over me, simply gloating. There was

a deliberate voluptuousness which was both thrilling and repulsive, and as she arched her neck she actually licked her lips like an animal, till I could see in the

moonlight the moisture shining on the scarlet lips and on the red tongue as it lapped the white sharp teeth. Lower and lower went her head as the lips went below the range of my mouth and chin and seemed about to fasten on my throat.

Then she paused, and I could hear the churning sound of her tongue as it licked

her teeth and lips, and could feel the hot breath on my neck. Then the skin of my

throat began to tingle as one’s flesh does when the hand that is to tickle it approaches nearer—nearer. I could feel the soft, shivering touch of the lips on the super-sensitive skin of my throat, and the hard dents of two sharp teeth, just

touching and pausing there. I closed my eyes in a languorous ecstasy and waited

—waited with beating heart.

But at that instant, another sensation swept through me as quick as lightning.

I was conscious of the presence of the Count, and of his being as if lapped in a

storm of fury. As my eyes opened involuntarily I saw his strong hand grasp the

slender neck of the fair woman and with giant’s power draw it back, the blue eyes transformed with fury, the white teeth champing with rage, and the fair cheeks blazing red with passion. But the Count! Never did I imagine such wrath

and fury, even to the demons of the pit. His eyes were positively blazing. The red

light in them was lurid, as if the flames of hell-fire blazed behind them. His face

was deathly pale, and the lines of it were hard like drawn wires; the thick

eyebrows that met over the nose now seemed like a heaving bar of white-hot metal. With a fierce sweep of his arm, he hurled the woman from him, and then

motioned to the others, as though he were beating them back; it was the same imperious gesture that I had seen used to the wolves. In a voice which, though

low and almost in a whisper seemed to cut through the air and then ring round

the room he said:—

“How dare you touch him, any of you? How dare you cast eyes on him when

I had forbidden it? Back, I tell you all! This man belongs to me! Beware how you meddle with him, or you’ll have to deal with me.” The fair girl, with a laugh

of ribald coquetry, turned to answer him:—

“You yourself never loved; you never love!” On this the other women joined,

and such a mirthless, hard, soulless laughter rang through the room that it almost

made me faint to hear; it seemed like the pleasure of fiends. Then the Count turned, after looking at my face attentively, and said in a soft whisper:—

“Yes, I too can love; you yourselves can tell it from the past. Is it not so?

Well, now I promise you that when I am done with him you shall kiss him at your will. Now go! go! I must awaken him, for there is work to be done.”

“Are we to have nothing to-night?” said one of them, with a low laugh, as she

pointed to the bag which he had thrown upon the floor, and which moved as though there were some living thing within it. For answer he nodded his head.

One of the women jumped forward and opened it. If my ears did not deceive me

there was a gasp and a low wail, as of a half-smothered child. The women closed

round, whilst I was aghast with horror; but as I looked they disappeared, and with them the dreadful bag. There was no door near them, and they could not have passed me without my noticing. They simply seemed to fade into the rays

of the moonlight and pass out through the window, for I could see outside the dim, shadowy forms for a moment before they entirely faded away.

Then the horror overcame me, and I sank down unconscious.

CHAPTER IV

JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL— *continued*

I AWOKE in my own bed. If it be that I had not dreamt, the Count must have carried me here. I tried to satisfy myself on

the subject, but could not arrive at

any unquestionable result. To be sure, there were certain small evidences, such

as that my clothes were folded and laid by in a manner which was not my habit.

My watch was still unwound, and I am rigorously accustomed to wind it the last

thing before going to bed, and many such details. But these things are no proof,

for they may have been evidences that my mind was not as usual, and, from some cause or another, I had certainly been much upset. I must watch for proof.

Of one thing I am glad: if it was that the Count carried me here and undressed

me, he must have been hurried in his task, for my pockets are intact. I am sure

this diary would have been a mystery to him which he would not have brooked.

He would have taken or destroyed it. As I look round this room, although it has

been to me so full of fear, it is now a sort of sanctuary, for nothing can be more

dreadful than those awful women, who were—who *are*—waiting to suck my

blood.

18 May. —I have been down to look at that room again in daylight, for I *must* know the truth. When I got to the doorway at the top of the stairs I found it closed. It had been so forcibly driven against the jamb that part of the woodwork

was splintered. I could see that the bolt of the lock had not been shot, but the door is fastened from the inside. I fear it was no dream, and must act on this surmise.

19 May. —I am surely in the toils. Last night the Count asked me in the suavest tones to write three letters, one saying that my work here was nearly done, and that I should start for home within a few days, another that I was starting on the next morning from the time of the letter, and the third that I had

left the castle and arrived at Bistritz. I would fain have rebelled, but felt that in

the present state of things it would be madness to quarrel openly with the Count

whilst I am so absolutely in his power; and to refuse would be to excite his suspicion and to arouse his anger. He knows that I know too much, and that I must not live, lest I be dangerous to him; my only chance is to prolong my

opportunities. Something may occur which will give me a chance to escape. I saw in his eyes something of that gathering wrath which was manifest when he

hurled that fair woman from him. He explained to me that posts were few and uncertain, and that my writing now would ensure ease of mind to my friends; and he assured me with so much impressiveness that he would countermand the

later letters, which would be held over at Bistritz until due time in case chance

would admit of my prolonging my stay, that to oppose him would have been to

create new suspicion. I therefore pretended to fall in with his views, and asked

him what dates I should put on the letters. He calculated a minute, and then said:

—

“The first should be June 12, the second June 19, and the third June 29.”

I know now the span of my life. God help me!

28 May. —There is a chance of escape, or at any rate of being able to send word home. A band of Szgany have come to the castle, and are encamped in the

courtyard. These Szgany are gipsies; I have notes of them in my book. They are

peculiar to this part of the world, though allied to the ordinary gipsies all the world over. There are thousands of them in Hungary and Transylvania, who are

almost outside all law. They attach themselves as a rule to some great noble or

boyar, and call themselves by his name. They are fearless and without religion, save superstition, and they talk only their own varieties of the Romany tongue.

I shall write some letters home, and shall try to get them to have them posted.

I have already spoken them through my window to begin acquaintanceship.

They took their hats off and made obeisance and many signs, which, however, I

could not understand any more than I could their spoken language....

I have written the letters. Mina’s is in shorthand, and I simply ask Mr.

Hawkins to communicate with her. To her I have explained my situation, but

without the horrors which I may only surmise. It would shock and frighten her to

death were I to expose my heart to her. Should the letters not carry, then the Count shall not yet know my secret or the extent of my knowledge....

I have given the letters; I threw them through the bars of my window with a

gold piece, and made what signs I could to have them posted. The man who took

them pressed them to his heart and bowed, and then put them in his cap. I could

do no more. I stole back to the study, and began to read. As the Count did not come in, I have written here....

The Count has come. He sat down beside me, and said in his smoothest voice

as he opened two letters:—

“The Szgany has given me these, of which, though I know not whence they

come, I shall, of course, take care. See!”—he must have looked at it—“one is from you, and to my friend Peter Hawkins; the other”—here he caught sight of

the strange symbols as he opened the envelope, and the dark look came into his

face, and his eyes blazed wickedly—“the other is a vile thing, an outrage upon

friendship and hospitality! It is not signed. Well! so it cannot matter to us.” And

he calmly held letter and envelope in the flame of the lamp till they were consumed. Then he went on:—

“The letter to Hawkins—that I shall, of course, send on, since it is yours.

Your letters are sacred to me. Your pardon, my friend, that unknowingly I did break the seal. Will you not cover it again?” He held out the letter to me, and with a courteous bow handed me a clean envelope. I could only redirect it and

hand it to him in silence. When he went out of the room I could hear the key turn

softly. A minute later I went over and tried it, and the door was locked.

When, an hour or two after, the Count came quietly into the room, his coming

awakened me, for I had gone to sleep on the sofa. He was very courteous and very cheery in his manner, and seeing that I had been sleeping, he said:—

“So, my friend, you are tired? Get to bed. There is the surest rest. I may not

have the pleasure to talk to-night, since there are many labours to me; but you will sleep, I pray.” I passed to my room and went to bed, and, strange to say, slept without dreaming. Despair has its own calms.

31 May. —This morning when I woke I thought I would provide myself with

some paper and envelopes from my bag and keep them in my pocket, so that I

might write in case I should get an opportunity, but again a surprise, again a shock!

Every scrap of paper was gone, and with it all my notes, my memoranda,

relating to railways and travel, my letter of credit, in fact all that might be useful

to me were I once outside the castle. I sat and pondered awhile, and then some

thought occurred to me, and I made search of my portmanteau and in the

wardrobe where I had placed my clothes.

The suit in which I had travelled was gone, and also my overcoat and rug; I

could find no trace of them anywhere. This looked like some new scheme of

villainy....

17 June. —This morning, as I was sitting on the edge of my bed cudgelling my brains, I heard without a cracking of whips and pounding and scraping of horses' feet up the rocky path beyond the courtyard. With joy I hurried to the window, and saw drive into the yard two great leiter-wagons, each drawn by

eight sturdy horses, and at the head of each pair a Slovak, with his wide hat, great nail-studded belt, dirty sheepskin, and high boots. They had also their long

staves in hand. I ran to the door, intending to descend and try and join them through the main hall, as I thought that way might be opened for them. Again a

shock: my door was fastened on the outside.

Then I ran to the window and cried to them. They looked up at me stupidly

and pointed, but just then the "hetman" of the Szgany came out, and seeing them

pointing to my window, said something, at which they laughed. Henceforth no

effort of mine, no piteous cry or agonised entreaty, would make them even look

at me. They resolutely turned away. The leiter-wagons contained great, square boxes, with handles of thick rope; these were evidently empty by the ease with

which the Slovaks handled them, and by their resonance as they were roughly moved. When they were all unloaded and packed in a great heap in one corner of

the yard, the Slovaks were given some money by the Szgany, and spitting on it

for luck, lazily went each to his horse’s head. Shortly afterwards, I heard the cracking of their whips die away in the distance.

24 June, before morning. —Last night the Count left me early, and locked himself into his own room. As soon as I dared I ran up the winding stair, and looked out of the window, which opened south. I thought I would watch for the

Count, for there is something going on. The Szgany are quartered somewhere in

the castle and are doing work of some kind. I know it, for now and then I hear a

far-away muffled sound as of mattock and spade, and, whatever it is, it must be

the end of some ruthless villainy.

I had been at the window somewhat less than half an hour, when I saw

something coming out of the Count’s window. I drew back and watched

carefully, and saw the whole man emerge. It was a new shock to me to find that

he had on the suit of clothes which I had worn whilst travelling here, and slung

over his shoulder the terrible bag which I had seen the women take away. There

could be no doubt as to his quest, and in my garb, too! This, then, is his new scheme of evil: that he will allow others to see me, as they think, so that he may

both leave evidence that I have been seen in the towns or villages posting my own letters, and that any wickedness which he may do shall by the local people

be attributed to me.

It makes me rage to think that this can go on, and whilst I am shut up here, a

veritable prisoner, but without that protection of the law which is even a

criminal’s right and consolation.

I thought I would watch for the Count’s return, and for a long time sat

doggedly at the window. Then I began to notice that there were some quaint little

specks floating in the rays of the moonlight. They were like the tiniest grains of

dust, and they whirled round and gathered in clusters in a nebulous sort of way. I

watched them with a sense of soothing, and a sort of calm stole over me. I leaned

back in the embrasure in a more comfortable position, so that I could enjoy more

fully the aërial gambolling.

Something made me start up, a low, piteous howling of dogs somewhere far

below in the valley, which was hidden from my sight. Louder it seemed to ring

in my ears, and the floating motes of dust to take new shapes to the sound as they danced in the moonlight. I felt myself struggling to awake to some call of

my instincts; nay, my very soul was struggling, and my half-remembered

sensibilities were striving to answer the call. I was becoming hypnotised!

Quicker and quicker danced the dust; the moonbeams seemed to quiver as they

went by me into the mass of gloom beyond. More and more they gathered till they seemed to take dim phantom shapes. And then I started, broad awake and in

full possession of my senses, and ran screaming from the place. The phantom shapes, which were becoming gradually materialised from the moonbeams, were

those of the three ghostly women to whom I was doomed. I fled, and felt

somewhat safer in my own room, where there was no moonlight and where the

lamp was burning brightly.

When a couple of hours had passed I heard something stirring in the Count’s

room, something like a sharp wail quickly suppressed; and then there was

silence, deep, awful silence, which chilled me. With a beating heart, I tried the

door; but I was locked in my prison, and could do nothing. I sat down and simply cried.

As I sat I heard a sound in the courtyard without—the agonised cry of a

woman. I rushed to the window, and throwing it up, peered out between the bars.

There, indeed, was a woman with dishevelled hair, holding her hands over her heart as one distressed with running. She was leaning against a corner of the gateway. When she saw my face at the window she threw herself forward, and

shouted in a voice laden with menace:—

“Monster, give me my child!”

She threw herself on her knees, and raising up her hands, cried the same words in tones which wrung my heart. Then she tore her hair and beat her breast,

and abandoned herself to all the violences of extravagant emotion. Finally, she threw herself forward, and, though I could not see her, I could hear the beating of

her naked hands against the door.

Somewhere high overhead, probably on the tower, I heard the voice of the

Count calling in his harsh, metallic whisper. His call seemed to be answered from far and wide by the howling of wolves. Before many minutes had passed a

pack of them poured, like a pent-up dam when liberated, through the wide

entrance into the courtyard.

There was no cry from the woman, and the howling of the wolves was but

short. Before long they streamed away singly, licking their lips.

I could not pity her, for I knew now what had become of her child, and she

was better dead.

What shall I do? what can I do? How can I escape from this dreadful thing of

night and gloom and fear?

25 June, morning. —No man knows till he has suffered from the night how sweet and how dear to his heart and eye the morning can be. When the sun grew

so high this morning that it struck the top of the great gateway opposite my window, the high spot which it touched seemed to me as if the dove from the ark

had lighted there. My fear fell from me as if it had been a vaporous garment which dissolved in the warmth. I must take action of some sort whilst the

courage of the day is upon me. Last night one of my post-dated letters went to

post, the first of that fatal series which is to blot out the very traces of my existence from the earth.

Let me not think of it. Action!

It has always been at night-time that I have been molested or threatened, or in

some way in danger or in fear. I have not yet seen the Count in the daylight. Can

it be that he sleeps when others wake, that he may be awake whilst they sleep? If

I could only get into his room! But there is no possible way. The door is always

locked, no way for me.

Yes, there is a way, if one dares to take it. Where his body has gone why may

not another body go? I have seen him myself crawl from his window. Why

should not I imitate him, and go in by his window? The chances are desperate,

but my need is more desperate still. I shall risk it. At the worst it can only be death; and a man’s death is not a calf’s, and the dreaded Hereafter may still be

open to me. God help me in my task! Good-bye, Mina, if I fail; good-bye, my faithful friend and second father; good-bye, all, and last of all Mina!

Same day, later. —I have made the effort, and God, helping me, have come safely back to this room. I must put down every detail in order. I went whilst my

courage was fresh straight to the window on the south side, and at once got outside on the narrow ledge of stone which

runs around the building on this side.

The stones are big and roughly cut, and the mortar has by process of time been

washed away between them. I took off my boots, and ventured out on the

desperate way. I looked down once, so as to make sure that a sudden glimpse of

the awful depth would not overcome me, but after that kept my eyes away from

it. I knew pretty well the direction and distance of the Count’s window, and made for it as well as I could, having regard to the opportunities available. I did

not feel dizzy—I suppose I was too excited—and the time seemed ridiculously

short till I found myself standing on the window-sill and trying to raise up the sash. I was filled with agitation, however, when I bent down and slid feet foremost in through the window. Then I looked around for the Count, but, with

surprise and gladness, made a discovery. The room was empty! It was barely

furnished with odd things, which seemed to have never been used; the furniture

was something the same style as that in the south rooms, and was covered with

dust. I looked for the key, but it was not in the lock, and I could not find it anywhere. The only thing I found was a

great heap of gold in one corner—gold

of all kinds, Roman, and British, and Austrian, and Hungarian, and Greek and Turkish money, covered with a film of dust, as though it had lain long in the ground. None of it that I noticed was less than three hundred years old. There were also chains and ornaments, some jewelled, but all of them old and stained.

At one corner of the room was a heavy door. I tried it, for, since I could not

find the key of the room or the key of the outer door, which was the main object

of my search, I must make further examination, or all my efforts would be in vain. It was open, and led through a stone passage to a circular stairway, which

went steeply down. I descended, minding carefully where I went, for the stairs were dark, being only lit by loopholes in the heavy masonry. At the bottom there

was a dark, tunnel-like passage, through which came a deathly, sickly odour, the

odour of old earth newly turned. As I went through the passage the smell grew

closer and heavier. At last I pulled open a heavy door which stood ajar, and found myself in an old, ruined chapel, which had evidently been used as a

graveyard. The roof was broken, and in two places were steps leading to vaults,

but the ground had recently been dug over, and the earth placed in great wooden

boxes, manifestly those which had been brought by the Slovaks. There was nobody about, and I made search for any further outlet, but there was none. Then

I went over every inch of the ground, so as not to lose a chance. I went down even into the vaults, where the dim light struggled, although to do so was a dread

to my very soul. Into two of these I went, but saw nothing except fragments of

old coffins and piles of dust; in the third, however, I made a discovery.

There, in one of the great boxes, of which there were fifty in all, on a pile of

newly dug earth, lay the Count! He was either dead or asleep, I could not say which—for the eyes were open and stony, but without the glassiness of death—

and the cheeks had the warmth of life through all their pallor; the lips were as red as ever. But there was no sign of movement, no pulse, no breath, no beating

of the heart. I bent over him, and tried to find any sign of life, but in vain. He could not have lain there long, for the earthy smell would have passed away in a

few hours. By the side of the box was its cover, pierced with holes here and there. I thought he might have the keys on him, but when I went to search I saw

the dead eyes, and in them, dead though they were, such a look of hate, though

unconscious of me or my presence, that I fled from the place, and leaving the Count’s room by the window, crawled again up the castle wall. Regaining my

room, I threw myself panting upon the bed and tried to think....

29 June. —To-day is the date of my last letter, and the Count has taken steps

to prove that it was genuine, for again I saw him leave the castle by the same window, and in my clothes. As he went down the wall, lizard fashion, I wished I

had a gun or some lethal weapon, that I might destroy him; but I fear that no weapon wrought alone by man’s hand would have any effect on him. I dared not

wait to see him return, for I feared to see those weird sisters. I came back to the

library, and read there till I fell asleep.

I was awakened by the Count, who looked at me as grimly as a man can look

as he said:—

“To-morrow, my friend, we must part. You return to your beautiful England, I

to some work which may have such an end that we may never meet. Your letter

home has been despatched; to-morrow I shall not be here, but all shall be ready

for your journey. In the morning come the Szgany, who have some labours of their own here, and also come some Slovaks. When they have gone, my carriage

shall come for you, and shall bear you to the Borgo Pass to meet the diligence

from Bukovina to Bistritz. But I am in hopes that I shall see more of you at Castle Dracula." I suspected him, and determined to test his sincerity. Sincerity!

It seems like a profanation of the word to write it in connection with such a

monster, so asked him point-blank:—

"Why may I not go to-night?"

"Because, dear sir, my coachman and horses are away on a mission."

"But I would walk with pleasure. I want to get away at once." He smiled,

such a soft, smooth, diabolical smile that I knew there was some trick behind his

smoothness. He said:—

"And your baggage?"

"I do not care about it. I can send for it some other time."

The Count stood up, and said, with a sweet courtesy which made me rub my

eyes, it seemed so real:—

“You English have a saying which is close to my heart, for its spirit is that which rules our *boyars*: ‘Welcome the coming; speed the parting guest.’ Come with me, my dear young friend. Not an hour shall you wait in my house against

your will, though sad am I at your going, and that you so suddenly desire it.

Come!” With a stately gravity, he, with the lamp, preceded me down the stairs and along the hall. Suddenly he stopped.

“Hark!”

Close at hand came the howling of many wolves. It was almost as if the

sound sprang up at the rising of his hand, just as the music of a great orchestra

seems to leap under the bâton of the conductor. After a pause of a moment, he

proceeded, in his stately way, to the door, drew back the ponderous bolts,

unhooked the heavy chains, and began to draw it open.

To my intense astonishment I saw that it was unlocked. Suspiciously, I looked

all round, but could see no key of any kind.

As the door began to open, the howling of the wolves without grew louder

and angrier; their red jaws, with champing teeth, and their blunt-clawed feet as

they leaped, came in through the opening door. I knew then that to struggle at the

moment against the Count was useless. With such allies as these at his

command, I could do nothing. But still the door continued slowly to open, and

only the Count’s body stood in the gap. Suddenly it struck me that this might be

the moment and means of my doom; I was to be given to the wolves, and at my

own instigation. There was a diabolical wickedness in the idea great enough for

the Count, and as a last chance I cried out:—

“Shut the door; I shall wait till morning!” and covered my face with my

hands to hide my tears of bitter disappointment. With one sweep of his powerful

arm, the Count threw the door shut, and the great bolts clanged and echoed through the hall as they shot back into their places.

In silence we returned to the library, and after a minute or two I went to my own room. The last I saw of Count Dracula was his kissing his hand to me; with

a red light of triumph in his eyes, and with a smile that Judas in hell might be proud of.

When I was in my room and about to lie down, I thought I heard a whispering

at my door. I went to it softly and listened. Unless my ears deceived me, I heard

the voice of the Count:—

“Back, back, to your own place! Your time is not yet come. Wait! Have

patience! To-night is mine. To-morrow night is yours!” There was a low, sweet

ripple of laughter, and in a rage I threw open the door, and saw without the three

terrible women licking their lips. As I appeared they all joined in a horrible laugh, and ran away.

I came back to my room and threw myself on my knees. It is then so near the

end? To-morrow! to-morrow! Lord, help me, and those to whom I am dear!

30 June, morning. —These may be the last words I ever write in this diary. I

slept till just before the dawn, and when I woke threw myself on my knees, for I

determined that if Death came he should find me ready.

At last I felt that subtle change in the air, and knew that the morning had come. Then came the welcome cock-crow, and I felt that I was safe. With a glad

heart, I opened my door and ran down to the hall. I had seen that the door was

unlocked, and now escape was before me. With hands that trembled with

eagerness, I unhooked the chains and drew back the massive bolts.

But the door would not move. Despair seized me. I pulled, and pulled, at the

door, and shook it till, massive as it was, it rattled in its casement. I could see the bolt shot. It had been locked after I left the Count.

Then a wild desire took me to obtain that key at any risk, and I determined

then and there to scale the wall again and gain the Count’s room. He might kill

me, but death now seemed the happier choice of evils. Without a pause I rushed

up to the east window, and scrambled down the wall, as before, into the Count’s

room. It was empty, but that was as I expected. I could not see a key anywhere,

but the heap of gold remained. I went through the door in the corner and down

the winding stair and along the dark passage to the old chapel. I knew now well

enough where to find the monster I sought.

The great box was in the same place, close against the wall, but the lid was

laid on it, not fastened down, but with the nails ready in their places to be hammered home. I knew I must reach the body for the key, so I raised the lid,

and laid it back against the wall; and then I saw something which filled my very soul with horror. There lay the Count, but looking as if his youth had been half

renewed, for the white hair and moustache were changed to dark iron-grey; the

cheeks were fuller, and the white skin seemed ruby-red underneath; the mouth was redder than ever, for on the lips were gouts of fresh blood, which trickled from the corners of the mouth and ran over the chin and neck. Even the deep, burning eyes seemed set amongst swollen flesh, for the lids and pouches

underneath were bloated. It seemed as if the whole awful creature were simply

gorged with blood. He lay like a filthy leech, exhausted with his repletion. I shuddered as I bent over to touch him, and every sense in me revolted at the contact; but I had to search, or I was lost. The coming night might see my own

body a banquet in a similar way to those horrid three. I felt all over the body, but

no sign could I find of the key. Then I stopped and looked at the Count. There

was a mocking smile on the bloated face which seemed to drive me mad. This

was the being I was helping to transfer to London, where, perhaps, for centuries

to come he might, amongst its teeming millions, satiate his lust for blood, and create a new and ever-widening circle of semi-demons to batten on the helpless.

The very thought drove me mad. A terrible desire came upon me to rid the world

of such a monster. There was no lethal weapon at hand, but I seized a shovel which the workmen had been using to fill the cases, and lifting it high, struck, with the edge downward, at the hateful face. But as I did so the head turned, and

the eyes fell full upon me, with all their blaze of basilisk horror. The sight seemed to paralyse me, and the shovel turned in my hand and glanced from the

face, merely making a deep gash above the forehead. The shovel fell from my hand across the box, and as I pulled it away the flange of the blade caught the

edge of the lid which fell over again, and hid the horrid thing from my sight. The

last glimpse I had was of the bloated face, blood-stained and fixed with a grin of

malice which would have held its own in the nethermost hell.

I thought and thought what should be my next move, but my brain seemed on

fire, and I waited with a despairing feeling growing over me. As I waited I heard

in the distance a gipsy song sung by merry voices coming closer, and through their song the rolling of heavy wheels and the cracking of whips; the Szgany and

the Slovaks of whom the Count had spoken were coming. With a last look

around and at the box which contained the vile body, I ran from the place and gained the Count’s room, determined to rush out at the moment the door should

be opened. With strained ears, I listened, and heard downstairs the grinding of the key in the great lock and the falling back of the heavy door. There must have

been some other means of entry, or some one had a key for one of the locked

doors. Then there came the sound of many feet tramping and dying away in some passage which sent up a clanging echo. I turned to run down again towards

the vault, where I might find the new entrance; but at the moment there seemed

to come a violent puff of wind, and the door to the winding stair blew to with a

shock that set the dust from the lintels flying. When I ran to push it open, I found

that it was hopelessly fast. I was again a prisoner, and the net of doom was closing round me more closely.

As I write there is in the passage below a sound of many tramping feet and

the crash of weights being set down heavily, doubtless the boxes, with their freight of earth. There is a sound of hammering; it is the box being nailed down.

Now I can hear the heavy feet tramping again along the hall, with many other idle feet coming behind them.

The door is shut, and the chains rattle; there is a grinding of the key in the lock; I can hear the key withdraw: then another door opens and shuts; I hear the

creaking of lock and bolt.

Hark! in the courtyard and down the rocky way the roll of heavy wheels, the

crack of whips, and the chorus of the Szgany as they pass into the distance.

I am alone in the castle with those awful women. Faugh! Mina is a woman,

and there is nought in common. They are devils of the Pit!

I shall not remain alone with them; I shall try to scale the castle wall farther

than I have yet attempted. I shall take some of the gold with me, lest I want it later. I may find a way from this dreadful

place.

And then away for home! away to the quickest and nearest train! away from

this cursed spot, from this cursed land, where the devil and his children still walk

with earthly feet!

At least God’s mercy is better than that of these monsters, and the precipice is

steep and high. At its foot a man may sleep—as a man. Good-bye, all! Mina!

CHAPTER V

Letter from Miss Mina Murray to Miss Lucy Westenra.

“*9 May.*

“My dearest Lucy,—

“Forgive my long delay in writing, but I have been simply overwhelmed with

work. The life of an assistant schoolmistress is sometimes trying. I am longing to

be with you, and by the sea, where we can talk together freely and build our castles in the air. I have been working very hard lately, because I want to keep up

with Jonathan’s studies, and I have been practising shorthand very assiduously.

When we are married I shall be able to be useful to Jonathan, and if I can stenograph well enough I can take down what he wants to say in this way and write it out for him on the typewriter, at which also I am practising very hard. He

and I sometimes write letters in shorthand, and he is keeping a stenographic journal of his travels abroad. When I am with you I shall keep a diary in the same way. I don’t mean one of those two-pages-to-the-week-with-Sunday-squeezed-in-a-corner diaries, but a sort of journal which I can write in whenever

I feel inclined. I do not suppose there will be much of interest to other people;

but it is not intended for them. I may show it to Jonathan some day if there is in

it anything worth sharing, but it is really an exercise book. I shall try to do what I

see lady journalists do: interviewing and writing descriptions and trying to

remember conversations. I am told that, with a little practice, one can remember

all that goes on or that one hears said during a day. However, we shall see. I will

tell you of my little plans when we meet. I have just had a few hurried lines from

Jonathan from Transylvania. He is well, and will be returning in about a week. I

am longing to hear all his news. It must be so nice to see strange countries. I wonder if we—I mean Jonathan and I—shall ever see them together. There is the

ten o’clock bell ringing. Good-bye.

“Your loving

“MINA.

“Tell me all the news when you write. You have not told me anything for a

long time. I hear rumours, and especially of a tall, handsome, curly-haired

man???”

Letter, Lucy Westenra to Mina Murray.

“*17, Chatham Street*,

“*Wednesday*.

“My dearest Mina,—

“I must say you tax me *very* unfairly with being a bad correspondent. I wrote

to you *twice* since we parted, and your last letter was only your *second*. Besides, I have nothing to tell you. There is really nothing to interest you. Town is very

pleasant just now, and we go a good deal to picture-galleries and for walks and

rides in the park. As to the tall, curly-haired man, I suppose it was the one who

was with me at the last Pop. Some one has evidently been telling tales. That was

Mr. Holmwood. He often comes to see us, and he and mamma get on very well

together; they have so many things to talk about in common. We met some time

ago a man that would just *do for you*, if you were not already engaged to Jonathan. He is an excellent *parti*, being handsome, well off, and of good birth.

He is a doctor and really clever. Just fancy! He is only nine-and-twenty, and he

has an immense lunatic asylum all under his own care. Mr. Holmwood

introduced him to me, and he called here to see us, and often comes now. I think

he is one of the most resolute men I ever saw, and yet the most calm. He seems

absolutely imperturbable. I can fancy what a wonderful power he must have over

his patients. He has a curious habit of looking one straight in the face, as if trying

to read one’s thoughts. He tries this on very much with me, but I flatter myself

he has got a tough nut to crack. I know that from my glass. Do you ever try to

read your own face? *I do*, and I can tell you it is not a bad study, and gives you more trouble than you can well fancy if you have never tried it. He says that I

afford him a curious psychological study, and I humbly think I do. I do not, as

you know, take sufficient interest in dress to be able to describe the new fashions. Dress is a bore. That is slang again, but never mind; Arthur says that

every day. There, it is all out. Mina, we have told all our secrets to each other since we were *children*; we have slept together and eaten together, and laughed

and cried together; and now, though I have spoken, I would like to speak more.

Oh, Mina, couldn’t you guess? I love him. I am blushing as I write, for although

I *think* he loves me, he has not told me so in words. But oh, Mina, I love him; I love him; I love him! There, that does me good. I wish I were with you, dear, sitting by the fire undressing, as we used to sit; and I would try to tell you what I

feel. I do not know how I am writing this even to you. I am afraid to stop, or I

should tear up the letter, and I don’t want to stop, for I *do* so want to tell you all.

Let me hear from you *at once*, and tell me all that you think about it. Mina, I must stop. Good-night. Bless me in your prayers; and, Mina, pray for my

happiness.

“LUCY.

“P.S.—I need not tell you this is a secret. Good-night again.

“L.”

Letter, Lucy Westenra to Mina Murray.

“*24 May*.

“My dearest Mina,—

“Thanks, and thanks, and thanks again for your sweet letter. It was so nice to

be able to tell you and to have your sympathy.

“My dear, it never rains but it pours. How true the old proverbs are. Here am

I, who shall be twenty in September, and yet I never had a proposal till to-day,

not a real proposal, and to-day I have had three. Just fancy! THREE proposals in

one day! Isn’t it awful! I feel sorry, really and truly sorry, for two of the poor fellows. Oh, Mina, I am so happy that I don’t know what to do with myself. And

three proposals! But, for goodness’ sake, don’t tell any of the girls, or they would

be getting all sorts of extravagant ideas and imagining themselves injured and slighted if in their very first day at home they did not get six at least. Some girls

are so vain! You and I, Mina dear, who are engaged and are going to settle down

soon soberly into old married women, can despise vanity. Well, I must tell you

about the three, but you must keep it a secret, dear, from *every one*, except, of course, Jonathan. You will tell him, because I would, if I were in your place, certainly tell Arthur. A woman ought to tell her husband everything—don't you

think so, dear?—and I must be fair. Men like women, certainly their wives, to be

quite as fair as they are; and women, I am afraid, are not always quite as fair as

they should be. Well, my dear, number One came just before lunch. I told you of

him, Dr. John Seward, the lunatic-asylum man, with the strong jaw and the good

forehead. He was very cool outwardly, but was nervous all the same. He had evidently been schooling himself as to all sorts of little things, and remembered

them; but he almost managed to sit down on his silk hat, which men don't

generally do when they are cool, and then when he wanted to appear at ease he

kept playing with a lancet in a way that made me nearly scream. He spoke to me,

Mina, very straightforwardly. He told me how dear I was to him, though he had

known me so little, and what his life would be with me to help and cheer him.

He was going to tell me how unhappy he would be if I did not care for him, but

when he saw me cry he said that he was a brute and would not add to my present

trouble. Then he broke off and asked if I could love him in time; and when I shook my head his hands trembled, and then with some hesitation he asked me if

I cared already for any one else. He put it very nicely, saying that he did not want

to wring my confidence from me, but only to know, because if a woman’s heart

was free a man might have hope. And then, Mina, I felt a sort of duty to tell him

that there was some one. I only told him that much, and then he stood up, and he looked very strong and very grave as he took both my hands in his and said he

hoped I would be happy, and that if I ever wanted a friend I must count him one

of my best. Oh, Mina dear, I can’t help crying: and you must excuse this letter

being all blotted. Being proposed to is all very nice and all that sort of thing, but

it isn’t at all a happy thing when you have to see a poor fellow, whom you know

loves you honestly, going away and looking all broken-hearted, and to know

that, no matter what he may say at the moment, you are passing quite out of his

life. My dear, I must stop here at present, I feel so miserable, though I am so happy.

“*Evening.*

“Arthur has just gone, and I feel in better spirits than when I left off, so I can

go on telling you about the day. Well, my dear, number Two came after lunch.

He is such a nice fellow, an American from Texas, and he looks so young and so

fresh that it seems almost impossible that he has been to so many places and has

had such adventures. I sympathise with poor Desdemona when she had such a

dangerous stream poured in her ear, even by a black man. I suppose that we women are such cowards that we think a man will save us from fears, and we marry him. I know now what I would do if I were a man and wanted to make a

girl love me. No, I don’t, for there was Mr. Morris telling us his stories, and Arthur never told any, and yet—— My dear, I am somewhat previous. Mr.

Quincey P. Morris found me alone. It seems that a man always does find a girl

alone. No, he doesn’t, for Arthur tried twice to *make* a chance, and I helping him all I could; I am not ashamed to say it now. I must tell you beforehand that Mr.

Morris doesn’t always speak slang—that is to say, he never does so to strangers

or before them, for he is really well educated and has exquisite manners—but he

found out that it amused me to hear him talk American slang, and whenever I was present, and there was no one to be shocked, he said such funny things. I am

afraid, my dear, he has to invent it all, for it fits exactly into whatever else he has to say. But this is a way slang has. I do not know myself if I shall ever speak slang; I do not know if Arthur likes it, as I have never heard him use any as yet.

Well, Mr. Morris sat down beside me and looked as happy and jolly as he could,

but I could see all the same that he was very nervous. He took my hand in his,

and said ever so sweetly:—

“ ‘Miss Lucy, I know I ain’t good enough to regulate the fixin’s of your little

shoes, but I guess if you wait till you find a man that is you will go join them seven young women with the lamps when you quit. Won’t you just hitch up

alongside of me and let us go down the long road together, driving in double

harness?’

“Well, he did look so good-humoured and so jolly that it didn’t seem half so

hard to refuse him as it did poor Dr. Seward; so I said, as lightly as I could, that I

did not know anything of hitching, and that I wasn’t broken to harness at all yet.

Then he said that he had spoken in a light manner, and he hoped that if he had

made a mistake in doing so on so grave, so momentous, an occasion for him, I

would forgive him. He really did look serious when he was saying it, and I couldn’t help feeling a bit serious too—I know, Mina, you will think me a horrid

flirt—though I couldn’t help feeling a sort of exultation that he was number two

in one day. And then, my dear, before I could say a word he began pouring out a

perfect torrent of love-making, laying his very heart and soul at my feet. He looked so earnest over it that I shall never again think that a man must be playful

always, and never earnest, because he is merry at times. I suppose he saw

something in my face which checked him, for he suddenly stopped, and said

with a sort of manly fervour that I could have loved him for if I had been free:—

“ ‘Lucy, you are an honest-hearted girl, I know. I should not be here speaking

to you as I am now if I did not believe you clean grit, right through to the very

depths of your soul. Tell me, like one good fellow to another, is there any one else that you care for? And if there is I’ll never trouble you a hair’s breadth again, but will be, if you will let me, a very faithful friend.’

“My dear Mina, why are men so noble when we women are so little worthy

of them? Here was I almost making fun of this great-hearted, true gentleman. I

burst into tears—I am afraid, my dear, you will think this a very sloppy letter in

more ways than one—and I really felt very badly. Why can’t they let a girl marry

three men, or as many as want her, and save all this trouble? But this is heresy,

and I must not say it. I am glad to say that, though I was crying, I was able to

look into Mr. Morris’s brave eyes, and I told him out straight:—

“ ‘Yes, there is some one I love, though he has not told me yet that he even loves me.’ I was right to speak to him so frankly, for quite a light came into his

face, and he put out both his hands and took mine—I think I put them into his—

and said in a hearty way:—

“ ‘That’s my brave girl. It’s better worth being late for a chance of winning

you than being in time for any other girl in the world. Don’t cry, my dear. If it’s

for me, I’m a hard nut to crack; and I take it standing up. If that other fellow doesn’t know his happiness, well, he’d better look for it soon, or he’ll have to deal with me. Little girl, your honesty and pluck have made me a friend, and that’s rarer than a lover; it’s more unselfish anyhow. My dear, I’m going to have

a pretty lonely walk between this and Kingdom Come. Won’t you give me one

kiss? It’ll be something to keep off the darkness now and then. You can, you know, if you like, for that other good fellow—he must be a good fellow, my dear, and a fine fellow, or you could not love him—hasn’t spoken yet.’ That quite won me, Mina, for it *was* brave and sweet of him, and noble, too, to a rival

—wasn’t it?—and he so sad; so I leant over and kissed him. He stood up with my two hands in his, and as he looked down into my face—I am afraid I was blushing very much—he said:—

“ ‘Little girl, I hold your hand, and you’ve kissed me, and if these things don’t make us friends nothing ever will. Thank you for your sweet honesty to me, and good-bye.’ He wrung my hand, and taking up his hat, went straight out

of the room without looking back, without a tear or a quiver or a pause; and I am

crying like a baby. Oh, why must a man like that be made unhappy when there

are lots of girls about who would worship the very ground he trod on? I know I

would if I were free—only I don’t want to be free. My dear, this quite upset me,

and I feel I cannot write of happiness just at once, after telling you of it; and I

don’t wish to tell of the number three until it can be all happy.

“Ever your loving

“LUCY.

“P.S.—Oh, about number Three—I needn’t tell you of number Three, need I?

Besides, it was all so confused; it seemed only a moment from his coming into

the room till both his arms were round me, and he was kissing me. I am very, very happy, and I don’t know what I have done to deserve it. I must only try in

the future to show that I am not ungrateful to God for all His goodness to me in

sending to me such a lover, such a husband, and such a friend.

“Good-bye.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

(Kept in phonograph)

25 May. —Ebb tide in appetite to-day. Cannot eat, cannot rest, so diary instead. Since my rebuff of yesterday I have a sort of empty feeling; nothing in

the world seems of sufficient importance to be worth the doing.... As I knew that

the only cure for this sort of thing was work, I went down amongst the patients. I

picked out one who has afforded me a study of much interest. He is so quaint that I am determined to understand him as well as I can. To-day I seemed to get

nearer than ever before to the heart of his mystery.

I questioned him more fully than I had ever done, with a view to making

myself master of the facts of his hallucination. In my manner of doing it there was, I now see, something of cruelty. I seemed to wish to keep him to the point

of his madness—a thing which I avoid with the patients as I would the mouth of

hell.

(*Mem.* , under what circumstances would I *not* avoid the pit of hell?) *Omnia Romæ venalia sunt.* Hell has its price! *verb. sap.* If there be anything behind this instinct it will be valuable to trace it afterwards *accurately*, so I had better commence to do so, therefore—

R. M. Renfield, ætat 59.—Sanguine temperament; great physical strength;

morbidly excitable; periods of gloom, ending in some fixed idea which I cannot

make out. I presume that the sanguine temperament itself and the disturbing

influence end in a mentally-accomplished finish; a possibly dangerous man,

probably dangerous if unselfish. In selfish men caution is as secure an armour for their foes as for themselves. What I think of on this point is, when self is the

fixed point the centripetal force is balanced with the centrifugal; when duty, a cause, etc., is the fixed point, the latter force is paramount, and only accident or a

series of accidents can balance it.

Letter, Quincey P. Morris to Hon. Arthur Holmwood.

“*25 May.*

“My dear Art,—

“We’ve told yarns by the camp-fire in the prairies; and dressed one another’s

wounds after trying a landing at the Marquesas; and drunk healths on the shore

of Titicaca. There are more yarns to be told, and other wounds to be healed, and

another health to be drunk. Won’t you let this be at my camp-fire to-morrow night? I have no hesitation in asking you, as I know a certain lady is engaged to a

certain dinner-party, and that you are free. There will only be one other, our old

pal at the Korea, Jack Seward. He’s coming, too, and we both want to mingle our

weeps over the wine-cup, and to drink a health with all our hearts to the happiest

man in all the wide world, who has won the noblest heart that God has made and the best worth winning. We promise you a hearty welcome, and a loving

greeting, and a health as true as your own right hand. We shall both swear to leave you at home if you drink too deep to a certain pair of eyes. Come!

“Yours, as ever and always,

“QUINCEY P. MORRIS.”

Telegram from Arthur Holmwood to Quincey P. Morris.

“*26 May.*

“Count me in every time. I bear messages which will make both your ears

tingle.

“ART.”

CHAPTER VI

MINA MURRAY’S JOURNAL

24 July. Whitby. —Lucy met me at the station, looking sweeter and lovelier than ever, and we drove up to the house at the Crescent in which they have rooms. This is a lovely place. The little river, the Esk, runs through a deep valley,

which broadens out as it comes near the harbour. A great viaduct runs across, with high piers, through which the view seems somehow further away than it

really is. The valley is beautifully green, and it is so steep that when you are on

the high land on either side you look right across it, unless you are near enough

to see down. The houses of the old town—the side away from us—are all red-

roofed, and seem piled up one over the other anyhow, like the pictures we see of

Nuremberg. Right over the town is the ruin of Whitby Abbey, which was sacked

by the Danes, and which is the scene of part of “Marmion,” where the girl was

built up in the wall. It is a most noble ruin, of immense size, and full of beautiful

and romantic bits; there is a legend that a white lady is seen in one of the windows. Between it and the town there is another church, the parish one, round

which is a big graveyard, all full of tombstones. This is to my mind the nicest spot in Whitby, for it lies right over the town, and has a full view of the harbour

and all up the bay to where the headland called Kettleness stretches out into the

sea. It descends so steeply over the harbour that part of the bank has fallen away,

and some of the graves have been destroyed. In one place part of the stonework

of the graves stretches out over the sandy pathway far below. There are walks, with seats beside them, through the churchyard; and people go and sit there all

day long looking at the beautiful view and enjoying the breeze. I shall come and

sit here very often myself and work. Indeed, I am writing now, with my book on

my knee, and listening to the talk of three old men who are sitting beside me.

They seem to do nothing all day but sit up here and talk.

The harbour lies below me, with, on the far side, one long granite wall

stretching out into the sea, with a curve outwards at the end of it, in the middle

of which is a lighthouse. A heavy sea-wall runs along outside of it. On the near

side, the sea-wall makes an elbow crooked inversely, and its end too has a lighthouse. Between the two piers there is a narrow opening into the harbour, which then suddenly widens.

It is nice at high water; but when the tide is out it shoals away to nothing, and

there is merely the stream of the Esk, running between banks of sand, with rocks here and there. Outside the harbour on this side there rises for about half a mile a

great reef, the sharp edge of which runs straight out from behind the south lighthouse. At the end of it is a buoy with a bell, which swings in bad weather,

and sends in a mournful sound on the wind. They have a legend here that when a

ship is lost bells are heard out at sea. I must ask the old man about this; he is coming this way....

He is a funny old man. He must be awfully old, for his face is all gnarled and

twisted like the bark of a tree. He tells me that he is nearly a hundred, and that he

was a sailor in the Greenland fishing fleet when Waterloo was fought. He is, I am afraid, a very sceptical person, for when I asked him about the bells at sea and the White Lady at the abbey he said very brusquely:—

“I wouldn’t fash masel’ about them, miss. Them things be all wore out. Mind,

I don’t say that they never was, but I do say that they wasn’t in my time. They be

all very well for comers and trippers, an’ the like, but not for a nice young lady

like you. Them feet-folks from York and Leeds that be always eatin’ cured

herrin’s an’ drinkin’ tea an’ lookin’ out to buy cheap jet would creed aught. I wonder masel’ who’d be bothered tellin’ lies to them—even the newspapers,

which is full of fool-talk.” I thought he would be a good person to learn interesting things from, so I asked him if he would mind telling me something about the whale-fishing in the old days. He was just settling himself to begin when the clock struck six, whereupon he laboured to get up, and said:—

“I must gang ageeanwards home now, miss. My grand-daughter doesn’t like

to be kept waitin’ when the tea is ready, for it takes me time to crammle aboon

the grees, for there be a many of ’em; an’, miss, I lack belly-timber sairly by the

clock.”

He hobbled away, and I could see him hurrying, as well as he could, down the

steps. The steps are a great feature on the place. They lead from the town up to

the church, there are hundreds of them—I do not know how many—and they

wind up in a delicate curve; the slope is so gentle that a horse could easily walk

up and down them. I think they must originally have had something to do with

the abbey. I shall go home too. Lucy went out visiting with her mother, and as

they were only duty calls, I did not go. They will be home by this.

1 August. —I came up here an hour ago with Lucy, and we had a most interesting talk with my old friend and the two others who always come and join

him. He is evidently the Sir Oracle of them, and I should think must have been in

his time a most dictatorial person. He will not admit anything, and downfaces

everybody. If he can’t out-argue them he bullies them, and then takes their silence for agreement with his views. Lucy was looking sweetly pretty in her white lawn frock; she has got a beautiful colour since she has been here. I noticed that the old men did not lose any time in coming up and sitting near her

when we sat down. She is so sweet with old people; I think they all fell in love

with her on the spot. Even my old man succumbed and did not contradict her, but gave me double share instead. I got him on the subject of the legends, and he

went off at once into a sort of sermon. I must try to remember it and put it down:

—

“It be all fool-talk, lock, stock, and barrel; that’s what it be, an’ nowt else.

These bans an’ wafts an’ boh-ghosts an’ barguests an’ bogles an’ all anent them is

only fit to set bairns an’ dizzy women a-belderin’. They be nowt but air-blebs.

They, an’ all grims an’ signs an’ warnin’s, be all invented by parsons an’ illsome

beuk-bodies an’ railway touters to skeer an’ scunner hafflin’s, an’ to get folks to

do somethin’ that they don’t other incline to. It makes me ireful to think o’ them.

Why, it’s them that, not content with printin’ lies on paper an’ preachin’ them out

of pulpits, does want to be cuttin’ them on the tombstones. Look here all around

you in what airt ye will; all them steans, holdin’ up their heads as well as they

can out of their pride, is acant—simply tumblin’ down with the weight o’ the lies

wrote on them, ‘Here lies the body’ or ‘Sacred to the memory’ wrote on all of them, an’ yet in nigh half of them there bean’t no bodies at all; an’ the memories

of them bean’t cared a pinch of snuff about, much less sacred. Lies all of them,

nothin’ but lies of one kind or another! My gog, but it’ll be a quare scowderment

at the Day of Judgment when they come tumblin’ up in their death-sarks, all jouped together an’ tryin’ to drag their tombsteans with them to prove how good

they was; some of them trimmlin’ and ditherin’, with their hands that dozzened

an’ slippy from lyin’ in the sea that they can’t even keep their grup o’ them.”

I could see from the old fellow’s self-satisfied air and the way in which he looked round for the approval of his cronies that he was “showing off,” so I put

in a word to keep him going:—

“Oh, Mr. Swales, you can’t be serious. Surely these tombstones are not all

wrong?”

“Yabblins! There may be a poorish few not wrong, savin’ where they make

out the people too good; for there be folk that do think a balm-bowl be like the

sea, if only it be their own. The whole thing be only lies. Now look you here; you come here a stranger, an’ you see this kirk-garth.” I nodded, for I thought it

better to assent, though I did not quite understand his dialect. I knew it had something to do with the church. He went on: “And you consate that all these

steans be aboon folk that be happed here, snod an’ snog?” I assented again.

“Then that be just where the lie comes in. Why, there be scores of these lay-beds

that be toom as old Dun’s ’bacca-box on Friday night.” He nudged one of his companions, and they all laughed. “And my gog! how could they be otherwise?

Look at that one, the aftest abaft the bier-bank: read it!” I went over and read:—

“Edward Spencelagh, master mariner, murdered by pirates off the coast of

Andres, April, 1854, æt. 30.” When I came back Mr. Swales went on:—

“Who brought him home, I wonder, to hap him here? Murdered off the coast

of Andres! an’ you consated his body lay under! Why, I could name ye a dozen

whose bones lie in the Greenland seas above”—he pointed northwards—“or

where the currents may have drifted them. There be the steans around ye. Ye can, with your young eyes, read the small-print of the lies from here. This Braithwaite Lowrey—I knew his father, lost in the *Lively* off Greenland in ’20;

or Andrew Woodhouse, drowned in the same seas in 1777; or John Paxton,

drowned off Cape Farewell a year later; or old John Rawlings, whose

grandfather sailed with me, drowned in the Gulf of Finland in ’50. Do ye think

that all these men will have to make a rush to Whitby when the trumpet sounds?

I have me antherums aboot it! I tell ye that when they got here they’d be jommlin’ an’ jostlin’ one another that way that it ’ud be like a fight up on the ice

in the old days, when we’d be at one another from daylight to dark, an’ tryin’ to

tie up our cuts by the light of the aurora borealis.” This was evidently local pleasantry, for the old man cackled over it, and his cronies joined in with gusto.

“But,” I said, “surely you are not quite correct, for you start on the

assumption that all the poor people, or their spirits, will have to take their tombstones with them on the Day of Judgment. Do you think that will be really

necessary?”

“Well, what else be they tombstones for? Answer me that, miss!”

“To please their relatives, I suppose.”

“To please their relatives, you suppose!” This he said with intense scorn.

“How will it pleasure their relatives to know that lies is wrote over them, and that everybody in the place knows that they be lies?” He pointed to a stone at our

feet which had been laid down as a slab, on which the seat was rested, close to

the edge of the cliff. “Read the lies on that thruff-stean,” he said. The letters were

upside down to me from where I sat, but Lucy was more opposite to them, so she

leant over and read:—

“Sacred to the memory of George Canon, who died, in the hope of a glorious

resurrection, on July, 29, 1873, falling from the rocks at Kettleness. This tomb

was erected by his sorrowing mother to her dearly beloved son. ‘He was the only son of his mother, and she was a widow.’ Really, Mr. Swales, I don’t see

anything very funny in that!” She spoke her comment very gravely and

somewhat severely.

“Ye don’t see aught funny! Ha! ha! But that’s because ye don’t gawm the

sorrowin’ mother was a hell-cat that hated him because he was acrewk’d—a

regular lamiter he was—an’ he hated her so that he committed suicide in order

that she mightn’t get an insurance she put on his life. He blew nigh the top of his

head off with an old musket that they had for scarin’ the crows with. ’Twarn’t for

crows then, for it brought the clegs and the dowps to him. That’s the way he fell

off the rocks. And, as to hopes of a glorious resurrection, I’ve often heard him

say masel’ that he hoped he’d go to hell, for his mother was so pious that she’d

be sure to go to heaven, an’ he didn’t want to addle where she was. Now isn’t that stean at any rate”—he hammered it with his stick as he spoke—“a pack of

lies? and won’t it make Gabriel keckle when Geordie comes pantin’ up the grees

with the tombstean balanced on his hump, and asks it to be took as evidence!”

I did not know what to say, but Lucy turned the conversation as she said, rising up:—

“Oh, why did you tell us of this? It is my favourite seat, and I cannot leave it;

and now I find I must go on sitting over the grave of a suicide.”

“That won’t harm ye, my pretty; an’ it may make poor Geordie gladsome to

have so trim a lass sittin’ on his lap. That won’t hurt ye. Why, I’ve sat here off

an’ on for nigh twenty years past, an’ it hasn’t done me no harm. Don’t ye fash

about them as lies under ye, or that doesn’ lie there either! It’ll be time for ye to

be getting scart when ye see the tombsteans all run away with, and the place as

bare as a stubble-field. There’s the clock, an’ I must gang. My service to ye, ladies!” And off he hobbled.

Lucy and I sat awhile, and it was all so beautiful before us that we took hands

as we sat; and she told me all over again about Arthur and their coming

marriage. That made me just a little heart-sick, for I haven’t heard from Jonathan

for a whole month.

The same day. I came up here alone, for I am very sad. There was no letter

for me. I hope there cannot be anything the matter with Jonathan. The clock has

just struck nine. I see the lights scattered all over the town, sometimes in rows

where the streets are, and sometimes singly; they run right up the Esk and die away in the curve of the valley. To my left the view is cut off by a black line of

roof of the old house next the abbey. The sheep and lambs are bleating in the fields away behind me, and there is a clatter of a donkey’s hoofs up the paved road below. The band on the pier is playing a harsh waltz in good time, and further along the quay there is a Salvation Army meeting in a back street.

Neither of the bands hears the other, but up here I hear and see them both. I wonder where Jonathan is and if he is thinking of me! I wish he were here.

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

5 June. —The case of Renfield grows more interesting the more I get to understand the man. He has certain qualities very largely developed; selfishness,

secrecy, and purpose. I wish I could get at what is the object of the latter. He seems to have some settled scheme of his own, but what it is I do not yet know.

His redeeming quality is a love of animals, though, indeed, he has such curious

turns in it that I sometimes imagine he is only abnormally cruel. His pets are of

odd sorts. Just now his hobby is catching flies. He has at present such a quantity

that I have had myself to expostulate. To my astonishment, he did not break out

into a fury, as I expected, but took the matter in simple seriousness. He thought

for a moment, and then said: “May I have three days? I shall clear them away.”

Of course, I said that would do. I must watch him.

18 June. —He has turned his mind now to spiders, and has got several very big fellows in a box. He keeps feeding them with his flies, and the number of the

latter is becoming sensibly diminished, although he has used half his food in attracting more flies from outside to his room.

1 July. —His spiders are now becoming as great a nuisance as his flies, and to-day I told him that he must get rid of them. He looked very sad at this, so I

said that he must clear out some of them, at all events. He cheerfully acquiesced

in this, and I gave him the same time as before for reduction. He disgusted me

much while with him, for when a horrid blow-fly, bloated with some carrion

food, buzzed into the room, he caught it, held it exultantly for a few moments between his finger and thumb, and,

before I knew what he was going to do, put it

in his mouth and ate it. I scolded him for it, but he argued quietly that it was very

good and very wholesome; that it was life, strong life, and gave life to him. This

gave me an idea, or the rudiment of one. I must watch how he gets rid of his spiders. He has evidently some deep problem in his mind, for he keeps a little note-book in which he is always jotting down something. Whole pages of it are

filled with masses of figures, generally single numbers added up in batches, and

then the totals added in batches again, as though he were “focussing” some account, as the auditors put it.

8 July. —There is a method in his madness, and the rudimentary idea in my mind is growing. It will be a whole idea soon, and then, oh, unconscious

cerebration! you will have to give the wall to your conscious brother. I kept away from my friend for a few days, so that I might notice if there were any change. Things remain as they were except that he has parted with some of his

pets and got a new one. He has managed to get a sparrow, and has already partially tamed it. His means of taming is simple, for already the spiders have diminished. Those that do remain, however, are well fed, for he still brings in the

flies by tempting them with his food.

19 July. —We are progressing. My friend has now a whole colony of

sparrows, and his flies and spiders are almost obliterated. When I came in he ran

to me and said he wanted to ask me a great favour—a very, very great favour; and as he spoke he fawned on me like a dog. I asked him what it was, and he said, with a sort of rapture in his voice and bearing:—

“A kitten, a nice little, sleek playful kitten, that I can play with, and teach, and

feed—and feed—and feed!” I was not unprepared for this request, for I had

noticed how his pets went on increasing in size and vivacity, but I did not care

that his pretty family of tame sparrows should be wiped out in the same manner

as the flies and the spiders; so I said I would see about it, and asked him if he would not rather have a cat than a kitten. His eagerness betrayed him as he answered:—

“Oh, yes, I would like a cat! I only asked for a kitten lest you should refuse

me a cat. No one would refuse me a kitten, would they?” I shook my head, and

said that at present I feared it would not be possible, but that I would see about

it. His face fell, and I could see a warning of danger in it, for there was a sudden

fierce, sidelong look which meant killing. The man is an undeveloped homicidal

maniac. I shall test him with his present craving and see how it will work out; then I shall know more.

10 p. m. —I have visited him again and found him sitting in a corner brooding. When I came in he threw himself on his knees before me and implored

me to let him have a cat; that his salvation depended upon it. I was firm, however, and told him that he could not have it, whereupon he went without a

word, and sat down, gnawing his fingers, in the corner where I had found him. I shall see him in the morning early.

20 July. —Visited Renfield very early, before the attendant went his rounds.

Found him up and humming a tune. He was spreading out his sugar, which he had saved, in the window, and was manifestly beginning his fly-catching again;

and beginning it cheerfully and with a good grace. I looked around for his birds,

and not seeing them, asked him where they were. He replied, without turning round, that they had all flown away. There were a few feathers about the room

and on his pillow a drop of blood. I said nothing, but went and told the keeper to

report to me if there were anything odd about him during the day.

11 a. m. —The attendant has just been to me to say that Renfield has been very sick and has disgorged a whole lot of feathers. “My belief is, doctor,” he said, “that he has eaten his birds, and that he just took and ate them raw!”

11 p. m. —I gave Renfield a strong opiate to-night, enough to make even him

sleep, and took away his pocket-book to look at it. The thought that has been buzzing about my brain lately is complete, and the theory proved. My homicidal

maniac is of a peculiar kind. I shall have to invent a new classification for him,

and call him a zoöphagous (life-eating) maniac; what he desires is to absorb as

many lives as he can, and he has laid himself out to achieve it in a cumulative

way. He gave many flies to one spider and many spiders to one bird, and then wanted a cat to eat the many birds. What would have been his later steps? It would almost be worth while to complete the experiment. It might be done if there were only a sufficient cause. Men sneered at vivisection, and yet look at its

results to-day! Why not advance science in its most difficult and vital aspect—

the knowledge of the brain? Had I even the secret of one such mind—did I hold

the key to the fancy of even one lunatic—I might advance my own branch of science to a pitch compared with which Burdon-Sanderson’s physiology or

Ferrier’s brain-knowledge would be as nothing. If only there were a sufficient cause! I must not think too much of this, or I may be tempted; a good cause might turn the scale with me, for may not I too be of an exceptional brain, congenitally?

How well the man reasoned; lunatics always do within their own scope. I

wonder at how many lives he values a man, or if at only one. He has closed the

account most accurately, and to-day begun a new record. How many of us begin

a new record with each day of our lives?

To me it seems only yesterday that my whole life ended with my new hope,

and that truly I began a new record. So it will be until the Great Recorder sums

me up and closes my ledger account with a balance to profit or loss. Oh, Lucy,

Lucy, I cannot be angry with you, nor can I be angry with my friend whose happiness is yours; but I must only wait on hopeless and work. Work! work!

If I only could have as strong a cause as my poor mad friend there—a good,

unselfish cause to make me work—that would be indeed happiness.

Mina Murray’s Journal.

26 July. —I am anxious, and it soothes me to express myself here; it is like whispering to one's self and listening at the same time. And there is also something about the shorthand symbols that makes it different from writing. I am unhappy about Lucy and about Jonathan. I had not heard from Jonathan for

some time, and was very concerned; but yesterday dear Mr. Hawkins, who is

always so kind, sent me a letter from him. I had written asking him if he had heard, and he said the enclosed had just been received. It is only a line dated from Castle Dracula, and says that he is just starting for home. That is not like

Jonathan; I do not understand it, and it makes me uneasy. Then, too, Lucy, although she is so well, has lately taken to her old habit of walking in her sleep.

Her mother has spoken to me about it, and we have decided that I am to lock the

door of our room every night. Mrs. Westenra has got an idea that sleep-walkers

always go out on roofs of houses and along the edges of cliffs and then get suddenly wakened and fall over with a despairing cry that echoes all over the place. Poor dear, she is naturally anxious about Lucy, and she tells me that her

husband, Lucy's father, had the same habit; that he would get up in the night and

dress himself and go out, if he were not stopped. Lucy is to be married in the autumn, and she is already planning out her dresses and how her house is to be

arranged. I sympathise with her, for I do the same, only Jonathan and I will start

in life in a very simple way, and shall have to try to make both ends meet. Mr.

Holmwood—he is the Hon. Arthur Holmwood, only son of Lord Godalming—is

coming up here very shortly—as soon as he can leave town, for his father is not

very well, and I think dear Lucy is counting the moments till he comes. She wants to take him up to the seat on the churchyard cliff and show him the beauty

of Whitby. I daresay it is the waiting which disturbs her; she will be all right when he arrives.

27 July. —No news from Jonathan. I am getting quite uneasy about him,

though why I should I do not know; but I do wish that he would write, if it were only a single line. Lucy walks more than ever, and each night I am awakened by

her moving about the room. Fortunately, the weather is so hot that she cannot get

cold; but still the anxiety and the perpetually being wakened is beginning to tell

on me, and I am getting nervous and wakeful myself. Thank God, Lucy’s health

keeps up. Mr. Holmwood has been suddenly called to Ring to see his father, who

has been taken seriously ill. Lucy frets at the postponement of seeing him, but it

does not touch her looks; she is a trifle stouter, and her cheeks are a lovely rose-

pink. She has lost that anæmic look which she had. I pray it will all last.

3 August. —Another week gone, and no news from Jonathan, not even to Mr.

Hawkins, from whom I have heard. Oh, I do hope he is not ill. He surely would

have written. I look at that last letter of his, but somehow it does not satisfy me.

It does not read like him, and yet it is his writing. There is no mistake of that.

Lucy has not walked much in her sleep the last week, but there is an odd concentration about her which I do not understand; even in her sleep she seems

to be watching me. She tries the door, and finding it locked, goes about the room

searching for the key.

6 August. —Another three days, and no news. This suspense is getting

dreadful. If I only knew where to write to or where to go to, I should feel easier;

but no one has heard a word of Jonathan since that last letter. I must only pray to

God for patience. Lucy is more excitable than ever, but is otherwise well. Last night was very threatening, and the fishermen say that we are in for a storm. I must try to watch it and learn the weather signs. To-day is a grey day, and the sun as I write is hidden in thick clouds, high over Kettleness. Everything is grey

—except the green grass, which seems like emerald amongst it; grey earthy

rock; grey clouds, tinged with the sunburst at the far edge, hang over the grey sea, into which the sand-points stretch like grey fingers. The sea is tumbling in

over the shallows and the sandy flats with a roar, muffled in the sea-mists drifting inland. The horizon is lost in a grey mist. All is vastness; the clouds are

piled up like giant rocks, and there is a “brool” over the sea that sounds like some presage of doom. Dark figures are on the beach here and there, sometimes

half shrouded in the mist, and seem “men like trees walking.” The fishing-boats

are racing for home, and rise and dip in the ground swell as they sweep into the

harbour, bending to the scuppers. Here comes old Mr. Swales. He is making

straight for me, and I can see, by the way he lifts his hat, that he wants to talk....

I have been quite touched by the change in the poor old man. When he sat down beside me, he said in a very gentle way:—

“I want to say something to you, miss.” I could see he was not at ease, so I took his poor old wrinkled hand in mine and asked him to speak fully; so he said, leaving his hand in mine:—

“I’m afraid, my deary, that I must have shocked you by all the wicked things

I’ve been sayin’ about the dead, and such like, for weeks past; but I didn’t mean

them, and I want ye to remember that when I’m gone. We aud folks that be daffled, and with one foot abaft the krok-hooal, don’t altogether like to think of

it, and we don’t want to feel scart of it; an’ that’s why I’ve took to makin’ light of

it, so that I’d cheer up my own heart a bit. But, Lord love ye, miss, I ain’t afraid

of dyin’, not a bit; only I don’t want to die if I can help it. My time must be nigh

at hand now, for I be aud, and a hundred years is too much for any man to expect; and I’m so nigh it that the Aud Man is already whettin’ his scythe. Ye see, I can’t get out o’ the habit of caffin’ about it all at once; the chafts will wag

as they be used to. Some day soon the Angel of Death will sound his trumpet for

me. But don’t ye dooal an’ greet, my deary!”—for he saw that I was crying—“if

he should come this very night I’d not refuse to answer his call. For life be, after

all, only a waitin’ for somethin’ else than what we’re doin’; and death be all that

we can rightly depend on. But I’m content, for it’s comin’ to me, my deary, and

comin’ quick. It may be comin’ while we be lookin’ and wonderin’. Maybe it’s in

that wind out over the sea that’s bringin’ with it loss and wreck, and sore distress,

and sad hearts. Look! look!” he cried suddenly. “There’s something in that wind

and in the hoast beyont that sounds, and looks, and tastes, and smells like death.

It’s in the air; I feel it comin’. Lord, make me answer cheerful when my call comes!” He held up his arms devoutly, and raised his hat. His mouth moved as

though he were praying. After a few minutes’ silence, he got up, shook hands with me, and blessed me, and said good-bye, and hobbled off. It all touched me,

and upset me very much.

I was glad when the coastguard came along, with his spy-glass under his arm.

He stopped to talk with me, as he always does, but all the time kept looking at a

strange ship.

“I can’t make her out,” he said; “she’s a Russian, by the look of her; but she’s

knocking about in the queerest way. She doesn’t know her mind a bit; she seems

to see the storm coming, but can’t decide whether to run up north in the open, or

to put in here. Look there again! She is steered mighty strangely, for she doesn’t

mind the hand on the wheel; changes about with every puff of wind. We’ll hear

more of her before this time to-morrow.”

CHAPTER VII

CUTTING FROM “THE DAILYGRAPH,” 8 AUGUST

(*Pasted in Mina Murray’s Journal.*)

From a Correspondent.

Whitby.

ONE greatest and suddenest storms on record has just been experienced here,

with results both strange and unique. The weather had been somewhat sultry, but

not to any degree uncommon in the month of August. Saturday evening was as

fine as was ever known, and the great body of holiday-makers laid out yesterday

for visits to Mulgrave Woods, Robin Hood’s Bay, Rig Mill, Runswick, Staithes,

and the various trips in the neighbourhood of Whitby. The steamers *Emma* and

Scarborough made trips up and down the coast, and there was an unusual amount of “tripping” both to and from Whitby. The day was unusually fine till

the afternoon, when some of the gossips who frequent the East Cliff churchyard,

and from that commanding eminence watch the wide sweep of sea visible to the

north and east, called attention to a sudden show of “mares’-tails” high in the sky to the north-west. The wind was then blowing from the south-west in the mild degree which in barometrical language is ranked “No. 2: light breeze.” The

coastguard on duty at once made report, and one old fisherman, who for more than half a century has kept watch on weather signs from the East Cliff, foretold

in an emphatic manner the coming of a sudden storm. The approach of sunset was so very beautiful, so grand in its masses of splendidly-coloured clouds, that

there was quite an assemblage on the walk along the cliff in the old churchyard

to enjoy the beauty. Before the sun dipped below the black mass of Kettleness,

standing boldly athwart the western sky, its downward way was marked by

myriad clouds of every sunset-colour—flame, purple, pink, green, violet, and all

the tints of gold; with here and there masses not large, but of seemingly absolute

blackness, in all sorts of shapes, as well outlined as colossal silhouettes. The experience was not lost on the painters, and doubtless some of the sketches of the “Prelude to the Great Storm” will grace the R. A. and R. I. walls in May next. More than one captain made up his mind then and there that his “cobble”

or his “mule,” as they term the different classes of boats, would remain in the harbour till the storm had passed. The wind fell away entirely during the

evening, and at midnight there was a dead calm, a sultry heat, and that prevailing intensity which, on the approach of thunder, affects persons of a sensitive nature.

There were but few lights in sight at sea, for even the coasting steamers, which

usually “hug” the shore so closely, kept well to seaward, and but few fishing-boats were in sight. The only sail noticeable was a foreign schooner with all sails

set, which was seemingly going westwards. The foolhardiness or ignorance of

her officers was a prolific theme for comment whilst she remained in sight, and

efforts were made to signal her to reduce sail in face of her danger. Before the

night shut down she was seen with sails idly flapping as she gently rolled on the

undulating swell of the sea,

“As idle as a painted ship upon a painted ocean.”

Shortly before ten o’clock the stillness of the air grew quite oppressive, and

the silence was so marked that the bleating of a sheep inland or the barking of a

dog in the town was distinctly heard, and the band on the pier, with its lively French air, was like a discord in the great harmony of nature’s silence. A little after midnight came a strange sound from over the sea, and high overhead the air

began to carry a strange, faint, hollow booming.

Then without warning the tempest broke. With a rapidity which, at the time,

seemed incredible, and even afterwards is impossible to realize, the whole aspect

of nature at once became convulsed. The waves rose in growing fury, each

overtopping its fellow, till in a very few minutes the lately glassy sea was like a

roaring and devouring monster. White-crested waves beat madly on the level

sands and rushed up the shelving cliffs; others broke over the piers, and with their spume swept the lanthorns of the

lighthouses which rise from the end of either pier of Whitby Harbour. The wind roared like thunder, and blew with such

force that it was with difficulty that even strong men kept their feet, or clung with grim clasp to the iron stanchions. It was found necessary to clear the entire

piers from the mass of onlookers, or else the fatalities of the night would have been increased manifold. To add to the difficulties and dangers of the time, masses of sea-fog came drifting inland—white, wet clouds, which swept by in

ghostly fashion, so dank and damp and cold that it needed but little effort of imagination to think that the spirits of those lost at sea were touching their living

brethren with the clammy hands of death, and many a one shuddered as the

wreaths of sea-mist swept by. At times the mist cleared, and the sea for some distance could be seen in the glare of the lightning, which now came thick and

fast, followed by such sudden peals of thunder that the whole sky overhead

seemed trembling under the shock of the footsteps of the storm.

Some of the scenes thus revealed were of immeasurable grandeur and of absorbing interest—the sea, running mountains high, threw skywards with each

wave mighty masses of white foam, which the tempest seemed to snatch at and

whirl away into space; here and there a fishing-boat, with a rag of sail, running

madly for shelter before the blast; now and again the white wings of a storm-tossed sea-bird. On the summit of the East Cliff the new searchlight was ready

for experiment, but had not yet been tried. The officers in charge of it got it into

working order, and in the pauses of the inrushing mist swept with it the surface

of the sea. Once or twice its service was most effective, as when a fishing-boat,

with gunwale under water, rushed into the harbour, able, by the guidance of the

sheltering light, to avoid the danger of dashing against the piers. As each boat achieved the safety of the port there was a shout of joy from the mass of people

on shore, a shout which for a moment seemed to cleave the gale and was then swept away in its rush.

Before long the searchlight discovered some distance away a schooner with

all sails set, apparently the same vessel which had been noticed earlier in the evening. The wind had by this time backed to the east, and there was a shudder

amongst the watchers on the cliff as they realized the terrible danger in which she now was. Between her and the port lay the great flat reef on which so many

good ships have from time to time suffered, and, with the wind blowing from its

present quarter, it would be quite impossible that she should fetch the entrance of

the harbour. It was now nearly the hour of high tide, but the waves were so great

that in their troughs the shallows of the shore were almost visible, and the schooner, with all sails set, was rushing with such speed that, in the words of one

old salt, “she must fetch up somewhere, if it was only in hell.” Then came another rush of sea-fog, greater than any hitherto—a mass of dank mist, which

seemed to close on all things like a grey pall, and left available to men only the

organ of hearing, for the roar of the tempest, and the crash of the thunder, and the booming of the mighty billows came through the damp oblivion even louder

than before. The rays of the searchlight were kept fixed on the harbour mouth across the East Pier, where the shock was expected, and men waited breathless.

The wind suddenly shifted to the north-east, and the remnant of the sea-fog melted in the blast; and then, *mirabile dictu*, between the piers, leaping from wave to wave as it rushed at headlong speed, swept the strange schooner before

the blast, with all sail set, and gained the safety of the harbour. The searchlight

followed her, and a shudder ran through all who saw her, for lashed to the helm

was a corpse, with drooping head, which swung horribly to and fro at each

motion of the ship. No other form could be seen on deck at all. A great awe came

on all as they realised that the ship, as if by a miracle, had found the harbour, unsteered save by the hand of a dead man! However, all took place more quickly

than it takes to write these words. The schooner paused not, but rushing across

the harbour, pitched herself on that accumulation of sand and gravel washed by

many tides and many storms into the south-east corner of the pier jutting under

the East Cliff, known locally as Tate Hill Pier.

There was of course a considerable concussion as the vessel drove up on the

sand heap. Every spar, rope, and stay was strained, and some of the “top-

hammer” came crashing down. But, strangest of all, the very instant the shore was touched, an immense dog sprang up on deck from below, as if shot up by the

concussion, and running forward, jumped from the bow on the sand. Making

straight for the steep cliff, where the churchyard hangs over the laneway to the

East Pier so steeply that some of the flat tombstones —“thruff-steans” or

“through-stones,” as they call them in the Whitby vernacular —actually project

over where the sustaining cliff has fallen away, it disappeared in the darkness, which seemed intensified just beyond the focus of the searchlight.

It so happened that there was no one at the moment on Tate Hill Pier, as all

those whose houses are in close proximity were either in bed or were out on the

heights above. Thus the coastguard on duty on the eastern side of the harbour, who at once ran down to the little pier, was the first to climb on board. The men

working the searchlight, after scouring the entrance of the harbour without

seeing anything, then turned the light on the derelict and kept it there. The coastguard ran aft, and when he came beside the wheel, bent over to examine it,

and recoiled at once as though under some sudden emotion. This seemed to

pique general curiosity, and quite a number of people began to run. It is a good

way round from the West Cliff by the Drawbridge to Tate Hill Pier, but your correspondent is a fairly good runner, and came well ahead of the crowd. When I

arrived, however, I found already assembled on the pier a crowd, whom the

coastguard and police refused to allow to come on board. By the courtesy of the

chief boatman, I was, as your correspondent, permitted to climb on deck, and was one of a small group who saw the dead seaman whilst actually lashed to the

wheel.

It was no wonder that the coastguard was surprised, or even awed, for not

often can such a sight have been seen. The man was simply fastened by his hands, tied one over the other, to a spoke of the wheel. Between the inner hand

and the wood was a crucifix, the set of beads on which it was fastened being around both wrists and wheel, and all kept fast by the binding cords. The poor

fellow may have been seated at one time, but the flapping and buffeting of the

sails had worked through the rudder of the wheel and dragged him to and fro, so that the cords with which he was tied had cut the flesh to the bone. Accurate note

was made of the state of things, and a doctor—Surgeon J. M. Caffyn, of 33, East

Elliot Place—who came immediately after me, declared, after making

examination, that the man must have been dead for quite two days. In his pocket

was a bottle, carefully corked, empty save for a little roll of paper, which proved

to be the addendum to the log. The coastguard said the man must have tied up

his own hands, fastening the knots with his teeth. The fact that a coastguard was

the first on board may save some complications, later on, in the Admiralty

Court; for coastguards cannot claim the salvage which is the right of the first civilian entering on a derelict. Already, however, the legal tongues are wagging,

and one young law student is loudly asserting that the rights of the owner are already completely sacrificed, his property being held in contravention of the statutes of mortmain, since the tiller, as emblemship, if not proof, of delegated possession, is held in a *dead hand*. It is needless to say that the dead steersman has been reverently removed from the place where he held his honourable watch

and ward till death—a steadfastness as noble as that of the young Casabianca—

and placed in the mortuary to await inquest.

Already the sudden storm is passing, and its fierceness is abating; crowds are

scattering homeward, and the sky is beginning to redden over the Yorkshire

wolds. I shall send, in time for your next issue, further details of the derelict ship

which found her way so miraculously into harbour in the storm.

Whitby

9 August. —The sequel to the strange arrival of the derelict in the storm last

night is almost more startling than the thing itself. It turns out that the schooner

is a Russian from Varna, and is called the *Demeter*. She is almost entirely in ballast of silver sand, with only a small amount of cargo—a number of great wooden boxes filled with mould. This cargo was consigned to a Whitby solicitor,

Mr. S. F. Billington, of 7, The Crescent, who this morning went aboard and formally took possession of the goods consigned to him. The Russian consul,

too, acting for the charter-party, took formal possession of the ship, and paid all

harbour dues, etc. Nothing is talked about here to-day except the strange

coincidence; the officials of the Board of Trade have been most exacting in seeing that every compliance has been made with existing regulations. As the matter is to be a “nine days’ wonder,” they are evidently determined that

there shall be no cause of after complaint. A good deal of interest was abroad

concerning the dog which landed when the ship struck, and more than a few of

the members of the S. P. C. A., which is very strong in Whitby, have tried to

befriend the animal. To the general disappointment, however, it was not to be found; it seems to have disappeared entirely from the town. It may be that it was

frightened and made its way on to the moors, where it is still hiding in terror.

There are some who look with dread on such a possibility, lest later on it should

in itself become a danger, for it is evidently a fierce brute. Early this morning a

large dog, a half-bred mastiff belonging to a coal merchant close to Tate Hill Pier, was found dead in the roadway opposite to its master's yard. It had been fighting, and manifestly had had a savage opponent, for its throat was torn away,

and its belly was slit open as if with a savage claw.

Later. —By the kindness of the Board of Trade inspector, I have been permitted to look over the log-book of the *Demeter*, which was in order up to within three days, but contained nothing of special interest except as to facts of

missing men. The greatest interest, however, is with regard to the paper found in

the bottle, which was to-day produced at the inquest; and a more strange

narrative than the two between them unfold it has not been my lot to come across. As there is no motive for concealment, I am permitted to use them, and

accordingly send you a rescript, simply omitting technical details of seamanship

and supercargo. It almost seems as though the captain had been seized with some

kind of mania before he had got well into blue water, and that this had developed

persistently throughout the voyage. Of course my statement must be taken *cum*

grano, since I am writing from the dictation of a clerk of the Russian consul, who kindly translated for me, time being short.

LOG OF THE “DEMETER.”

Varna to Whitby.

Written 18 July, things so strange happening, that I shall keep accurate note

henceforth till we land.

On 6 July we finished taking in cargo, silver sand and boxes of earth. At noon

set sail. East wind, fresh. Crew, five hands ... two mates, cook, and myself (captain).

On 11 July at dawn entered Bosphorus. Boarded by Turkish Customs

officers. Backsheesh. All correct. Under way at 4 p. m.

On 12 July through Dardanelles. More Customs officers and flagboat of

guarding squadron. Backsheesh again. Work of officers thorough, but quick.

Want us off soon. At dark passed into Archipelago.

On 13 July passed Cape Matapan. Crew dissatisfied about something.

Seemed scared, but would not speak out.

On 14 July was somewhat anxious about crew. Men all steady fellows, who

sailed with me before. Mate could not make out what was wrong; they only told

him there was *something*, and crossed themselves. Mate lost temper with one of

them that day and struck him. Expected fierce quarrel, but all was quiet.

On 16 July mate reported in the morning that one of crew, Petrofsky, was

missing. Could not account for it. Took larboard watch eight bells last night; was

relieved by Abramoff, but did not go to bunk. Men more downcast than ever. All

said they expected something of the kind, but would not say more than there was

something aboard. Mate getting very impatient with them; feared some trouble ahead.

On 17 July, yesterday, one of the men, Olgaren, came to my cabin, and in an

awestruck way confided to me that he thought there was a strange man aboard the ship. He said that in his watch he had been sheltering behind the deck-house,

as there was a rain-storm, when he saw a tall, thin man, who was not like any of

the crew, come up the companion-way, and go along the deck forward, and

disappear. He followed cautiously, but when he got to bows found no one, and

the hatchways were all closed. He was in a panic of superstitious fear, and I am

afraid the panic may spread. To allay it, I shall to-day search entire ship carefully

from stem to stern.

Later in the day I got together the whole crew, and told them, as they

evidently thought there was some one in the ship, we would search from stem to

stern. First mate angry; said it was folly, and to yield to such foolish ideas would

demoralise the men; said he would engage to keep them out of trouble with a handspike. I let him take the helm, while the rest began thorough search, all keeping abreast, with lanterns: we left no corner unsearched. As there were only

the big wooden boxes, there were no odd corners where a man could hide. Men

much relieved when search over, and went back to work cheerfully. First mate scowled, but said nothing.

22 July.—Rough weather last three days, and all hands busy with sails—no time to be frightened. Men seem to have forgotten their dread. Mate cheerful again, and all on good terms. Praised men for work in bad weather. Passed

Gibralter and out through Straits. All well.

24 July.—There seems some doom over this ship. Already a hand short, and

entering on the Bay of Biscay with wild weather ahead, and yet last night

another man lost—disappeared. Like the first, he came off his watch and was not

seen again. Men all in a panic of fear; sent a round robin, asking to have double

watch, as they fear to be alone. Mate angry. Fear there will be some trouble, as

either he or the men will do some violence.

28 July.—Four days in hell, knocking about in a sort of maelstrom, and the wind a tempest. No sleep for any one.

Men all worn out. Hardly know how to set

a watch, since no one fit to go on. Second mate volunteered to steer and watch,

and let men snatch a few hours' sleep. Wind abating; seas still terrific, but feel

them less, as ship is steadier.

29 July.—Another tragedy. Had single watch to-night, as crew too tired to double. When morning watch came on deck could find no one except steersman.

Raised outcry, and all came on deck. Thorough search, but no one found. Are now without second mate, and crew in a panic. Mate and I agreed to go armed

henceforth and wait for any sign of cause.

30 July.—Last night. Rejoiced we are nearing England. Weather fine, all sails

set. Retired worn out; slept soundly; awaked by mate telling me that both man of

watch and steersman missing. Only self and mate and two hands left to work ship.

1 August.—Two days of fog, and not a sail sighted. Had hoped when in the

English Channel to be able to signal for help or get in somewhere. Not having power to work sails, have to run before wind. Dare not lower, as could not raise

them again. We seem to be drifting to some terrible doom. Mate now more

demoralised than either of men. His stronger nature seems to have worked

inwardly against himself. Men are beyond fear, working stolidly and patiently, with minds made up to worst. They are Russian, he Roumanian.

2 August, midnight.—Woke up from few minutes' sleep by hearing a cry, seemingly outside my port. Could see nothing in fog. Rushed on deck, and ran

against mate. Tells me heard cry and ran, but no sign of man on watch. One more

gone. Lord, help us! Mate says we must be past Straits of Dover, as in a moment

of fog lifting he saw North Foreland, just as he heard the man cry out. If so we

are now off in the North Sea, and only God can guide us in the fog, which seems

to move with us; and God seems to have deserted us.

3 August.—At midnight I went to relieve the man at the wheel, and when I got to it found no one there. The wind was steady, and as we ran before it there

was no yawing. I dared not leave it, so shouted for the mate. After a few seconds

he rushed up on deck in his flannels. He looked wild-eyed and haggard, and I greatly fear his reason has given way. He came close to me and whispered

hoarsely, with his mouth to my ear, as though fearing the very air might hear: “*It*

is here; I know it, now. On the watch last night I saw It, like a man, tall and thin,

and ghastly pale. It was in the bows, and looking out. I crept behind It, and gave

It my knife; but the knife went through It, empty as the air.” And as he spoke he

took his knife and drove it savagely into space. Then he went on: “But It is here,

and I’ll find It. It is in the hold, perhaps in one of those boxes. I’ll unscrew them

one by one and see. You work the helm.” And, with a warning look and his finger on his lip, he went below. There was springing up a choppy wind, and I

could not leave the helm. I saw him come out on deck again with a tool-chest and a lantern, and go down the forward hatchway. He is mad, stark, raving mad,

and it’s no use my trying to stop him. He can’t hurt those big boxes: they are invoiced as “clay,” and to pull them about is as harmless a thing as he can do. So

here I stay, and mind the helm, and write these notes. I can only trust in God and

wait till the fog clears. Then, if I can’t steer to any harbour with the wind that is,

I shall cut down sails and lie by, and signal for help....

It is nearly all over now. Just as I was beginning to hope that the mate would

come out calmer—for I heard him knocking away at something in the hold, and

work is good for him—there came up the hatchway a sudden, startled scream,

which made my blood run cold, and up on the deck he came as if shot from a gun—a raging madman, with his eyes rolling and his face convulsed with fear.

“Save me! save me!” he cried, and then looked round on the blanket of fog. His

horror turned to despair, and in a steady voice he said: “You had better come too,

captain, before it is too late. *He* is there. I know the secret now. The sea will save

me from Him, and it is all that is left!” Before I could say a word, or move forward to seize him, he sprang on the bulwark and deliberately threw himself into the sea. I suppose I know the secret too, now. It was this madman who had

got rid of the men one by one, and now he has followed them himself. God help

me! How am I to account for all these horrors when I get to port? *When* I get to port! Will that ever be?

4 August. —Still fog, which the sunrise cannot pierce. I know there is sunrise

because I am a sailor, why else I know not. I dared not go below, I dared not leave the helm; so here all night I stayed, and in the dimness of the night I saw It

—Him! God forgive me, but the mate was right to jump overboard. It was better

to die like a man; to die like a sailor in blue water no man can object. But I am

captain, and I must not leave my ship. But I shall baffle this fiend or monster, for

I shall tie my hands to the wheel when my strength begins to fail, and along with

them I shall tie that which He—It!—dare not touch; and then, come good wind

or foul, I shall save my soul, and my honour as a captain. I am growing weaker,

and the night is coming on. If He can look me in the face again, I may not have

time to act.... If we are wrecked, mayhap this bottle may be found, and those who find it may understand; if not, ... well, then all men shall know that I have

been true to my trust. God and the Blessed Virgin and the saints help a poor ignorant soul trying to do his duty....

Of course the verdict was an open one. There is no evidence to adduce; and

whether or not the man himself committed the murders there is now none to say.

The folk here hold almost universally that the captain is simply a hero, and he is

to be given a public funeral. Already it is arranged that his body is to be taken

with a train of boats up the Esk for a piece and then brought back to Tate Hill Pier and up the abbey steps; for he is to be buried in the churchyard on the cliff.

The owners of more than a hundred boats have already given in their names as

wishing to follow him to the grave.

No trace has ever been found of the great dog; at which there is much

mourning, for, with public opinion in its present state, he would, I believe, be adopted by the town. To-morrow will see the funeral; and so will end this one more “mystery of the sea.”

Mina Murray’s Journal.

8 August. —Lucy was very restless all night, and I, too, could not sleep. The

storm was fearful, and as it boomed loudly among the chimney-pots, it made me

shudder. When a sharp puff came it seemed to be like a distant gun. Strangely enough, Lucy did not wake; but she got up twice and dressed herself.

Fortunately, each time I awoke in time and managed to undress her without

waking her, and got her back to bed. It is a very strange thing, this sleep-walking, for as soon as her will is thwarted in any physical way, her intention, if

there be any, disappears, and she yields herself almost exactly to the routine of

her life.

Early in the morning we both got up and went down to the harbour to see if

anything had happened in the night. There were very few people about, and

though the sun was bright, and the air clear and fresh, the big, grim-looking waves, that seemed dark themselves because the foam that topped them was like

snow, forced themselves in through the narrow mouth of the harbour—like a

bullying man going through a crowd. Somehow I felt glad that Jonathan was not

on the sea last night, but on land. But, oh, is he on land or sea? Where is he, and

how? I am getting fearfully anxious about him. If I only knew what to do, and

could do anything!

10 August. —The funeral of the poor sea-captain to-day was most touching.

Every boat in the harbour seemed to be there, and the coffin was carried by captains all the way from Tate Hill Pier up to

the churchyard. Lucy came with me, and we went early to our old seat, whilst the cortège of boats went up the river to the Viaduct and came down again. We had a lovely view, and saw the procession nearly all the way. The poor fellow was laid to rest quite near our seat

so that we stood on it when the time came and saw everything. Poor Lucy

seemed much upset. She was restless and uneasy all the time, and I cannot but

think that her dreaming at night is telling on her. She is quite odd in one thing:

she will not admit to me that there is any cause for restlessness; or if there be,

she does not understand it herself. There is an additional cause in that poor old

Mr. Swales was found dead this morning on our seat, his neck being broken. He

had evidently, as the doctor said, fallen back in the seat in some sort of fright, for

there was a look of fear and horror on his face that the men said made them shudder. Poor dear old man! Perhaps he had seen Death with his dying eyes!

Lucy is so sweet and sensitive that she feels influences more acutely than other

people do. Just now she was quite upset by a little thing which I did not much

heed, though I am myself very fond of animals. One of the men who came up here often to look for the boats was followed by his dog. The dog is always with

him. They are both quiet persons, and I never saw the man angry, nor heard the

dog bark. During the service the dog would not come to its master, who was on

the seat with us, but kept a few yards off, barking and howling. Its master spoke to it gently, and then harshly, and then angrily; but it would neither come nor cease to make a noise. It was in a sort of fury, with its eyes savage, and all its hairs bristling out like a cat's tail when puss is on the war-path. Finally the man,

too, got angry, and jumped down and kicked the dog, and then took it by the scruff of the neck and half dragged and half threw it on the tombstone on which

the seat is fixed. The moment it touched the stone the poor thing became quiet

and fell all into a tremble. It did not try to get away, but crouched down, quivering and cowering, and was in such a pitiable state of terror that I tried, though without effect, to comfort it. Lucy was full of pity, too, but she did not attempt to touch the dog, but looked at it in an agonised sort of way. I greatly fear that she is of too super-sensitive a nature to go through the world without trouble. She will be dreaming of this to-night, I am sure. The whole

agglomeration of things—the ship steered into port by a dead man; his attitude,

tied to the wheel with a crucifix and beads; the touching funeral; the dog, now

furious and now in terror—will all afford material for her dreams.

I think it will be best for her to go to bed tired out physically, so I shall take

her for a long walk by the cliffs to Robin Hood's Bay and back. She ought not to

have much inclination for sleep-walking then.

CHAPTER VIII

MINA MURRAY'S JOURNAL

Same day, 11 o'clock p. m. —Oh, but I am tired! If it were not that I had made

my diary a duty I should not open it to-night. We had a lovely walk. Lucy, after a

while, was in gay spirits, owing, I think, to some dear cows who came nosing towards us in a field close to the lighthouse, and frightened the wits out of us. I

believe we forgot everything except, of course, personal fear, and it seemed to wipe the slate clean and give us a fresh start. We had a capital "severe tea" at Robin Hood's Bay in a sweet little old-fashioned inn, with a bow-window right

over the seaweed-covered rocks of the strand. I believe we should have shocked

the “New Woman” with our appetites. Men are more tolerant, bless them! Then

we walked home with some, or rather many, stoppages to rest, and with our

hearts full of a constant dread of wild bulls. Lucy was really tired, and we intended to creep off to bed as soon as we could. The young curate came in, however, and Mrs. Westenra asked him to stay for supper. Lucy and I had both a

fight for it with the dusty miller; I know it was a hard fight on my part, and I am

quite heroic. I think that some day the bishops must get together and see about

breeding up a new class of curates, who don’t take supper, no matter how they

may be pressed to, and who will know when girls are tired. Lucy is asleep and

breathing softly. She has more colour in her cheeks than usual, and looks, oh, so

sweet. If Mr. Holmwood fell in love with her seeing her only in the drawing-room, I wonder what he would say if he saw her now. Some of the “New

Women” writers will some day start an idea that men and women should be

allowed to see each other asleep before proposing or accepting. But I suppose the New Woman won’t condescend in future to accept; she will do the proposing

herself. And a nice job she will make of it, too! There’s some consolation in that.

I am so happy to-night, because dear Lucy seems better. I really believe she has

turned the corner, and that we are over her troubles with dreaming. I should be

quite happy if I only knew if Jonathan.... God bless and keep him.

11 August, 3 a. m. —Diary again. No sleep now, so I may as well write. I am

too agitated to sleep. We have had such an adventure, such an agonising

experience. I fell asleep as soon as I had closed my diary.... Suddenly I became

broad awake, and sat up, with a horrible sense of fear upon me, and of some

feeling of emptiness around me. The room was dark, so I could not see Lucy’s bed; I stole across and felt for her. The bed was empty. I lit a match and found

that she was not in the room. The door was shut, but not locked, as I had left it. I

feared to wake her mother, who has been more than usually ill lately, so threw on

some clothes and got ready to look for her. As I was leaving the room it struck

me that the clothes she wore might give me some clue to her dreaming intention.

Dressing-gown would mean house; dress, outside. Dressing-gown and dress

were both in their places. “Thank God,” I said to myself, “she cannot be far, as

she is only in her nightdress.” I ran downstairs and looked in the sitting-room.

Not there! Then I looked in all the other open rooms of the house, with an ever-

growing fear chilling my heart. Finally I came to the hall door and found it open.

It was not wide open, but the catch of the lock had not caught. The people of the

house are careful to lock the door every night, so I feared that Lucy must have

gone out as she was. There was no time to think of what might happen; a vague,

overmastering fear obscured all details. I took a big, heavy shawl and ran out.

The clock was striking one as I was in the Crescent, and there was not a soul in

sight. I ran along the North Terrace, but could see no sign of the white figure which I expected. At the edge of the West Cliff above the pier I looked across the harbour to the East Cliff, in the hope or fear—I don’t know which—of seeing

Lucy in our favourite seat. There was a bright full moon, with heavy black, driving clouds, which threw the whole scene into a fleeting diorama of light and

shade as they sailed across. For a moment or two I could see nothing, as the shadow of a cloud obscured St. Mary’s Church and all around it. Then as the cloud passed I could see the ruins of the abbey coming into view; and as the edge of a narrow band of light as sharp as a sword-cut moved along, the church

and the churchyard became gradually visible. Whatever my expectation was, it

was not disappointed, for there, on our favourite seat, the silver light of the moon

struck a half-reclining figure, snowy white. The coming of the cloud was too quick for me to see much, for shadow shut down on light almost immediately; but it seemed to me as though something dark stood behind the seat where the

white figure shone, and bent over it. What it was, whether man or beast, I could

not tell; I did not wait to catch another glance, but flew down the steep steps to

the pier and along by the fish-market to the bridge, which was the only way to

reach the East Cliff. The town seemed as dead, for not a soul did I see; I rejoiced

that it was so, for I wanted no witness of poor Lucy’s condition. The time and distance seemed endless, and my knees trembled and my breath came laboured

as I toiled up the endless steps to the abbey. I must have gone fast, and yet it seemed to me as if my feet were weighted with lead, and as though every joint in

my body were rusty. When I got almost to the top I could see the seat and the

white figure, for I was now close enough to distinguish it even through the spells of shadow. There was undoubtedly something, long and black, bending over the

half-reclining white figure. I called in fright, “Lucy! Lucy!” and something

raised a head, and from where I was I could see a white face and red, gleaming

eyes. Lucy did not answer, and I ran on to the entrance of the churchyard. As I

entered, the church was between me and the seat, and for a minute or so I lost

sight of her. When I came in view again the cloud had passed, and the moonlight

struck so brilliantly that I could see Lucy half reclining with her head lying over

the back of the seat. She was quite alone, and there was not a sign of any living

thing about.

When I bent over her I could see that she was still asleep. Her lips were parted, and she was breathing—not softly as usual with her, but in long, heavy

gasps, as though striving to get her lungs full at every breath. As I came close,

she put up her hand in her sleep and pulled the collar of her nightdress close around her throat. Whilst she did so there came a little shudder through her, as

though she felt the cold. I flung the warm shawl over her, and drew the edges tight round her neck, for I dreaded lest she should get some deadly chill from the

night air, unclad as she was. I feared to wake her all at once, so, in order to have

my hands free that I might help her, I fastened the shawl at her throat with a big

safety-pin; but I must have been clumsy in my anxiety and pinched or pricked her with it, for by-and-by, when her breathing became quieter, she put her hand

to her throat again and moaned. When I had her carefully wrapped up I put my

shoes on her feet and then began very gently to wake her. At first she did not respond; but gradually she became more and more uneasy in her sleep, moaning

and sighing occasionally. At last, as time was passing fast, and, for many other

reasons, I wished to get her home at once, I shook her more forcibly, till finally

she opened her eyes and awoke. She did not seem surprised to see me, as, of course, she did not realise all at once where she was. Lucy always wakes prettily,

and even at such a time, when her body must have been chilled with cold, and

her mind somewhat appalled at waking unclad in a churchyard at night, she did

not lose her grace. She trembled a little, and clung to me; when I told her to come at once with me home she rose without a word, with the obedience of a child. As we passed along, the gravel hurt my feet, and Lucy noticed me wince.

She stopped and wanted to insist upon my taking my shoes; but I would not.

However, when we got to the pathway outside the churchyard, where there was a

puddle of water, remaining from the storm, I daubed my feet with mud, using each foot in turn on the other, so that as we went home, no one, in case we should meet any one, should notice my bare feet.

Fortune favoured us, and we got home without meeting a soul. Once we saw a man, who seemed not quite sober, passing along a street in front of us; but we

hid in a door till he had disappeared up an opening such as there are here, steep

little closes, or “wynds,” as they call them in Scotland. My heart beat so loud all

the time that sometimes I thought I should faint. I was filled with anxiety about

Lucy, not only for her health, lest she should suffer from the exposure, but for her reputation in case the story should get

wind. When we got in, and had washed our feet, and had said a prayer of thankfulness together, I tucked her into

bed. Before falling asleep she asked—even implored—me not to say a word to

any one, even her mother, about her sleep-walking adventure. I hesitated at first

to promise; but on thinking of the state of her mother's health, and how the knowledge of such a thing would fret her, and thinking, too, of how such a story

might become distorted—nay, infallibly would—in case it should leak out, I

thought it wiser to do so. I hope I did right. I have locked the door, and the key is

tied to my wrist, so perhaps I shall not be again disturbed. Lucy is sleeping soundly; the reflex of the dawn is high and far over the sea....

Same day, noon. —All goes well. Lucy slept till I woke her and seemed not to

have even changed her side. The adventure of the night does not seem to have harmed her; on the contrary, it has benefited her, for she looks better this morning than she has done for weeks. I was sorry to notice that my clumsiness

with the safety-pin hurt her. Indeed, it might have been serious, for the skin of her throat was pierced. I must have pinched up a piece of loose skin and have transfixed it, for there are two little red points like pin-pricks, and on the band of

her nightdress was a drop of blood. When I apologised and was concerned about

it, she laughed and petted me, and said she did not even feel it. Fortunately it cannot leave a scar, as it is so tiny.

Same day, night. —We passed a happy day. The air was clear, and the sun bright, and there was a cool breeze. We took our lunch to Mulgrave Woods, Mrs.

Westenra driving by the road and Lucy and I walking by the cliff-path and

joining her at the gate. I felt a little sad myself, for I could not but feel how *absolutely* happy it would have been had Jonathan been with me. But there! I must only be patient. In the evening we strolled in the Casino Terrace, and heard

some good music by Spohr and Mackenzie, and went to bed early. Lucy seems

more restful than she has been for some time, and fell asleep at once. I shall lock

the door and secure the key the same as before, though I do not expect any trouble to-night.

12 August. —My expectations were wrong, for twice during the night I was wakened by Lucy trying to get out. She seemed, even in her sleep, to be a little

impatient at finding the door shut, and went back to bed under a sort of protest. I

woke with the dawn, and heard the birds chirping outside of the window. Lucy

woke, too, and, I was glad to see, was even better than on the previous morning.

All her old gaiety of manner seemed to have come back, and she came and

snuggled in beside me and told me all about Arthur. I told her how anxious I was

about Jonathan, and then she tried to comfort me. Well, she succeeded

somewhat, for, though sympathy can’t alter facts, it can help to make them more

bearable.

13 August. —Another quiet day, and to bed with the key on my wrist as before. Again I awoke in the night, and found Lucy sitting up in bed, still asleep,

pointing to the window. I got up quietly, and pulling aside the blind, looked out.

It was brilliant moonlight, and the soft effect of the light over the sea and sky—

merged together in one great, silent mystery—was beautiful beyond words.

Between me and the moonlight flitted a great bat, coming and going in great whirling circles. Once or twice it came quite close, but was, I suppose,

frightened at seeing me, and flitted away across the harbour towards the abbey.

When I came back from the window Lucy had lain down again, and was

sleeping peacefully. She did not stir again all night.

14 August. —On the East Cliff, reading and writing all day. Lucy seems to have become as much in love with the spot as I am, and it is hard to get her away

from it when it is time to come home for lunch or tea or dinner. This afternoon

she made a funny remark. We were coming home for dinner, and had come to

the top of the steps up from the West Pier and stopped to look at the view, as we

generally do. The setting sun, low down in the sky, was just dropping behind Kettleness; the red light was thrown over on the East Cliff and the old abbey, and

seemed to bathe everything in a beautiful rosy glow. We were silent for a while,

and suddenly Lucy murmured as if to herself:—

“His red eyes again! They are just the same.” It was such an odd expression,

coming *apropos* of nothing, that it quite startled me. I slewed round a little, so as to see Lucy well without seeming to stare at her, and saw that she was in a half-dreamy state, with an odd look on her face that I could not quite make out; so I

said nothing, but followed her eyes. She appeared to be looking over at our own

seat, whereon was a dark figure seated alone. I was a little startled myself, for it

seemed for an instant as if the stranger had great eyes like burning flames; but a second look dispelled the illusion. The red sunlight was shining on the windows

of St. Mary’s Church behind our seat, and as the sun dipped there was just sufficient change in the refraction and reflection to make it appear as if the light

moved. I called Lucy’s attention to the peculiar effect, and she became herself with a start, but she looked sad all the same; it may have been that she was thinking of that terrible night up there. We never refer to it; so I said nothing, and

we went home to dinner. Lucy had a headache and went early to bed. I saw her

asleep, and went out for a little stroll myself; I walked along the cliffs to the westward, and was full of sweet sadness, for I was thinking of Jonathan. When

coming home—it was then bright moonlight, so bright that, though the front of

our part of the Crescent was in shadow, everything could be well seen—I threw a

glance up at our window, and saw Lucy’s head leaning out. I thought that

perhaps she was looking out for me, so I opened my handkerchief and waved it.

She did not notice or make any movement whatever. Just then, the moonlight

crept round an angle of the building, and the light fell on the window. There distinctly was Lucy with her head lying up against the side of the window-sill and her eyes shut. She was fast asleep, and by her, seated on the window-sill, was something that looked like a good-sized bird. I was afraid she might get a chill, so I ran upstairs, but as I came into the room she was moving back to her

bed, fast asleep, and breathing heavily; she was holding her hand to her throat, as

though to protect it from cold.

I did not wake her, but tucked her up warmly; I have taken care that the door

is locked and the window securely fastened.

She looks so sweet as she sleeps; but she is paler than is her wont, and there

is a drawn, haggard look under her eyes which I do not like. I fear she is fretting

about something. I wish I could find out what it is.

15 August. —Rose later than usual. Lucy was languid and tired, and slept on

after we had been called. We had a happy surprise at breakfast. Arthur’s father is

better, and wants the marriage to come off soon. Lucy is full of quiet joy, and her

mother is glad and sorry at once. Later on in the day she told me the cause. She

is grieved to lose Lucy as her very own, but she is rejoiced that she is soon to have some one to protect her. Poor dear, sweet lady! She confided to me that she

has got her death-warrant. She has not told Lucy, and made me promise secrecy;

her doctor told her that within a few months, at most, she must die, for her heart

is weakening. At any time, even now, a sudden shock would be almost sure to kill her. Ah, we were wise to keep from her the affair of the dreadful night of

Lucy’s sleep-walking.

17 August. —No diary for two whole days. I have not had the heart to write.

Some sort of shadowy pall seems to be coming over our happiness. No news

from Jonathan, and Lucy seems to be growing weaker, whilst her mother’s hours

are numbering to a close. I do not understand Lucy’s fading away as she is doing. She eats well and sleeps well, and enjoys the fresh air; but all the time the

roses in her cheeks are fading, and she gets weaker and more languid day by day; at night I hear her gasping as if for

air. I keep the key of our door always

fastened to my wrist at night, but she gets up and walks about the room, and sits

at the open window. Last night I found her leaning out when I woke up, and when I tried to wake her I could not; she was in a faint. When I managed to restore her she was as weak as water, and cried silently between long, painful struggles for breath. When I asked her how she came to be at the window she shook her head and turned away. I trust her feeling ill may not be from that unlucky prick of the safety-pin. I looked at her throat just now as she lay asleep,

and the tiny wounds seem not to have healed. They are still open, and, if anything, larger than before, and the edges of them are faintly white. They are like little white dots with red centres. Unless they heal within a day or two, I shall insist on the doctor seeing about them.

Letter, Samuel F. Billington & Son, Solicitors, Whitby, to Messrs. Carter,

Paterson & Co., London.

“*17 August.*

“Dear Sirs,—

“Herewith please receive invoice of goods sent by Great Northern Railway.

Same are to be delivered at Carfax, near Purfleet, immediately on receipt at goods station King’s Cross. The house is at present empty, but enclosed please find keys, all of which are labelled.

“You will please deposit the boxes, fifty in number, which form the

consignment, in the partially ruined building forming part of the house and

marked ‘A’ on rough diagram enclosed. Your agent will easily recognise the

locality, as it is the ancient chapel of the mansion. The goods leave by the train at

9:30 to-night, and will be due at King’s Cross at 4:30 to-morrow afternoon. As

our client wishes the delivery made as soon as possible, we shall be obliged by

your having teams ready at King’s Cross at the time named and forthwith

conveying the goods to destination. In order to obviate any delays possible

through any routine requirements as to payment in your departments, we enclose

cheque herewith for ten pounds (£10), receipt of which please acknowledge.

Should the charge be less than this amount, you can return balance; if greater, we

shall at once send cheque for difference on hearing from you. You are to leave

the keys on coming away in the main hall of the house, where the proprietor may

get them on his entering the house by means of his duplicate key.

“Pray do not take us as exceeding the bounds of business courtesy in pressing

you in all ways to use the utmost expedition.

“We are, dear Sirs,

“Faithfully yours,

“SAMUEL F. BILLINGTON & SON.”

Letter, Messrs. Carter, Paterson & Co., London, to Messrs. Billington & Son, Whitby.

“*21 August.*

“Dear Sirs,—

“We beg to acknowledge £10 received and to return cheque £1 17s. 9d,

amount of overplus, as shown in receipted account herewith. Goods are

delivered in exact accordance with instructions, and keys left in parcel in main hall, as directed.

“We are, dear Sirs,

“Yours respectfully.

“*Pro* CARTER, PATERSON & CO.”

Mina Murray’s Journal.

18 August. —I am happy to-day, and write sitting on the seat in the churchyard. Lucy is ever so much better. Last night she slept well all night, and

did not disturb me once. The roses seem coming back already to her cheeks, though she is still sadly pale and wan-looking. If she were in any way anæmic I

could understand it, but she is not. She is in gay spirits and full of life and cheerfulness. All the morbid reticence seems to have passed from her, and she has just reminded me, as if I needed any reminding, of *that* night, and that it was here, on this very seat, I found her asleep. As she told me she tapped playfully

with the heel of her boot on the stone slab and said:—

“My poor little feet didn’t make much noise then! I daresay poor old Mr.

Swales would have told me that it was because I didn’t want to wake up

Geordie.” As she was in such a communicative humour, I asked her if she had

dreamed at all that night. Before she answered, that sweet, puckered look came

into her forehead, which Arthur—I call him Arthur from her habit—says he

loves; and, indeed, I don’t wonder that he does. Then she went on in a half-dreaming kind of way, as if trying to recall it to herself:—

“I didn’t quite dream; but it all seemed to be real. I only wanted to be here in

this spot—I don’t know why, for I was afraid of something—I don’t know what.

I remember, though I suppose I was asleep, passing through the streets and over

the bridge. A fish leaped as I went by, and I leaned over to look at it, and I heard

a lot of dogs howling—the whole town seemed as if it must be full of dogs all

howling at once—as I went up the steps. Then I had a vague memory of

something long and dark with red eyes, just as we saw in the sunset, and

something very sweet and very bitter all around me at once; and then I seemed

sinking into deep green water, and there was a singing in my ears, as I have heard there is to drowning men; and then everything seemed passing away from

me; my soul seemed to go out from my body and float about the air. I seem to

remember that once the West Lighthouse was right under me, and then there was

a sort of agonising feeling, as if I were in an earthquake, and I came back and found you shaking my body. I saw you do it before I felt you."

Then she began to laugh. It seemed a little uncanny to me, and I listened to

her breathlessly. I did not quite like it, and thought it better not to keep her mind

on the subject, so we drifted on to other subjects, and Lucy was like her old self

again. When we got home the fresh breeze had braced her up, and her pale

cheeks were really more rosy. Her mother rejoiced when she saw her, and we all

spent a very happy evening together.

19 August. —Joy, joy, joy! although not all joy. At last, news of Jonathan. The dear fellow has been ill; that is why he did not write. I am not afraid to think it or

say it, now that I know. Mr. Hawkins sent me on the letter, and wrote himself, oh, so kindly. I am to leave in the morning and go over to Jonathan, and to help

to nurse him if necessary, and to bring him home. Mr. Hawkins says it would not

be a bad thing if we were to be married out there. I have cried over the good Sister's letter till I can feel it wet against my bosom, where it lies. It is of Jonathan, and must be next my heart, for he is *in* my heart. My journey is all mapped out, and my luggage ready. I am only taking one change of dress; Lucy

will bring my trunk to London and keep it till I send for it, for it may be that ... I

must write no more; I must keep it to say to Jonathan, my husband. The letter that he has seen and touched must comfort me till we meet.

Letter, Sister Agatha, Hospital of St. Joseph and Ste. Mary, Buda-Pesth, to Miss

Wilhelmina Murray.

“*12 August.*

“Dear Madam,—

“I write by desire of Mr. Jonathan Harker, who is himself not strong enough

to write, though progressing well, thanks to God and St. Joseph and Ste. Mary.

He has been under our care for nearly six weeks, suffering from a violent brain

fever. He wishes me to convey his love, and to say that by this post I write for

him to Mr. Peter Hawkins, Exeter, to say, with his dutiful respects, that he is sorry for his delay, and that all of his work is completed. He will require some

few weeks’ rest in our sanatorium in the hills, but will then return. He wishes me

to say that he has not sufficient money with him, and that he would like to pay

for his staying here, so that others who need shall not be wanting for help.

“Believe me,

“Yours, with sympathy and all blessings,

“SISTER AGATHA.

“P. S.—My patient being asleep, I open this to let you know something more.

He has told me all about you, and that you are shortly to be his wife. All blessings to you both! He has had some fearful shock—so says our doctor—and

in his delirium his ravings have been dreadful; of wolves and poison and blood;

of ghosts and demons; and I fear to say of what. Be careful with him always that

there may be nothing to excite him of this kind for a long time to come; the traces of such an illness as his do not lightly die away. We should have written

long ago, but we knew nothing of his friends, and there was on him nothing that

any one could understand. He came in the train from Klausenburg, and the guard

was told by the station-master there that he rushed into the station shouting for a

ticket for home. Seeing from his violent demeanour that he was English, they gave him a ticket for the furthest station on the way thither that the train reached.

“Be assured that he is well cared for. He has won all hearts by his sweetness

and gentleness. He is truly getting on well, and I have no doubt will in a few weeks be all himself. But be careful of him for safety’s sake. There are, I pray

God and St. Joseph and Ste. Mary, many, many, happy years for you both.”

Dr. Seward's Diary.

19 August. —Strange and sudden change in Renfield last night. About eight o'clock he began to get excited and sniff about as a dog does when setting. The

attendant was struck by his manner, and knowing my interest in him, encouraged

him to talk. He is usually respectful to the attendant and at times servile; but to-

night, the man tells me, he was quite haughty. Would not condescend to talk with

him at all. All he would say was:—

"I don't want to talk to you: you don't count now; the Master is at hand."

The attendant thinks it is some sudden form of religious mania which has

seized him. If so, we must look out for squalls, for a strong man with homicidal

and religious mania at once might be dangerous. The combination is a dreadful

one. At nine o'clock I visited him myself. His attitude to me was the same as that

to the attendant; in his sublime self-feeling the difference between myself and attendant seemed to him as nothing. It looks like religious mania, and he will soon think that he himself is God. These infinitesimal distinctions between man

and man are too paltry for an Omnipotent Being. How these madmen give

themselves away! The real God taketh heed lest a sparrow fall; but the God created from human vanity sees no difference between an eagle and a sparrow.

Oh, if men only knew!

For half an hour or more Renfield kept getting excited in greater and greater

degree. I did not pretend to be watching him, but I kept strict observation all the

same. All at once that shifty look came into his eyes which we always see when

a madman has seized an idea, and with it the shifty movement of the head and

back which asylum attendants come to know so well. He became quite quiet, and

went and sat on the edge of his bed resignedly, and looked into space with lack-

lustre eyes. I thought I would find out if his apathy were real or only assumed,

and tried to lead him to talk of his pets, a theme which had never failed to excite

his attention. At first he made no reply, but at length said testily:—

“Bother them all! I don’t care a pin about them.”

“What?” I said. “You don’t mean to tell me you don’t care about spiders?”

(Spiders at present are his hobby and the note-book is filling up with columns of

small figures.) To this he answered enigmatically:—

“The bride-maidens rejoice the eyes that wait the coming of the bride; but

when the bride draweth nigh, then the maidens shine not to the eyes that are filled.”

He would not explain himself, but remained obstinately seated on his bed all

the time I remained with him.

I am weary to-night and low in spirits. I cannot but think of Lucy, and how

different things might have been. If I don’t sleep at once, chloral, the modern Morpheus—C2HCl3O. H2O! I must be careful not to let it grow into a habit. No,

I shall take none to-night! I have thought of Lucy, and I shall not dishonour her

by mixing the two. If need be, to-night shall be sleepless....

Later. —Glad I made the resolution; gladder that I kept to it. I had lain tossing

about, and had heard the clock strike only twice, when the night-watchman came to me, sent up from the ward, to say that Renfield had escaped. I threw on my

clothes and ran down at once; my patient is too dangerous a person to be

roaming about. Those ideas of his might work out dangerously with strangers.

The attendant was waiting for me. He said he had seen him not ten minutes before, seemingly asleep in his bed, when he had looked through the

observation-trap in the door. His attention was called by the sound of the

window being wrenched out. He ran back and saw his feet disappear through the

window, and had at once sent up for me. He was only in his night-gear, and cannot be far off. The attendant thought it would be more useful to watch where

he should go than to follow him, as he might lose sight of him whilst getting out

of the building by the door. He is a bulky man, and couldn’t get through the window. I am thin, so, with his aid, I got out, but feet foremost, and, as we were

only a few feet above ground, landed unhurt. The attendant told me the patient

had gone to the left, and had taken a straight line, so I ran as quickly as I could.

As I got through the belt of trees I saw a white figure scale the high wall which

separates our grounds from those of the deserted house.

I ran back at once, told the watchman to get three or four men immediately

and follow me into the grounds of Carfax, in case our friend might be dangerous.

I got a ladder myself, and crossing the wall, dropped down on the other side. I

could see Renfield’s figure just disappearing behind the angle of the house, so I

ran after him. On the far side of the house I found him pressed close against the

old ironbound oak door of the chapel. He was talking, apparently to some one,

but I was afraid to go near enough to hear what he was saying, lest I might frighten him, and he should run off. Chasing an errant swarm of bees is nothing

to following a naked lunatic, when the fit of escaping is upon him! After a few

minutes, however, I could see that he did not take note of anything around him,

and so ventured to draw nearer to him—the more so as my men had now crossed

the wall and were closing him in. I heard him say:—

“I am here to do Your bidding, Master. I am Your slave, and You will reward

me, for I shall be faithful. I have worshipped You long and afar off. Now that You are near, I await Your commands, and

You will not pass me by, will You, dear Master, in Your distribution of good things?”

He *is* a selfish old beggar anyhow. He thinks of the loaves and fishes even when he believes he is in a Real Presence. His manias make a startling

combination. When we closed in on him he fought like a tiger. He is immensely

strong, for he was more like a wild beast than a man. I never saw a lunatic in such a paroxysm of rage before; and I hope I shall not again. It is a mercy that

we have found out his strength and his danger in good time. With strength and determination like his, he might have done wild work before he was caged. He is

safe now at any rate. Jack Sheppard himself couldn’t get free from the strait-waistcoat that keeps him restrained, and he’s chained to the wall in the padded

room. His cries are at times awful, but the silences that follow are more deadly

still, for he means murder in every turn and movement.

Just now he spoke coherent words for the first time:—

“I shall be patient, Master. It is coming—coming—coming!”

So I took the hint, and came too. I was too excited to sleep, but this diary has

quieted me, and I feel I shall get some sleep to-night.

CHAPTER IX

Letter, Mina Harker to Lucy Westenra.

“*Buda-Pesth, 24 August.*

“My dearest Lucy,—

“I know you will be anxious to hear all that has happened since we parted at

the railway station at Whitby. Well, my dear, I got to Hull all right, and caught

the boat to Hamburg, and then the train on here. I feel that I can hardly recall anything of the journey, except that I knew I was coming to Jonathan, and, that

as I should have to do some nursing, I had better get all the sleep I could.... I found my dear one, oh, so thin and pale and weak-looking. All the resolution has

gone out of his dear eyes, and that quiet dignity which I told you was in his face

has vanished. He is only a wreck of himself, and he does not remember anything

that has happened to him for a long time past. At least, he wants me to believe

so, and I shall never ask. He has had some terrible shock, and I fear it might tax

his poor brain if he were to try to recall it. Sister Agatha, who is a good creature

and a born nurse, tells me that he raved of dreadful things whilst he was off his

head. I wanted her to tell me what they were; but she would only cross herself,

and say she would never tell; that the ravings of the sick were the secrets of God,

and that if a nurse through her vocation should hear them, she should respect her

trust. She is a sweet, good soul, and the next day, when she saw I was troubled,

she opened up the subject again, and after saying that she could never mention

what my poor dear raved about, added: ‘I can tell you this much, my dear: that it

was not about anything which he has done wrong himself; and you, as his wife

to be, have no cause to be concerned. He has not forgotten you or what he owes

to you. His fear was of great and terrible things, which no mortal can treat of.’ I

do believe the dear soul thought I might be jealous lest my poor dear should have fallen in love with any other girl. The idea of *my* being jealous about Jonathan! And yet, my dear, let me whisper, I felt a thrill of joy through me when I *knew* that no other woman was a cause of trouble. I am now sitting by his bedside, where I can see his face while he sleeps. He is waking!...

“When he woke he asked me for his coat, as he wanted to get something from

the pocket; I asked Sister Agatha, and she brought all his things. I saw that amongst them was his note-book, and was going to ask him to let me look at it—

for I knew then that I might find some clue to his trouble—but I suppose he must

have seen my wish in my eyes, for he sent me over to the window, saying he

wanted to be quite alone for a moment. Then he called me back, and when I came he had his hand over the note-book, and he said to me very solemnly:—

“ ‘Wilhelmina’—I knew then that he was in deadly earnest, for he has never

called me by that name since he asked me to marry him —‘you know, dear, my

ideas of the trust between husband and wife: there should be no secret, no concealment. I have had a great shock, and when I try to think of what it is I feel

my head spin round, and I do not know if it was all real or the dreaming of a madman. You know I have had brain fever, and that is to be mad. The secret is

here, and I do not want to know it. I want to take up my life here, with our marriage.’ For, my dear, we had decided to be married as soon as the formalities

are complete. ‘Are you willing, Wilhelmina, to share my ignorance? Here is the

book. Take it and keep it, read it if you will, but never let me know; unless, indeed, some solemn duty should come upon

me to go back to the bitter hours,

asleep or awake, sane or mad, recorded here.’ He fell back exhausted, and I put

the book under his pillow, and kissed him. I have asked Sister Agatha to beg the

Superior to let our wedding be this afternoon, and am waiting her reply....

“She has come and told me that the chaplain of the English mission church

has been sent for. We are to be married in an hour, or as soon after as Jonathan

awakes....

“Lucy, the time has come and gone. I feel very solemn, but very, very happy.

Jonathan woke a little after the hour, and all was ready, and he sat up in bed, propped up with pillows. He answered his ‘I will’ firmly and strongly. I could hardly speak; my heart was so full that even those words seemed to choke me.

The dear sisters were so kind. Please God, I shall never, never forget them, nor

the grave and sweet responsibilities I have taken upon me. I must tell you of my

wedding present. When the chaplain and the sisters had left me alone with my husband—oh, Lucy, it is the first time I have written the words ‘my husband’—

left me alone with my husband, I took the book from under his pillow, and wrapped it up in white paper, and tied it with a little bit of pale blue ribbon which was round my neck, and sealed it over the knot with sealing-wax, and for

my seal I used my wedding ring. Then I kissed it and showed it to my husband,

and told him that I would keep it so, and then it would be an outward and visible

sign for us all our lives that we trusted each other; that I would never open it unless it were for his own dear sake or for the sake of some stern duty. Then he

took my hand in his, and oh, Lucy, it was the first time he took *his wife's* hand, and said that it was the dearest thing in all the wide world, and that he would go

through all the past again to win it, if need be. The poor dear meant to have said a part of the past, but he cannot think of time yet, and I shall not wonder if at first he mixes up not only the month, but the year.

"Well, my dear, what could I say? I could only tell him that I was the happiest

woman in all the wide world, and that I had nothing to give him except myself,

my life, and my trust, and that with these went my love and duty for all the days

of my life. And, my dear, when he kissed me, and drew me to him with his poor

weak hands, it was like a very solemn pledge between us....

“Lucy dear, do you know why I tell you all this? It is not only because it is all

sweet to me, but because you have been, and are, very dear to me. It was my privilege to be your friend and guide when you came from the schoolroom to prepare for the world of life. I want you to see now, and with the eyes of a very

happy wife, whither duty has led me; so that in your own married life you too may be all happy as I am. My dear, please Almighty God, your life may be all it

promises: a long day of sunshine, with no harsh wind, no forgetting duty, no distrust. I must not wish you no pain, for that can never be; but I do hope you will be *always* as happy as I am *now*. Good-bye, my dear. I shall post this at once, and, perhaps, write you very soon again. I must stop, for Jonathan is waking—I must attend to my husband!

“Your ever-loving

“MINA HARKER.”

Letter, Lucy Westenra to Mina Harker.

“*Whitby, 30 August.*

“My dearest Mina,—

“Oceans of love and millions of kisses, and may you soon be in your own

home with your husband. I wish you could be coming home soon enough to stay

with us here. The strong air would soon restore Jonathan; it has quite restored me. I have an appetite like a cormorant,

am full of life, and sleep well. You will

be glad to know that I have quite given up walking in my sleep. I think I have

not stirred out of my bed for a week, that is when I once got into it at night.

Arthur says I am getting fat. By the way, I forgot to tell you that Arthur is here.

We have such walks and drives, and rides, and rowing, and tennis, and fishing together; and I love him more than ever. He *tells* me that he loves me more, but I doubt that, for at first he told me that he couldn't love me more than he did then.

But this is nonsense. There he is, calling to me. So no more just at present from

your loving

"LUCY.

"P. S.—Mother sends her love. She seems better, poor dear.

"P. P. S.—We are to be married on 28 September."

Dr. Seward's Diary.

20 August. —The case of Renfield grows even more interesting. He has now

so far quieted that there are spells of cessation from his passion. For the first week after his attack he was perpetually violent. Then one night, just as the moon rose, he grew quiet, and kept murmuring to himself: "Now I can wait; now

I can wait.” The attendant came to tell me, so I ran down at once to have a look

at him. He was still in the strait-waistcoat and in the padded room, but the suffused look had gone from his face, and his eyes had something of their old pleading—I might almost say, “cringing”—softness. I was satisfied with his

present condition, and directed him to be relieved. The attendants hesitated, but

finally carried out my wishes without protest. It was a strange thing that the patient had humour enough to see their distrust, for, coming close to me, he said

in a whisper, all the while looking furtively at them:—

“They think I could hurt you! Fancy *me* hurting *you*! The fools!”

It was soothing, somehow, to the feelings to find myself dissociated even in

the mind of this poor madman from the others; but all the same I do not follow

his thought. Am I to take it that I have anything in common with him, so that we

are, as it were, to stand together; or has he to gain from me some good so stupendous that my well-being is needful to him? I must find out later on. To-night he will not speak. Even the offer of a kitten or even a full-grown cat will

not tempt him. He will only say: “I don’t take any stock in cats. I have more to

think of now, and I can wait; I can wait.”

After a while I left him. The attendant tells me that he was quiet until just before dawn, and that then he began to get uneasy, and at length violent, until at

last he fell into a paroxysm which exhausted him so that he swooned into a sort

of coma.

... Three nights has the same thing happened—violent all day then quiet from

moonrise to sunrise. I wish I could get some clue to the cause. It would almost

seem as if there was some influence which came and went. Happy thought! We

shall to-night play sane wits against mad ones. He escaped before without our help; to-night he shall escape with it. We shall give him a chance, and have the

men ready to follow in case they are required....

23 August. —“The unexpected always happens.” How well Disraeli knew life.

Our bird when he found the cage open would not fly, so all our subtle

arrangements were for nought. At any rate, we have proved one thing; that the spells of quietness last a reasonable time. We shall in future be able to ease his

bonds for a few hours each day. I have given orders to the night attendant merely

to shut him in the padded room, when once he is quiet, until an hour before sunrise. The poor soul's body will enjoy the relief even if his mind cannot appreciate it. Hark! The unexpected again! I am called; the patient has once more escaped.

Later. —Another night adventure. Renfield artfully waited until the attendant

was entering the room to inspect. Then he dashed out past him and flew down the passage. I sent word for the attendants to follow. Again he went into the grounds of the deserted house, and we found him in the same place, pressed against the old chapel door. When he saw me he became furious, and had not the

attendants seized him in time, he would have tried to kill me. As we were holding him a strange thing happened. He suddenly redoubled his efforts, and then as suddenly grew calm. I looked round instinctively, but could see nothing.

Then I caught the patient's eye and followed it, but could trace nothing as it looked into the moonlit sky except a big bat, which was flapping its silent and ghostly way to the west. Bats usually wheel and flit about, but this one seemed

to go straight on, as if it knew where it was bound for or had some intention of

its own. The patient grew calmer every instant, and presently said:—

"You needn't tie me; I shall go quietly!" Without trouble we came back to the

house. I feel there is something ominous in his calm, and shall not forget this night....

Lucy Westenra’s Diary

Hillingham, 24 August. —I must imitate Mina, and keep writing things down.

Then we can have long talks when we do meet. I wonder when it will be. I wish

she were with me again, for I feel so unhappy. Last night I seemed to be dreaming again just as I was at Whitby. Perhaps it is the change of air, or getting

home again. It is all dark and horrid to me, for I can remember nothing; but I am

full of vague fear, and I feel so weak and worn out. When Arthur came to lunch

he looked quite grieved when he saw me, and I hadn’t the spirit to try to be cheerful. I wonder if I could sleep in mother’s room to-night. I shall make an excuse and try.

25 August. —Another bad night. Mother did not seem to take to my proposal.

She seems not too well herself, and doubtless she fears to worry me. I tried to keep awake, and succeeded for a while; but when the clock struck twelve it waked me from a doze, so I must have been falling asleep. There was a sort of

scratching or flapping at the window, but I did not mind it, and as I remember no

more, I suppose I must then have fallen asleep. More bad dreams. I wish I could

remember them. This morning I am horribly weak. My face is ghastly pale, and

my throat pains me. It must be something wrong with my lungs, for I don’t seem

ever to get air enough. I shall try to cheer up when Arthur comes, or else I know

he will be miserable to see me so.

Letter, Arthur Holmwood to Dr. Seward.

“*Albemarle Hotel, 31 August.*

“My dear Jack,—

“I want you to do me a favour. Lucy is ill; that is, she has no special disease,

but she looks awful, and is getting worse every day. I have asked her if there is

any cause; I do not dare to ask her mother, for to disturb the poor lady’s mind about her daughter in her present state of health would be fatal. Mrs. Westenra

has confided to me that her doom is spoken—disease of the heart—though poor

Lucy does not know it yet. I am sure that there is something preying on my dear

girl’s mind. I am almost distracted when I think of her; to look at her gives me a

pang. I told her I should ask you to see her, and though she demurred at first—I

know why, old fellow—she finally consented. It will be a painful task for you, I

know, old friend, but it is for *her* sake, and I must not hesitate to ask, or you to act. You are to come to lunch at Hillingham to-morrow, two o'clock, so as not to

arouse any suspicion in Mrs. Westenra, and after lunch Lucy will take an

opportunity of being alone with you. I shall come in for tea, and we can go away

together; I am filled with anxiety, and want to consult with you alone as soon as I

can after you have seen her. Do not fail!

"ARTHUR."

Telegram, Arthur Holmwood to Seward.

"*1 September.*

"Am summoned to see my father, who is worse. Am writing. Write me fully

by to-night's post to Ring. Wire me if necessary."

Letter from Dr. Seward to Arthur Holmwood.

"*2 September.*

"My dear old fellow,—

"With regard to Miss Westenra's health I hasten to let you know at once that

in my opinion there is not any functional disturbance or any malady that I know

of. At the same time, I am not by any means satisfied with her appearance; she is

woefully different from what she was when I saw her last. Of course you must

bear in mind that I did not have full opportunity of examination such as I should

wish; our very friendship makes a little difficulty which not even medical

science or custom can bridge over. I had better tell you exactly what happened,

leaving you to draw, in a measure, your own conclusions. I shall then say what I

have done and propose doing.

“I found Miss Westenra in seemingly gay spirits. Her mother was present,

and in a few seconds I made up my mind that she was trying all she knew to mislead her mother and prevent her from being anxious. I have no doubt she guesses, if she does not know, what need of caution there is. We lunched alone,

and as we all exerted ourselves to be cheerful, we got, as some kind of reward

for our labours, some real cheerfulness amongst us. Then Mrs. Westenra went to

lie down, and Lucy was left with me. We went into her boudoir, and till we got

there her gaiety remained, for the servants were coming and going. As soon as

the door was closed, however, the mask fell from her face, and she sank down into a chair with a great sigh, and hid her eyes with her hand. When I saw that

her high spirits had failed, I at once took advantage of her reaction to make a diagnosis. She said to me very sweetly:—

“ ‘I cannot tell you how I loathe talking about myself.’ I reminded her that a

doctor’s confidence was sacred, but that you were grievously anxious about her.

She caught on to my meaning at once, and settled that matter in a word. ‘Tell Arthur everything you choose. I do not care for myself, but all for him!’ So I am

quite free.

“I could easily see that she is somewhat bloodless, but I could not see the usual anæmic signs, and by a chance I was actually able to test the quality of her

blood, for in opening a window which was stiff a cord gave way, and she cut her

hand slightly with broken glass. It was a slight matter in itself, but it gave me an

evident chance, and I secured a few drops of the blood and have analysed them.

The qualitative analysis gives a quite normal condition, and shows, I should infer, in itself a vigorous state of health. In other physical matters I was quite satisfied that there is no need for anxiety; but as there must be a cause somewhere, I have come to the conclusion that it must be something mental. She

complains of difficulty in breathing satisfactorily at times, and of heavy,

lethargic sleep, with dreams that frighten her, but regarding which she can

remember nothing. She says that as a child she used to walk in her sleep, and that when in Whitby the habit came back, and that once she walked out in the night and went to East Cliff, where Miss Murray found her; but she assures me

that of late the habit has not returned. I am in doubt, and so have done the best

thing I know of; I have written to my old friend and master, Professor Van Helsing, of Amsterdam, who knows as much about obscure diseases as any one

in the world. I have asked him to come over, and as you told me that all things

were to be at your charge, I have mentioned to him who you are and your

relations to Miss Westenra. This, my dear fellow, is in obedience to your wishes,

for I am only too proud and happy to do anything I can for her. Van Helsing would, I know, do anything for me for a personal reason, so, no matter on what

ground he comes, we must accept his wishes. He is a seemingly arbitrary man,

but this is because he knows what he is talking about better than any one else.

He is a philosopher and a metaphysician, and one of the most advanced scientists

of his day; and he has, I believe, an absolutely open mind. This, with an iron nerve, a temper of the ice-brook, an indomitable resolution, self-command, and

toleration exalted from virtues to blessings, and the kindliest and truest heart that

beats—these form his equipment for the noble work that he is doing for mankind

—work both in theory and practice, for his views are as wide as his all-

embracing sympathy. I tell you these facts that you may know why I have such

confidence in him. I have asked him to come at once. I shall see Miss Westenra

to-morrow again. She is to meet me at the Stores, so that I may not alarm her mother by too early a repetition of my call.

“Yours always,

“JOHN SEWARD.”

Letter, Abraham Van Helsing, M. D., D. Ph., D. Lit., etc., etc., to Dr. Seward.

“*2 September.*

“My good Friend,—

“When I have received your letter I am already coming to you. By good

fortune I can leave just at once, without wrong to any of those who have trusted

me. Were fortune other, then it were bad for those who have trusted, for I come

to my friend when he call me to aid those he holds dear. Tell your friend that when that time you suck from my wound so swiftly the poison of the gangrene

from that knife that our other friend, too nervous, let slip, you did more for him

when he wants my aids and you call for them than all his great fortune could do.

But it is pleasure added to do for him, your friend; it is to you that I come. Have

then rooms for me at the Great Eastern Hotel, so that I may be near to hand, and

please it so arrange that we may see the young lady not too late on to-morrow, for it is likely that I may have to return here that night. But if need be I shall come again in three days, and stay longer if it must. Till then good-bye, my friend John.

“VAN HELSING.”

Letter, Dr. Seward to Hon. Arthur Holmwood.

“*3 September.*

“My dear Art,—

“Van Helsing has come and gone. He came on with me to Hillingham, and

found that, by Lucy’s discretion, her mother was lunching out, so that we were

alone with her. Van Helsing made a very careful examination of the patient. He

is to report to me, and I shall advise you, for of course I was not present all the

time. He is, I fear, much concerned, but says he must think. When I told him of

our friendship and how you trust to me in the matter, he said: ‘You must tell him

all you think. Tell him what I think, if you can guess it, if you will. Nay, I am not

jesting. This is no jest, but life and death, perhaps more.’ I asked what he meant

by that, for he was very serious. This was when we had come back to town, and

he was having a cup of tea before starting on his return to Amsterdam. He would

not give me any further clue. You must not be angry with me, Art, because his

very reticence means that all his brains are working for her good. He will speak

plainly enough when the time comes, be sure. So I told him I would simply write

an account of our visit, just as if I were doing a descriptive special article for *The Daily Telegraph*. He seemed not to notice, but remarked that the smuts in London were not quite so bad as they used to be when he was a student here. I

am to get his report to-morrow if he can possibly make it. In any case I am to have a letter.

“Well, as to the visit. Lucy was more cheerful than on the day I first saw her,

and certainly looked better. She had lost something of the ghastly look that so upset you, and her breathing was normal. She was very sweet to the professor (as

she always is), and tried to make him feel at ease; though I could see that the poor girl was making a hard struggle for it. I believe Van Helsing saw it, too, for

I saw the quick look under his bushy brows that I knew of old. Then he began to

chat of all things except ourselves and diseases and with such an infinite

geniality that I could see poor Lucy’s pretense of animation merge into reality.

Then, without any seeming change, he brought the conversation gently round to

his visit, and suavely said:—

“ ‘My dear young miss, I have the so great pleasure because you are so much

beloved. That is much, my dear, ever were there that which I do not see. They told me you were down in the spirit, and that you were of a ghastly pale. To them

I say: “Pouf!” ’ And he snapped his fingers at me and went on: ‘But you and I

shall show them how wrong they are. How can he’—and he pointed at me with

the same look and gesture as that with which once he pointed me out to his class,

on, or rather after, a particular occasion which he never fails to remind me of

—‘know anything of a young ladies? He has his madams to play with, and to bring them back to happiness, and to those that love them. It is much to do, and,

oh, but there are rewards, in that we can bestow such happiness. But the young

ladies! He has no wife nor daughter, and the young do not tell themselves to the

young, but to the old, like me, who have known so many sorrows and the causes

of them. So, my dear, we will send him away to smoke the cigarette in the garden, whiles you and I have little talk all to ourselves.’ I took the hint, and strolled about, and

presently the professor came to the window and called me in.

He looked grave, but said: ‘I have made careful examination, but there is no functional cause. With you I agree that there has been much blood lost; it has been, but is not. But the conditions of her are in no way anæmic. I have asked

her to send me her maid, that I may ask just one or two question, that so I may

not chance to miss nothing. I know well what she will say. And yet there is cause; there is always cause for everything. I must go back home and think. You

must send to me the telegram every day; and if there be cause I shall come again.

The disease—for not to be all well is a disease—interest me, and the sweet young dear, she interest me too. She charm me, and for her, if not for you or disease, I come.’

“As I tell you, he would not say a word more, even when we were alone. And

so now, Art, you know all I know. I shall keep stern watch. I trust your poor father is rallying. It must be a terrible thing to you, my dear old fellow, to be placed in such a position between two people who are both so dear to you. I know your idea of duty to your father, and you are right to stick to it; but, if need

be, I shall send you word to come at once to Lucy; so do not be over-anxious unless you hear from me.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

4 September. —Zoöphagous patient still keeps up our interest in him. He had

only one outburst and that was yesterday at an unusual time. Just before the stroke of noon he began to grow restless. The attendant knew the symptoms, and

at once summoned aid. Fortunately the men came at a run, and were just in time,

for at the stroke of noon he became so violent that it took all their strength to hold him. In about five minutes, however, he began to get more and more quiet,

and finally sank into a sort of melancholy, in which state he has remained up to now. The attendant tells me that his screams whilst in the paroxysm were really

appalling; I found my hands full when I got in, attending to some of the other patients who were frightened by him. Indeed, I can quite understand the effect,

for the sounds disturbed even me, though I was some distance away. It is now after the dinner-hour of the asylum, and as yet my patient sits in a corner brooding, with a dull, sullen, woe-begone look in his face, which seems rather to

indicate than to show something directly. I cannot quite understand it.

Later. —Another change in my patient. At five o’clock I looked in on him, and found him seemingly as happy and contented as he used to be. He was

catching flies and eating them, and was keeping note of his capture by making

nail-marks on the edge of the door between the ridges of padding. When he saw

me, he came over and apologised for his bad conduct, and asked me in a very humble, cringing way to be led back to his own room and to have his note-book

again. I thought it well to humour him: so he is back in his room with the window open. He has the sugar of his tea spread out on the window-sill, and is

reaping quite a harvest of flies. He is not now eating them, but putting them into

a box, as of old, and is already examining the corners of his room to find a spider. I tried to get him to talk about the past few days, for any clue to his thoughts would be of immense help to me; but he would not rise. For a moment

or two he looked very sad, and said in a sort of far-away voice, as though saying

it rather to himself than to me:—

“All over! all over! He has deserted me. No hope for me now unless I do it

for myself!” Then suddenly turning to me in a resolute way, he said: “Doctor, won’t you be very good to me and let me have a little more sugar? I think it would be good for me.”

“And the flies?” I said.

“Yes! The flies like it, too, and I like the flies; therefore I like it.” And there

are people who know so little as to think that madmen do not argue. I procured

him a double supply, and left him as happy a man as, I suppose, any in the world. I wish I could fathom his mind.

Midnight. —Another change in him. I had been to see Miss Westenra, whom I

found much better, and had just returned, and was standing at our own gate looking at the sunset, when once more I heard him yelling. As his room is on this

side of the house, I could hear it better than in the morning. It was a shock to me

to turn from the wonderful smoky beauty of a sunset over London, with its lurid lights and inky shadows and all the marvellous tints that come on foul clouds even as on foul water, and to realise all the grim sternness of my own cold stone

building, with its wealth of breathing misery, and my own desolate heart to endure it all. I reached him just as the sun was going down, and from his window

saw the red disc sink. As it sank he became less and less frenzied; and just as it

dipped he slid from the hands that held him, an inert mass, on the floor. It is wonderful, however, what intellectual recuperative power lunatics have, for

within a few minutes he stood up quite calmly and looked around him. I

signalled to the attendants not to hold him, for I was anxious to see what he would do. He went straight over to the window and brushed out the crumbs of

sugar; then he took his fly-box, and emptied it outside, and threw away the box;

then he shut the window, and crossing over, sat down on his bed. All this surprised me, so I asked him: “Are you not going to keep flies any more?”

“No,” said he; “I am sick of all that rubbish!” He certainly is a wonderfully

interesting study. I wish I could get some glimpse of his mind or of the cause of

his sudden passion. Stop; there may be a clue after all, if we can find why to-day

his paroxysms came on at high noon and at sunset. Can it be that there is a malign influence of the sun at periods which affects certain natures—as at times

the moon does others? We shall see.

Telegram, Seward, London, to Van Helsing, Amsterdam.

“*4 September.* —Patient still better to-day.”

Telegram, Seward, London, to Van Helsing, Amsterdam.

“*5 September.* —Patient greatly improved. Good appetite; sleeps naturally; good spirits; colour coming back.”

Telegram, Seward, London, to Van Helsing, Amsterdam.

“*6 September.* —Terrible change for the worse. Come at once; do not lose an

hour. I hold over telegram to Holmwood till have seen you.”

CHAPTER X

Letter, Dr. Seward to Hon. Arthur Holmwood.

“*6 September.*

“My dear Art,—

“My news to-day is not so good. Lucy this morning had gone back a bit.

There is, however, one good thing which has arisen from it; Mrs. Westenra was

naturally anxious concerning Lucy, and has consulted me professionally about

her. I took advantage of the opportunity, and told her that my old master, Van Helsing, the great specialist, was coming to stay with me, and that I would put

her in his charge conjointly with myself; so now we can come and go without alarming her unduly, for a shock to her would mean sudden death, and this, in Lucy’s weak condition, might be disastrous to her. We are hedged in with

difficulties, all of us, my poor old fellow; but, please God, we shall come through them all right. If any need I shall write, so that, if you do not hear from

me, take it for granted that I am simply waiting for news. In haste

Yours ever,

“JOHN SEWARD.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

7 September. —The first thing Van Helsing said to me when we met at Liverpool Street was:—

“Have you said anything to our young friend the lover of her?”

“No,” I said. “I waited till I had seen you, as I said in my telegram. I wrote

him a letter simply telling him that you were coming, as Miss Westenra was not

so well, and that I should let him know if need be.”

“Right, my friend,” he said, “quite right! Better he not know as yet; perhaps

he shall never know. I pray so; but if it be needed, then he shall know all. And,

my good friend John, let me caution you. You deal with the madmen. All men are mad in some way or the other; and inasmuch as you deal discreetly with your

madmen, so deal with God’s madmen, too—the rest of the world. You tell not your madmen what you do nor why you do it; you tell them not what you think.

So you shall keep knowledge in its place, where it may rest—where it may

gather its kind around it and breed. You and I shall keep as yet what we know

here, and here.” He touched me on the heart and on the forehead, and then

touched himself the same way. “I have for myself thoughts at the present. Later I shall unfold to you.”

“Why not now?” I asked. “It may do some good; we may arrive at some

decision.” He stopped and looked at me, and said:—

“My friend John, when the corn is grown, even before it has ripened—while

the milk of its mother-earth is in him, and the sunshine has not yet begun to paint

him with his gold, the husbandman he pull the ear and rub him between his rough hands, and blow away the green chaff, and say to you: ‘Look! he’s good

corn; he will make good crop when the time comes.’ ” I did not see the

application, and told him so. For reply he reached over and took my ear in his hand and pulled it playfully, as he used long ago to do at lectures, and said: “The

good husbandman tell you so then because he knows, but not till then. But you

do not find the good husbandman dig up his planted corn to see if he grow; that

is for the children who play at husbandry, and not for those who take it as of the

work of their life. See you now, friend John? I have sown my corn, and Nature

has her work to do in making it sprout; if he sprout at all, there’s some promise;

and I wait till the ear begins to swell.” He broke off, for he evidently saw that I

understood. Then he went on, and very gravely:—

“You were always a careful student, and your case-book was ever more full

than the rest. You were only student then; now you are master, and I trust that good habit have not fail. Remember, my friend, that knowledge is stronger than

memory, and we should not trust the weaker. Even if you have not kept the good

practise, let me tell you that this case of our dear miss is one that may be—mind,

I say *may be*—of such interest to us and others that all the rest may not make him kick the beam, as your peoples say. Take then good note of it. Nothing is too

small. I counsel you, put down in record even your doubts and surmises.

Hereafter it may be of interest to you to see how true you guess. We learn from

failure, not from success!”

When I described Lucy’s symptoms—the same as before, but infinitely more

marked—he looked very grave, but said nothing. He took with him a bag in

which were many instruments and drugs, “the ghastly paraphernalia of our

beneficial trade,” as he once called, in one of his lectures, the equipment of a professor of the healing craft. When we were shown in, Mrs. Westenra met us.

She was alarmed, but not nearly so much as I expected to find her. Nature in one

of her beneficent moods has ordained that even death has some antidote to its own terrors. Here, in a case where any shock may prove fatal, matters are so ordered that, from some cause or other, the things not personal—even the terrible

change in her daughter to whom she is so attached—do not seem to reach her. It

is something like the way Dame Nature gathers round a foreign body an envelope of some insensitive tissue which can protect from evil that which it would otherwise harm by contact. If this be an ordered selfishness, then we should pause before we condemn any one for the vice of egoism, for there may

be deeper root for its causes than we have knowledge of.

I used my knowledge of this phase of spiritual pathology, and laid down a

rule that she should not be present with Lucy or think of her illness more than was absolutely required. She assented readily, so readily that I saw again the hand of Nature fighting for life. Van Helsing and I were shown up to Lucy's room. If I was shocked when I saw her yesterday, I was horrified when I saw her

to-day. She was ghastly, chalkily pale; the red seemed to have gone even from her lips and gums, and the bones of her face stood out prominently; her

breathing was painful to see or hear. Van Helsing's face grew set as marble, and

his eyebrows converged till they almost touched over his nose. Lucy lay

motionless, and did not seem to have strength to speak, so for a while we were

all silent. Then Van Helsing beckoned to me, and we went gently out of the room. The instant we had closed the door he stepped quickly along the passage

to the next door, which was open. Then he pulled me quickly in with him and closed the door. "My God!" he said; "this is dreadful. There is no time to be lost.

She will die for sheer want of blood to keep the heart's action as it should be.

There must be transfusion of blood at once. Is it you or me?"

"I am younger and stronger, Professor. It must be me."

"Then get ready at once. I will bring up my bag. I am prepared."

I went downstairs with him, and as we were going there was a knock at the

hall-door. When we reached the hall the maid had just opened the door, and Arthur was stepping quickly in. He rushed up to me, saying in an eager whisper:

—

“Jack, I was so anxious. I read between the lines of your letter, and have been

in an agony. The dad was better, so I ran down here to see for myself. Is not that

gentleman Dr. Van Helsing? I am so thankful to you, sir, for coming.” When first

the Professor’s eye had lit upon him he had been angry at his interruption at such

a time; but now, as he took in his stalwart proportions and recognised the strong

young manhood which seemed to emanate from him, his eyes gleamed. Without

a pause he said to him gravely as he held out his hand:—

“Sir, you have come in time. You are the lover of our dear miss. She is bad,

very, very bad. Nay, my child, do not go like that.” For he suddenly grew pale

and sat down in a chair almost fainting. “You are to help her. You can do more

than any that live, and your courage is your best help.”

“What can I do?” asked Arthur hoarsely. “Tell me, and I shall do it. My life is hers, and I would give the last drop of blood in my body for her.” The Professor

has a strongly humorous side, and I could from old knowledge detect a trace of

its origin in his answer:—

“My young sir, I do not ask so much as that—not the last!”

“What shall I do?” There was fire in his eyes, and his open nostril quivered

with intent. Van Helsing slapped him on the shoulder. “Come!” he said. “You are

a man, and it is a man we want. You are better than me, better than my friend John.” Arthur looked bewildered, and the Professor went on by explaining in a

kindly way:—

“Young miss is bad, very bad. She wants blood, and blood she must have or

die. My friend John and I have consulted; and we are about to perform what we

call transfusion of blood—to transfer from full veins of one to the empty veins

which pine for him. John was to give his blood, as he is the more young and strong than me”—here Arthur took my hand and wrung it hard in silence—“but,

now you are here, you are more good than us, old or young, who toil much in the

world of thought. Our nerves are not so calm and our blood not so bright than yours!” Arthur turned to him and said:—

“If you only knew how gladly I would die for her you would understand

——”

He stopped, with a sort of choke in his voice.

“Good boy!” said Van Helsing. “In the not-so-far-off you will be happy that

you have done all for her you love. Come now and be silent. You shall kiss her

once before it is done, but then you must go; and you must leave at my sign. Say

no word to Madame; you know how it is with her! There must be no shock; any

knowledge of this would be one. Come!”

We all went up to Lucy’s room. Arthur by direction remained outside. Lucy

turned her head and looked at us, but said nothing. She was not asleep, but she

was simply too weak to make the effort. Her eyes spoke to us; that was all. Van

Helsing took some things from his bag and laid them on a little table out of sight.

Then he mixed a narcotic, and coming over to the bed, said cheerily:—

“Now, little miss, here is your medicine. Drink it off, like a good child. See, I

lift you so that to swallow is easy. Yes.” She had made the effort with success.

It astonished me how long the drug took to act. This, in fact, marked the extent of her weakness. The time seemed endless until sleep began to flicker in

her eyelids. At last, however, the narcotic began to manifest its potency; and she

fell into a deep sleep. When the Professor was satisfied he called Arthur into the

room, and bade him strip off his coat. Then he added: “You may take that one little kiss whiles I bring over the table. Friend John, help to me!” So neither of us

looked whilst he bent over her.

Van Helsing turning to me, said:

“He is so young and strong and of blood so pure that we need not defibrinate

it.”

Then with swiftness, but with absolute method, Van Helsing performed the

operation. As the transfusion went on something like life seemed to come back

to poor Lucy’s cheeks, and through Arthur’s growing pallor the joy of his face seemed absolutely to shine. After a bit I began to grow anxious, for the loss of

blood was telling on Arthur, strong man as he was. It gave me an idea of what a

terrible strain Lucy’s system must have undergone that what weakened Arthur

only partially restored her. But the Professor’s face was set, and he stood watch

in hand and with his eyes fixed now on the patient and now on Arthur. I could

hear my own heart beat. Presently he said in a soft voice: “Do not stir an instant.

It is enough. You attend him; I will look to her.” When all was over I could see

how much Arthur was weakened. I dressed the wound and took his arm to bring

him away, when Van Helsing spoke without turning round—the man seems to

have eyes in the back of his head:—

“The brave lover, I think, deserve another kiss, which he shall have

presently.” And as he had now finished his operation, he adjusted the pillow to

the patient’s head. As he did so the narrow black velvet band which she seems

always to wear round her throat, buckled with an old diamond buckle which her

lover had given her, was dragged a little up, and showed a red mark on her throat. Arthur did not notice it, but I could hear the deep hiss of indrawn breath

which is one of Van Helsing’s ways of betraying emotion. He said nothing at the

moment, but turned to me, saying: “Now take down our brave young lover, give

him of the port wine, and let him lie down a while. He must then go home and

rest, sleep much and eat much, that he may be recruited of what he has so given

to his love. He must not stay here. Hold! a moment. I may take it, sir, that you

are anxious of result. Then bring it with you that in all ways the operation is successful. You have saved her life this time, and you can go home and rest easy

in mind that all that can be is. I shall tell her all when she is well; she shall love

you none the less for what you have done. Good-bye.”

When Arthur had gone I went back to the room. Lucy was sleeping gently,

but her breathing was stronger; I could see the counterpane move as her breast

heaved. By the bedside sat Van Helsing, looking at her intently. The velvet band

again covered the red mark. I asked the Professor in a whisper:—

“What do you make of that mark on her throat?”

“What do you make of it?”

“I have not examined it yet,” I answered, and then and there proceeded to

loose the band. Just over the external jugular vein there were two punctures, not

large, but not wholesome-looking. There was no sign of disease, but the edges were white and worn-looking, as if by some trituration. It at once occurred to me

that this wound, or whatever it was, might be the means of that manifest loss of

blood; but I abandoned the idea as soon as formed, for such a thing could not be.

The whole bed would have been drenched to a scarlet with the blood which the

girl must have lost to leave such a pallor as she had before the transfusion.

“Well?” said Van Helsing.

“Well,” said I, “I can make nothing of it.” The Professor stood up. “I must go

back to Amsterdam to-night," he said. "There are books and things there which I

want. You must remain here all the night, and you must not let your sight pass

from her."

"Shall I have a nurse?" I asked.

"We are the best nurses, you and I. You keep watch all night; see that she is

well fed, and that nothing disturbs her. You must not sleep all the night. Later on

we can sleep, you and I. I shall be back as soon as possible. And then we may

begin."

"May begin?" I said. "What on earth do you mean?"

"We shall see!" he answered, as he hurried out. He came back a moment later

and put his head inside the door and said with warning finger held up:—

"Remember, she is your charge. If you leave her, and harm befall, you shall

not sleep easy hereafter!"

Dr. Seward's Diary—continued.

8 September. —I sat up all night with Lucy. The opiate worked itself off towards dusk, and she waked naturally; she

looked a different being from what

she had been before the operation. Her spirits even were good, and she was full

of a happy vivacity, but I could see evidences of the absolute prostration which

she had undergone. When I told Mrs. Westenra that Dr. Van Helsing had directed

that I should sit up with her she almost pooh-poohed the idea, pointing out her

daughter’s renewed strength and excellent spirits. I was firm, however, and made

preparations for my long vigil. When her maid had prepared her for the night I

came in, having in the meantime had supper, and took a seat by the bedside. She

did not in any way make objection, but looked at me gratefully whenever I

caught her eye. After a long spell she seemed sinking off to sleep, but with an effort seemed to pull herself together and shook it off. This was repeated several

times, with greater effort and with shorter pauses as the time moved on. It was

apparent that she did not want to sleep, so I tackled the subject at once:—

“You do not want to go to sleep?”

“No; I am afraid.”

“Afraid to go to sleep! Why so? It is the boon we all crave for.”

“Ah, not if you were like me—if sleep was to you a presage of horror!”

“A presage of horror! What on earth do you mean?”

“I don’t know; oh, I don’t know. And that is what is so terrible. All this weakness comes to me in sleep; until I dread the very thought.”

“But, my dear girl, you may sleep to-night. I am here watching you, and I can

promise that nothing will happen.”

“Ah, I can trust you!” I seized the opportunity, and said: “I promise you that

if I see any evidence of bad dreams I will wake you at once.”

“You will? Oh, will you really? How good you are to me. Then I will sleep!”

And almost at the word she gave a deep sigh of relief, and sank back, asleep.

All night long I watched by her. She never stirred, but slept on and on in a deep, tranquil, life-giving, health-giving sleep. Her lips were slightly parted, and

her breast rose and fell with the regularity of a pendulum. There was a smile on

her face, and it was evident that no bad dreams had come to disturb her peace of

mind.

In the early morning her maid came, and I left her in her care and took myself

back home, for I was anxious about many things. I sent a short wire to Van Helsing and to Arthur, telling them of the excellent result of the operation. My

own work, with its manifold arrears, took me all day to clear off; it was dark when I was able to inquire about my zoöphagous patient. The report was good;

he had been quite quiet for the past day and night. A telegram came from Van Helsing at Amsterdam whilst I was at dinner, suggesting that I should be at Hillingham to-night, as it might be well to be at hand, and stating that he was leaving by the night mail and would join me early in the morning.

9 September.—I was pretty tired and worn out when I got to Hillingham. For

two nights I had hardly had a wink of sleep, and my brain was beginning to feel

that numbness which marks cerebral exhaustion. Lucy was up and in cheerful

spirits. When she shook hands with me she looked sharply in my face and said:

—

“No sitting up to-night for you. You are worn out. I am quite well again; indeed, I am; and if there is to be any sitting up, it is I who will sit up with you.”

I would not argue the point, but went and had my supper. Lucy came with me,

and, enlivened by her charming presence, I made an excellent meal, and had a couple of glasses of the more than excellent port. Then Lucy took me upstairs,

and showed me a room next her own, where a cozy fire was burning. “Now,” she

said, “you must stay here. I shall leave this door open and my door too. You can

lie on the sofa for I know that nothing would induce any of you doctors to go to

bed whilst there is a patient above the horizon. If I want anything I shall call out,

and you can come to me at once.” I could not but acquiesce, for I was “dog-tired,” and could not have sat up had I tried. So, on her renewing her promise to

call me if she should want anything, I lay on the sofa, and forgot all about everything.

Lucy Westenra’s Diary.

9 September. —I feel so happy to-night. I have been so miserably weak, that

to be able to think and move about is like feeling sunshine after a long spell of

east wind out of a steel sky. Somehow Arthur feels very, very close to me. I seem

to feel his presence warm about me. I suppose it is that sickness and weakness

are selfish things and turn our inner eyes and sympathy on ourselves, whilst health and strength give Love rein, and in thought and feeling he can wander where he wills. I know where my thoughts are. If Arthur only knew! My dear, my dear, your ears must tingle as you sleep, as mine do waking. Oh, the blissful

rest of last night! How I slept, with that dear, good Dr. Seward watching me.

And to-night I shall not fear to sleep, since he is close at hand and within call.

Thank everybody for being so good to me! Thank God! Good-night, Arthur.

Dr. Seward's Diary.

10 September. —I was conscious of the Professor's hand on my head, and started awake all in a second. That is one of the things that we learn in an asylum, at any rate.

"And how is our patient?"

"Well, when I left her, or rather when she left me," I answered.

"Come, let us see," he said. And together we went into the room.

The blind was down, and I went over to raise it gently, whilst Van Helsing stepped, with his soft, cat-like tread, over to the bed.

As I raised the blind, and the morning sunlight flooded the room, I heard the

Professor’s low hiss of inspiration, and knowing its rarity, a deadly fear shot through my heart. As I passed over he moved back, and his exclamation of

horror, “Gott in Himmel!” needed no enforcement from his agonised face. He

raised his hand and pointed to the bed, and his iron face was drawn and ashen white. I felt my knees begin to tremble.

There on the bed, seemingly in a swoon, lay poor Lucy, more horribly white

and wan-looking than ever. Even the lips were white, and the gums seemed to have shrunken back from the teeth, as we sometimes see in a corpse after a prolonged illness. Van Helsing raised his foot to stamp in anger, but the instinct

of his life and all the long years of habit stood to him, and he put it down again

softly. “Quick!” he said. “Bring the brandy.” I flew to the dining-room, and returned with the decanter. He wetted the poor white lips with it, and together we

rubbed palm and wrist and heart. He felt her heart, and after a few moments of

agonising suspense said:—

“It is not too late. It beats, though but feebly. All our work is undone; we must begin again. There is no young Arthur here now; I have to call on you yourself this time, friend John.” As he spoke, he was dipping into his bag and producing the instruments for transfusion; I had taken off my coat and rolled up

my shirt-sleeve. There was no possibility of an opiate just at present, and no need of one; and so, without a moment’s delay, we began the operation. After a

time—it did not seem a short time either, for the draining away of one’s blood,

no matter how willingly it be given, is a terrible feeling—Van Helsing held up a

warning finger. “Do not stir,” he said, “but I fear that with growing strength she

may wake; and that would make danger, oh, so much danger. But I shall

precaution take. I shall give hypodermic injection of morphia.” He proceeded

then, swiftly and deftly, to carry out his intent. The effect on Lucy was not bad,

for the faint seemed to merge subtly into the narcotic sleep. It was with a feeling

of personal pride that I could see a faint tinge of colour steal back into the pallid

cheeks and lips. No man knows, till he experiences it, what it is to feel his own

life-blood drawn away into the veins of the woman he loves.

The Professor watched me critically. “That will do,” he said. “Already?” I

remonstrated. “You took a great deal more from Art.” To which he smiled a sad

sort of smile as he replied:—

“He is her lover, her *fiancé*. You have work, much work, to do for her and for

others; and the present will suffice.”

When we stopped the operation, he attended to Lucy, whilst I applied digital

pressure to my own incision. I laid down, whilst I waited his leisure to attend to

me, for I felt faint and a little sick. By-and-by he bound up my wound, and sent

me downstairs to get a glass of wine for myself. As I was leaving the room, he came after me, and half whispered:—

“Mind, nothing must be said of this. If our young lover should turn up

unexpected, as before, no word to him. It would at once frighten him and

enjealous him, too. There must be none. So!”

When I came back he looked at me carefully, and then said:—

“You are not much the worse. Go into the room, and lie on your sofa, and rest

awhile; then have much breakfast, and come here to me.”

I followed out his orders, for I knew how right and wise they were. I had done my part, and now my next duty was to keep up my strength. I felt very weak, and in the weakness lost something of the amazement at what had

occurred. I fell asleep on the sofa, however, wondering over and over again how

Lucy had made such a retrograde movement, and how she could have been

drained of so much blood with no sign anywhere to show for it. I think I must

have continued my wonder in my dreams, for, sleeping and waking, my thoughts

always came back to the little punctures in her throat and the ragged, exhausted

appearance of their edges—tiny though they were.

Lucy slept well into the day, and when she woke she was fairly well and

strong, though not nearly so much so as the day before. When Van Helsing had

seen her, he went out for a walk, leaving me in charge, with strict injunctions that I was not to leave her for a moment. I could hear his voice in the hall, asking

the way to the nearest telegraph office.

Lucy chatted with me freely, and seemed quite unconscious that anything had

happened. I tried to keep her amused and interested. When her mother came up

to see her, she did not seem to notice any change whatever, but said to me gratefully:—

“We owe you so much, Dr. Seward, for all you have done, but you really

must now take care not to overwork yourself. You are looking pale yourself. You

want a wife to nurse and look after you a bit; that you do!” As she spoke, Lucy

turned crimson, though it was only momentarily, for her poor wasted veins could

not stand for long such an unwonted drain to the head. The reaction came in excessive pallor as she turned imploring eyes on me. I smiled and nodded, and

laid my finger on my lips; with a sigh, she sank back amid her pillows.

Van Helsing returned in a couple of hours, and presently said to me: “Now

you go home, and eat much and drink enough. Make yourself strong. I stay here

to-night, and I shall sit up with little miss myself. You and I must watch the case,

and we must have none other to know. I have grave reasons. No, do not ask

them; think what you will. Do not fear to think even the most not-probable.

Good-night.”

In the hall two of the maids came to me, and asked if they or either of them

might not sit up with Miss Lucy. They implored me to let them; and when I said

it was Dr. Van Helsing’s wish that either he or I should sit up, they asked me quite piteously to intercede with the “foreign gentleman.” I was much touched by their kindness. Perhaps it is because I am weak at present, and perhaps because it was on Lucy’s account, that their devotion was manifested; for over and over again have I seen similar instances of woman’s kindness. I got back here in time for a late dinner; went my rounds—all well; and set this down whilst waiting for sleep. It is coming.

11 September. —This afternoon I went over to Hillingham. Found Van

Helsing in excellent spirits, and Lucy much better. Shortly after I had arrived, a

big parcel from abroad came for the Professor. He opened it with much

impressment—assumed, of course—and showed a great bundle of white flowers.

“These are for you, Miss Lucy,” he said.

“For me? Oh, Dr. Van Helsing!”

“Yes, my dear, but not for you to play with. These are medicines.” Here Lucy

made a wry face. “Nay, but they are not to take in a decoction or in nauseous form, so you need not snub that so charming nose, or I shall point out to my friend Arthur what woes he may have to endure in seeing so much beauty that he

so loves so much distort. Aha, my pretty miss, that bring the so nice nose all straight again. This is medicinal, but you do not know how. I put him in your window, I make pretty wreath, and hang him round your neck, so that you sleep

well. Oh yes! they, like the lotus flower, make your trouble forgotten. It smell so

like the waters of Lethe, and of that fountain of youth that the Conquistadores sought for in the Floridas, and find him all too late.”

Whilst he was speaking, Lucy had been examining the flowers and smelling

them. Now she threw them down, saying, with half-laughter, and half-disgust:—

“Oh, Professor, I believe you are only putting up a joke on me. Why, these flowers are only common garlic.”

To my surprise, Van Helsing rose up and said with all his sternness, his iron

jaw set and his bushy eyebrows meeting:—

“No trifling with me! I never jest! There is grim purpose in all I do; and I warn you that you do not thwart me. Take care, for the sake of others if not for

your own.” Then seeing poor Lucy scared, as she might well be, he went on

more gently: “Oh, little miss, my dear, do not fear me. I only do for your good; but there is much virtue to you in those so common flowers. See, I place them

myself in your room. I make myself the wreath that you are to wear. But hush!

no telling to others that make so inquisitive questions. We must obey, and silence

is a part of obedience; and obedience is to bring you strong and well into loving

arms that wait for you. Now sit still awhile. Come with me, friend John, and you

shall help me deck the room with my garlic, which is all the way from Haarlem,

where my friend Vanderpool raise herb in his glass-houses all the year. I had to

telegraph yesterday, or they would not have been here.”

We went into the room, taking the flowers with us. The Professor’s actions

were certainly odd and not to be found in any pharmacopœia that I ever heard of.

First he fastened up the windows and latched them securely; next, taking a

handful of the flowers, he rubbed them all over the sashes, as though to ensure

that every whiff of air that might get in would be laden with the garlic smell.

Then with the wisp he rubbed all over the jamb of the door, above, below, and at

each side, and round the fireplace in the same way. It all seemed grotesque to me, and presently I said:—

“Well, Professor, I know you always have a reason for what you do, but this

certainly puzzles me. It is well we have no sceptic here, or he would say that you

were working some spell to keep out an evil spirit.”

“Perhaps I am!” he answered quietly as he began to make the wreath which

Lucy was to wear round her neck.

We then waited whilst Lucy made her toilet for the night, and when she was

in bed he came and himself fixed the wreath of garlic round her neck. The last

words he said to her were:—

“Take care you do not disturb it; and even if the room feel close, do not to-

night open the window or the door.”

“I promise,” said Lucy, “and thank you both a thousand times for all your

kindness to me! Oh, what have I done to be blessed with such friends?”

As we left the house in my fly, which was waiting, Van Helsing said:—

“To-night I can sleep in peace, and sleep I want—two nights of travel, much

reading in the day between, and much anxiety on the day to follow, and a night

to sit up, without to wink. To-morrow in the morning early you call for me, and

we come together to see our pretty miss, so much more strong for my ‘spell’

which I have work. Ho! ho!”

He seemed so confident that I, remembering my own confidence two nights

before and with the baneful result, felt awe and vague terror. It must have been

my weakness that made me hesitate to tell it to my friend, but I felt it all the more, like unshed tears.

CHAPTER XI

Lucy Westenra’s Diary.

12 September. —How good they all are to me. I quite love that dear Dr. Van

Helsing. I wonder why he was so anxious about these flowers. He positively

frightened me, he was so fierce. And yet he must have been right, for I feel comfort from them already. Somehow, I do not dread being alone to-night, and I

can go to sleep without fear. I shall not mind any flapping outside the window.

Oh, the terrible struggle that I have had against sleep so often of late; the pain of

the sleeplessness, or the pain of the fear of sleep, with such unknown horrors as

it has for me! How blessed are some people, whose lives have no fears, no dreads; to whom sleep is a blessing that comes nightly, and brings nothing but sweet dreams. Well, here I am to-night, hoping for sleep, and lying like Ophelia

in the play, with “virgin crants and maiden strewments.” I never liked garlic before, but to-night it is delightful! There is peace in its smell; I feel sleep coming already. Good-night, everybody.

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

13 September. —Called at the Berkeley and found Van Helsing, as usual, up to

time. The carriage ordered from the hotel was waiting. The Professor took his bag, which he always brings with him now.

Let all be put down exactly. Van Helsing and I arrived at Hillingham at eight

o’clock. It was a lovely morning; the bright sunshine and all the fresh feeling of

early autumn seemed like the completion of nature’s annual work. The leaves

were turning to all kinds of beautiful colours, but had not yet begun to drop from

the trees. When we entered we met Mrs. Westenra coming out of the morning

room. She is always an early riser. She greeted us warmly and said:—

“You will be glad to know that Lucy is better. The dear child is still asleep. I

looked into her room and saw her, but did not go in, lest I should disturb her.”

The Professor smiled, and looked quite jubilant. He rubbed his hands together, and said:—

“Aha! I thought I had diagnosed the case. My treatment is working,” to which

she answered:—

“You must not take all the credit to yourself, doctor. Lucy’s state this morning

is due in part to me.”

“How you do mean, ma’am?” asked the Professor.

“Well, I was anxious about the dear child in the night, and went into her room. She was sleeping soundly—so soundly that even my coming did not wake

her. But the room was awfully stuffy. There were a lot of those horrible, strong-

smelling flowers about everywhere, and she had actually a bunch of them round

her neck. I feared that the heavy odour would be too much for the dear child in

her weak state, so I took them all away and opened a bit of the window to let in a

little fresh air. You will be pleased with her, I am sure.”

She moved off into her boudoir, where she usually breakfasted early. As she

had spoken, I watched the Professor’s face, and saw it turn ashen grey. He had

been able to retain his self-command whilst the poor lady was present, for he knew her state and how mischievous a shock would be; he actually smiled on her

as he held open the door for her to pass into her room. But the instant she had

disappeared he pulled me, suddenly and forcibly, into the dining-room and

closed the door.

Then, for the first time in my life, I saw Van Helsing break down. He raised

his hands over his head in a sort of mute despair, and then beat his palms together in a helpless way; finally he sat down on a chair, and putting his hands

before his face, began to sob, with loud, dry sobs that seemed to come from the

very racking of his heart. Then he raised his arms again, as though appealing to

the whole universe. “God! God! God!” he said. “What have we done, what has

this poor thing done, that we are so sore beset? Is there fate amongst us still, sent

down from the pagan world of old, that such things must be, and in such way?

This poor mother, all unknowing, and all for the best as she think, does such thing as lose her daughter body and soul; and we must not tell her, we must not

even warn her, or she die, and then both die. Oh, how we are beset! How are all

the powers of the devils against us!” Suddenly he jumped to his feet. “Come,” he

said, “come, we must see and act. Devils or no devils, or all the devils at once, it

matters not; we fight him all the same.” He went to the hall-door for his bag; and

together we went up to Lucy’s room.

Once again I drew up the blind, whilst Van Helsing went towards the bed.

This time he did not start as he looked on the poor face with the same awful, waxen pallor as before. He wore a look of stern sadness and infinite pity.

“As I expected,” he murmured, with that hissing inspiration of his which

meant so much. Without a word he went and locked the door, and then began to

set out on the little table the instruments for yet another operation of transfusion

of blood. I had long ago recognised the necessity, and begun to take off my coat,

but he stopped me with a warning hand. “No!” he said. “To-day you must

operate. I shall provide. You are weakened already.” As he spoke he took off his

coat and rolled up his shirt-sleeve.

Again the operation; again the narcotic; again some return of colour to the ashy cheeks, and the regular breathing of healthy sleep. This time I watched whilst Van Helsing recruited himself and rested.

Presently he took an opportunity of telling Mrs. Westenra that she must not remove anything from Lucy’s room without consulting him; that the flowers

were of medicinal value, and that the breathing of their odour was a part of the

system of cure. Then he took over the care of the case himself, saying that he would watch this night and the next and would send me word when to come.

After another hour Lucy waked from her sleep, fresh and bright and

seemingly not much the worse for her terrible ordeal.

What does it all mean? I am beginning to wonder if my long habit of life amongst the insane is beginning to tell upon my own brain.

Lucy Westenra's Diary.

17 September. —Four days and nights of peace. I am getting so strong again

that I hardly know myself. It is as if I had passed through some long nightmare,

and had just awakened to see the beautiful sunshine and feel the fresh air of the

morning around me. I have a dim half-remembrance of long, anxious times of

waiting and fearing; darkness in which there was not even the pain of hope to make present distress more poignant: and then long spells of oblivion, and the rising back to life as a diver coming up through a great press of water. Since, however, Dr. Van Helsing has been with me, all this bad dreaming seems to have

passed away; the noises that used to frighten me out of my wits—the flapping against the windows, the distant voices which seemed so close to me, the harsh

sounds that came from I know not where and commanded me to do I know not

what—have all ceased. I go to bed now without any fear of sleep. I do not even

try to keep awake. I have grown quite fond of the garlic, and a boxful arrives for

me every day from Haarlem. To-night Dr. Van Helsing is going away, as he has

to be for a day in Amsterdam. But I need not be watched; I am well enough to be

left alone. Thank God for mother’s sake, and dear Arthur’s, and for all our friends who have been so kind! I shall not even feel the change, for last night Dr.

Van Helsing slept in his chair a lot of the time. I found him asleep twice when I

awoke; but I did not fear to go to sleep again, although the boughs or bats or something napped almost angrily against the window-panes.

“The Pall Mall Gazette,” 18 September.

THE ESCAPED WOLF.

PERILOUS ADVENTURE OF OUR INTERVIEWER.

Interview with the Keeper in the Zoölogical Gardens.

After many inquiries and almost as many refusals, and perpetually using the

words “Pall Mall Gazette” as a sort of talisman, I managed to find the keeper of

the section of the Zoölogical Gardens in which the wolf department is included.

Thomas Bilder lives in one of the cottages in the enclosure behind the elephant-

house, and was just sitting down to his tea when I found him. Thomas and his wife are hospitable folk, elderly, and without children, and if the specimen I enjoyed of their hospitality be of the average kind, their lives must be pretty comfortable. The keeper would not enter on what he called “business” until the

supper was over, and we were all satisfied. Then when the table was cleared, and

he had lit his pipe, he said:—

“Now, sir, you can go on and arsk me what you want. You’ll excoose me

refoosin’ to talk of perfeshunal subjects afore meals. I gives the wolves and the

jackals and the hyenas in all our section their tea afore I begins to arsk them questions.”

“How do you mean, ask them questions?” I queried, wishful to get him into a

talkative humour.

“ ’Ittin’ of them over the ’ead with a pole is one way; scratchin’ of their hears

is another, when gents as is flush wants a bit of a show-orf to their gals. I don’t

so much mind the fust—the ’ittin’ with a pole afore I chucks in their dinner; but I

waits till they’ve ’ad their sherry and kawffee, so to speak, afore I tries on with

the ear-scratchin’. Mind you,” he added philosophically, “there’s a deal of the same nature in us as in them theer animiles. Here’s you a-comin’ and arskin’ of

me questions about my business, and I that grumpy-like that only for your

bloomin’ ’arf-quid I’d ’a’ seen you blowed fust ’fore I’d answer. Not even when

you arsked me sarcastic-like if I’d like you to arsk the Superintendent if you might arsk me questions. Without offence did I tell yer to go to ’ell?”

“You did.”

“An’ when you said you’d report me for usin’ of obscene language that was

’ittin’ me over the ’ead; but the ’arf-quid made that all right. I weren’t a-goin’ to

fight, so I waited for the food, and did with my ’owl as the wolves, and lions, and tigers does. But, Lor’ love yer ’art,

now that the old ’ooman has stuck a chunk of her tea-cake in me, an’ rinsed me out with her bloomin’ old teapot, and

I’ve lit hup, you may scratch my ears for all you’re worth, and won’t git even a

growl out of me. Drive along with your questions. I know what yer a-comin’ at,

that ’ere escaped wolf.”

“Exactly. I want you to give me your view of it. Just tell me how it happened;

and when I know the facts I’ll get you to say what you consider was the cause of

it, and how you think the whole affair will end.”

“All right, guv’nor. This ’ere is about the ’ole story. That ’ere wolf what we

called Bersicker was one of three grey ones that came from Norway to

Jamrach’s, which we bought off him four years ago. He was a nice well-behaved

wolf, that never gave no trouble to talk of. I’m more surprised at ’im for wantin’

to get out nor any other animile in the place. But, there, you can’t trust wolves no

more nor women.”

“Don’t you mind him, sir!” broke in Mrs. Tom, with a cheery laugh. “ ’E’s got mindin’ the animiles so long that blest if he

ain’t like a old wolf ’isself! But

there ain’t no ’arm in ’im.”

“Well, sir, it was about two hours after feedin’ yesterday when I first hear my

disturbance. I was makin’ up a litter in the monkey-house for a young puma which is ill; but when I heard the yelpin’ and ’owlin’ I kem away straight. There

was Bersicker a-tearin’ like a mad thing at the bars as if he wanted to get out.

There wasn’t much people about that day, and close at hand was only one man, a

tall, thin chap, with a ’ook nose and a pointed beard, with a few white hairs runnin’ through it. He had a ’ard, cold look and red eyes, and I took a sort of mislike to him, for it seemed as if it was ’im as they was hirritated at. He ’ad white kid gloves on ’is ’ands, and he pointed out the animiles to me and says:

‘Keeper, these wolves seem upset at something.’

“ ‘Maybe it’s you,’ says I, for I did not like the airs as he give ’isself. He didn’t git angry, as I ’oped he would, but he smiled a kind of insolent smile, with

a mouth full of white, sharp teeth. ‘Oh no, they wouldn’t like me,’ ’e says.

“ ‘Ow yes, they would,’ says I, a-imitatin’ of him. ‘They always likes a bone

or two to clean their teeth on about tea-time, which you ’as a bagful.’

“Well, it was a odd thing, but when the animiles see us a-talkin’ they lay down, and when I went over to Bersicker he let me stroke his ears same as ever.

That there man kem over, and blessed but if he didn’t put in his hand and stroke

the old wolf’s ears too!

“ ‘Tyke care,’ says I. ‘Bersicker is quick.’

“ ‘Never mind,’ he says. ‘I’m used to ’em!’

“ ‘Are you in the business yourself?’ I says, tyking off my ’at, for a man what

trades in wolves, anceterer, is a good friend to keepers.

“ ‘No’ says he, ‘not exactly in the business, but I ’ave made pets of several.’

And with that he lifts his ’at as perlite as a lord, and walks away. Old Bersicker kep’ a-lookin’ arter ’im till ’e was out of sight, and then went and lay down in a

corner and wouldn’t come hout the ’ole hevening. Well, larst night, so soon as the moon was hup, the wolves here all began a-’owling. There warn’t nothing for

them to ’owl at. There warn’t no one near, except some one that was evidently a-

callin’ a dog somewheres out back of the gardings in the Park road. Once or twice I went out to see that all was right,

and it was, and then the ’owling stopped. Just before twelve o’clock I just took a look round afore turnin’ in, an’,

bust me, but when I kem opposite to old Bersicker’s cage I see the rails broken

and twisted about and the cage empty. And that’s all I know for certing.”

“Did any one else see anything?”

“One of our gard’ners was a-comin’ ’ome about that time from a ’armony,

when he sees a big grey dog comin’ out through the garding ’edges. At least, so

he says, but I don’t give much for it myself, for if he did ’e never said a word

about it to his missis when ’e got ’ome, and it was only after the escape of the

wolf was made known, and we had been up all night-a-huntin’ of the Park for Bersicker, that he remembered seein’ anything. My own belief was that the

’armony ’ad got into his ’ead.”

“Now, Mr. Bilder, can you account in any way for the escape of the wolf?”

“Well, sir,” he said, with a suspicious sort of modesty, “I think I can; but I don’t know as ’ow you’d be satisfied with the theory.”

“Certainly I shall. If a man like you, who knows the animals from experience,

can’t hazard a good guess at any rate, who is even to try?”

“Well then, sir, I accounts for it this way; it seems to me that ’ere wolf escaped—simply because he wanted to get out.”

From the hearty way that both Thomas and his wife laughed at the joke I

could see that it had done service before, and that the whole explanation was simply an elaborate sell. I couldn’t cope in badinage with the worthy Thomas, but I thought I knew a surer way to his heart, so I said:—

“Now, Mr. Bilder, we’ll consider that first half-sovereign worked off, and this

brother of his is waiting to be claimed when you’ve told me what you think will

happen.”

“Right y’are, sir,” he said briskly. “Ye’ll excoose me, I know, for a-chaffin’ of

ye, but the old woman here winked at me, which was as much as telling me to go

on.”

“Well, I never!” said the old lady.

“My opinion is this: that ’ere wolf is a-’idin’ of, somewheres. The gard’ner

wot didn’t remember said he was a-gallopin’ northward faster than a horse could go; but I don’t believe him, for, yer see, sir, wolves don’t gallop no more nor dogs does, they not bein’ built that way. Wolves is fine things in a storybook, and

I dessay when they gets in packs and does be chivyin’ somethin’ that’s more afeared than they is they can make a devil of a noise and chop it up, whatever it

is. But, Lor’ bless you, in real life a wolf is only a low creature, not half so clever or bold as a good dog; and not half a quarter so much fight in ’im. This one ain’t

been used to fightin’ or even to providin’ for hisself, and more like he’s somewhere round the Park a-’idin’ an’ a-shiverin’ of, and, if he thinks at all, wonderin’ where he is to get his breakfast from; or maybe he’s got down some

area and is in a coal-cellar. My eye, won’t some cook get a rum start when she

sees his green eyes a-shining at her out of the dark! If he can’t get food he’s bound to look for it, and mayhap he may chance to light on a butcher’s shop in

time. If he doesn’t, and some nursemaid goes a-walkin’ orf with a soldier, leavin’

of the hinfant in the perambulator—well, then I shouldn’t be surprised if the census is one babby the less. That’s all.”

I was handing him the half-sovereign, when something came bobbing up

against the window, and Mr. Bilder’s face doubled its natural length with

surprise.

“God bless me!” he said. “If there ain’t old Bersicker come back by ’isself!”

He went to the door and opened it; a most unnecessary proceeding it seemed

to me. I have always thought that a wild animal never looks so well as when some obstacle of pronounced durability is between us; a personal experience has

intensified rather than diminished that idea.

After all, however, there is nothing like custom, for neither Bilder nor his wife thought any more of the wolf than I should of a dog. The animal itself was

as peaceful and well-behaved as that father of all picture-wolves—Red Riding

Hood’s quondam friend, whilst moving her confidence in masquerade.

The whole scene was an unutterable mixture of comedy and pathos. The

wicked wolf that for half a day had paralysed London and set all the children in

the town shivering in their shoes, was there in a sort of penitent mood, and was

received and petted like a sort of vulpine prodigal son. Old Bilder examined him

all over with most tender solicitude, and when he had finished with his penitent

said:—

“There, I knew the poor old chap would get into some kind of trouble; didn’t

I say it all along? Here’s his head all cut and full of broken glass. ’E’s been a-

gettin’ over some bloomin’ wall or other. It’s a shyme that people are allowed to

top their walls with broken bottles. This ’ere’s what comes of it. Come along,

Bersicker.”

He took the wolf and locked him up in a cage, with a piece of meat that satisfied, in quantity at any rate, the elementary conditions of the fatted calf, and

went off to report.

I came off, too, to report the only exclusive information that is given to-day

regarding the strange escapade at the Zoo.

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

17 September. —I was engaged after dinner in my study posting up my books,

which, through press of other work and the many visits to Lucy, had fallen sadly

into arrear. Suddenly the door was burst open, and in rushed my patient, with his

face distorted with passion. I was thunderstruck, for such a thing as a patient getting of his own accord into the Superintendent’s study is almost unknown.

Without an instant’s pause he made straight at me. He had a dinner-knife in his

hand, and, as I saw he was dangerous, I tried to keep the table between us. He

was too quick and too strong for me, however; for before I could get my balance

he had struck at me and cut my left wrist rather severely. Before he could strike

again, however, I got in my right and he was sprawling on his back on the floor.

My wrist bled freely, and quite a little pool trickled on to the carpet. I saw that

my friend was not intent on further effort, and occupied myself binding up my wrist, keeping a wary eye on the prostrate figure all the time. When the

attendants rushed in, and we turned our attention to him, his employment

positively sickened me. He was lying on his belly on the floor licking up, like a

dog, the blood which had fallen from my wounded wrist. He was easily secured,

and, to my surprise, went with the attendants quite placidly, simply repeating over and over again: “The blood is the life! The blood is the life!”

I cannot afford to lose blood just at present; I have lost too much of late for

my physical good, and then the prolonged strain of Lucy's illness and its horrible

phases is telling on me. I am over-excited and weary, and I need rest, rest, rest.

Happily Van Helsing has not summoned me, so I need not forego my sleep; to-

night I could not well do without it.

Telegram, Van Helsing, Antwerp, to Seward, Carfax.

(Sent to Carfax, Sussex, as no county given; delivered late by twenty-two hours.)

"*17 September.* —Do not fail to be at Hillingham to-night. If not watching all

the time frequently, visit and see that flowers are as placed; very important; do

not fail. Shall be with you as soon as possible after arrival."

Dr. Seward's Diary.

18 September. —Just off for train to London. The arrival of Van Helsing's telegram filled me with dismay. A whole night lost, and I know by bitter

experience what may happen in a night. Of course it is possible that all may be

well, but what *may* have happened? Surely there is some horrible doom hanging

over us that every possible accident should thwart us in all we try to do. I shall

take this cylinder with me, and then I can complete my entry on Lucy’s

phonograph.

Memorandum left by Lucy Westenra.

17 September. Night. —I write this and leave it to be seen, so that no one may

by any chance get into trouble through me. This is an exact record of what took

place to-night. I feel I am dying of weakness, and have barely strength to write,

but it must be done if I die in the doing.

I went to bed as usual, taking care that the flowers were placed as Dr. Van Helsing directed, and soon fell asleep.

I was waked by the flapping at the window, which had begun after that sleep-

walking on the cliff at Whitby when Mina saved me, and which now I know so

well. I was not afraid, but I did wish that Dr. Seward was in the next room—as

Dr. Van Helsing said he would be—so that I might have called him. I tried to go

to sleep, but could not. Then there came to me the old fear of sleep, and I determined to keep awake. Perversely sleep would try to come then when I did

not want it; so, as I feared to be alone, I opened my door and called out: “Is there

anybody there?” There was no answer. I was afraid to wake mother, and so

closed my door again. Then outside in the shrubbery I heard a sort of howl like a

dog’s, but more fierce and deeper. I went to the window and looked out, but could see nothing, except a big bat, which had evidently been buffeting its wings

against the window. So I went back to bed again, but determined not to go to sleep. Presently the door opened, and mother looked in; seeing by my moving that I was not asleep, came in, and sat by me. She said to me even more sweetly

and softly than her wont:—

“I was uneasy about you, darling, and came in to see that you were all right.”

I feared she might catch cold sitting there, and asked her to come in and sleep

with me, so she came into bed, and lay down beside me; she did not take off her

dressing gown, for she said she would only stay a while and then go back to her

own bed. As she lay there in my arms, and I in hers, the flapping and buffeting

came to the window again. She was startled and a little frightened, and cried out:

“What is that?” I tried to pacify her, and at last succeeded, and she lay quiet; but

I could hear her poor dear heart still beating terribly. After a while there was the low howl again out in the shrubbery, and shortly after there was a crash at the window, and a lot of broken glass was hurled on the floor. The window blind blew back with the wind that rushed in, and in the aperture of the broken panes

there was the head of a great, gaunt grey wolf. Mother cried out in a fright, and

struggled up into a sitting posture, and clutched wildly at anything that would help her. Amongst other things, she clutched the wreath of flowers that Dr. Van

Helsing insisted on my wearing round my neck, and tore it away from me. For a

second or two she sat up, pointing at the wolf, and there was a strange and horrible gurgling in her throat; then she fell over—as if struck with lightning, and her head hit my forehead and made me dizzy for a moment or two. The

room and all round seemed to spin round. I kept my eyes fixed on the window,

but the wolf drew his head back, and a whole myriad of little specks seemed to

come blowing in through the broken window, and wheeling and circling round

like the pillar of dust that travellers describe when there is a simoon in the desert.

I tried to stir, but there was some spell upon me, and dear mother’s poor body,

which seemed to grow cold already—for her dear heart had ceased to beat—

weighed me down; and I remembered no more for a while.

The time did not seem long, but very, very awful, till I recovered

consciousness again. Somewhere near, a passing bell was tolling; the dogs all round the neighbourhood were howling; and in our shrubbery, seemingly just

outside, a nightingale was singing. I was dazed and stupid with pain and terror

and weakness, but the sound of the nightingale seemed like the voice of my dead

mother come back to comfort me. The sounds seemed to have awakened the

maids, too, for I could hear their bare feet pattering outside my door. I called to

them, and they came in, and when they saw what had happened, and what it was

that lay over me on the bed, they screamed out. The wind rushed in through the

broken window, and the door slammed to. They lifted off the body of my dear mother, and laid her, covered up with a

sheet, on the bed after I had got up. They

were all so frightened and nervous that I directed them to go to the dining-room

and have each a glass of wine. The door flew open for an instant and closed again. The maids shrieked, and then went in a body to the dining-room; and I laid what flowers I had on my dear mother’s breast. When they were there I remembered what Dr. Van Helsing had told me, but I didn’t like to remove them,

and, besides, I would have some of the servants to sit up with me now. I was surprised that the maids did not come back. I called them, but got no answer, so I

went to the dining-room to look for them.

My heart sank when I saw what had happened. They all four lay helpless on

the floor, breathing heavily. The decanter of sherry was on the table half full, but there was a queer, acrid smell about. I was suspicious, and examined the

decanter. It smelt of laudanum, and looking on the sideboard, I found that the bottle which mother’s doctor uses for her—oh! did use—was empty. What am I

to do? what am I to do? I am back in the room with mother. I cannot leave her,

and I am alone, save for the sleeping servants, whom some one has drugged.

Alone with the dead! I dare not go out, for I can hear the low howl of the wolf

through the broken window.

The air seems full of specks, floating and circling in the draught from the window, and the lights burn blue and dim. What am I to do? God shield me from

harm this night! I shall hide this paper in my breast, where they shall find it when they come to lay me out. My dear mother gone! It is time that I go too.

Good-bye, dear Arthur, if I should not survive this night. God keep you, dear, and God help me!

CHAPTER XII

DR. SEWARD'S DIARY

18 September. —I drove at once to Hillingham and arrived early. Keeping my

cab at the gate, I went up the avenue alone. I knocked gently and rang as quietly

as possible, for I feared to disturb Lucy or her mother, and hoped to only bring a

servant to the door. After a while, finding no response, I knocked and rang again;

still no answer. I cursed the laziness of the servants that they should lie abed at

such an hour—for it was now ten o'clock—and so rang and knocked again, but

more impatiently, but still without response. Hitherto I had blamed only the servants, but now a terrible fear began to

assail me. Was this desolation but another link in the chain of doom which seemed drawing tight around us? Was it

indeed a house of death to which I had come, too late? I knew that minutes, even

seconds of delay, might mean hours of danger to Lucy, if she had had again one

of those frightful relapses; and I went round the house to try if I could find by

chance an entry anywhere.

I could find no means of ingress. Every window and door was fastened and

locked, and I returned baffled to the porch. As I did so, I heard the rapid pit-pat

of a swiftly driven horse’s feet. They stopped at the gate, and a few seconds later

I met Van Helsing running up the avenue. When he saw me, he gasped out:—

“Then it was you, and just arrived. How is she? Are we too late? Did you not

get my telegram?”

I answered as quickly and coherently as I could that I had only got his

telegram early in the morning, and had not lost a minute in coming here, and that

I could not make any one in the house hear me. He paused and raised his hat as

he said solemnly:—

“Then I fear we are too late. God’s will be done!” With his usual recuperative

energy, he went on: “Come. If there be no way open to get in, we must make one. Time is all in all to us now.”

We went round to the back of the house, where there was a kitchen window.

The Professor took a small surgical saw from his case, and handing it to me, pointed to the iron bars which guarded the window. I attacked them at once and

had very soon cut through three of them. Then with a long, thin knife we pushed

back the fastening of the sashes and opened the window. I helped the Professor

in, and followed him. There was no one in the kitchen or in the servants’ rooms, which were close at hand. We tried all the rooms as we went along, and in the

dining-room, dimly lit by rays of light through the shutters, found four servant-

women lying on the floor. There was no need to think them dead, for their stertorous breathing and the acrid smell of laudanum in the room left no doubt as

to their condition. Van Helsing and I looked at each other, and as we moved away he said: “We can attend to them

later.” Then we ascended to Lucy’s room.

For an instant or two we paused at the door to listen, but there was no sound that

we could hear. With white faces and trembling hands, we opened the door gently,

and entered the room.

How shall I describe what we saw? On the bed lay two women, Lucy and her

mother. The latter lay farthest in, and she was covered with a white sheet, the edge of which had been blown back by the draught through the broken window,

showing the drawn, white face, with a look of terror fixed upon it. By her side

lay Lucy, with face white and still more drawn. The flowers which had been round her neck we found upon her mother’s bosom, and her throat was bare,

showing the two little wounds which we had noticed before, but looking horribly

white and mangled. Without a word the Professor bent over the bed, his head almost touching poor Lucy’s breast; then he gave a quick turn of his head, as of

one who listens, and leaping to his feet, he cried out to me:—

“It is not yet too late! Quick! quick! Bring the brandy!”

I flew downstairs and returned with it, taking care to smell and taste it, lest it,

too, were drugged like the decanter of sherry which I found on the table. The maids were still breathing, but more restlessly, and I fancied that the narcotic was wearing off. I did not stay to make sure, but returned to Van Helsing. He rubbed the brandy, as on another occasion, on her lips and gums and on her wrists and the palms of her hands. He said to me:—

“I can do this, all that can be at the present. You go wake those maids. Flick

them in the face with a wet towel, and flick them hard. Make them get heat and

fire and a warm bath. This poor soul is nearly as cold as that beside her. She will

need be heated before we can do anything more.”

I went at once, and found little difficulty in waking three of the women. The

fourth was only a young girl, and the drug had evidently affected her more strongly, so I lifted her on the sofa and let her sleep. The others were dazed at first, but as remembrance came back to them they cried and sobbed in a

hysterical manner. I was stern with them, however, and would not let them talk. I

told them that one life was bad enough to lose, and that if they delayed they would sacrifice Miss Lucy. So, sobbing and crying, they went about their way,

half clad as they were, and prepared fire and water. Fortunately, the kitchen and boiler fires were still alive, and there was no lack of hot water. We got a bath and

carried Lucy out as she was and placed her in it. Whilst we were busy chafing

her limbs there was a knock at the hall door. One of the maids ran off, hurried on

some more clothes, and opened it. Then she returned and whispered to us that there was a gentleman who had come with a message from Mr. Holmwood. I

bade her simply tell him that he must wait, for we could see no one now. She went away with the message, and, engrossed with our work, I clean forgot all about him.

I never saw in all my experience the Professor work in such deadly earnest. I

knew—as he knew—that it was a stand-up fight with death, and in a pause told

him so. He answered me in a way that I did not understand, but with the sternest

look that his face could wear:—

“If that were all, I would stop here where we are now, and let her fade away

into peace, for I see no light in life over her horizon.” He went on with his work

with, if possible, renewed and more frenzied vigour.

Presently we both began to be conscious that the heat was beginning to be of

some effect. Lucy’s heart beat a trifle more audibly to the stethoscope, and her

lungs had a perceptible movement. Van Helsing’s face almost beamed, and as we

lifted her from the bath and rolled her in a hot sheet to dry her he said to me:—

“The first gain is ours! Check to the King!”

We took Lucy into another room, which had by now been prepared, and laid

her in bed and forced a few drops of brandy down her throat. I noticed that Van

Helsing tied a soft silk handkerchief round her throat. She was still unconscious,

and was quite as bad as, if not worse than, we had ever seen her.

Van Helsing called in one of the women, and told her to stay with her and not

to take her eyes off her till we returned, and then beckoned me out of the room.

“We must consult as to what is to be done,” he said as we descended the

stairs. In the hall he opened the dining-room door, and we passed in, he closing

the door carefully behind him. The shutters had been opened, but the blinds were

already down, with that obedience to the etiquette of death which the British woman of the lower classes always rigidly observes. The room was, therefore, dimly dark. It was, however, light enough for our purposes. Van Helsing’s

sternness was somewhat relieved by a look of perplexity. He was evidently

torturing his mind about something, so I waited for an instant, and he spoke:—

“What are we to do now? Where are we to turn for help? We must have

another transfusion of blood, and that soon, or that poor girl’s life won’t be

worth an hour’s purchase. You are exhausted already; I am exhausted too. I fear to trust those women, even if they would have courage to submit. What are we to

do for some one who will open his veins for her?”

“What’s the matter with me, anyhow?”

The voice came from the sofa across the room, and its tones brought relief and joy to my heart, for they were those of Quincey Morris. Van Helsing started

angrily at the first sound, but his face softened and a glad look came into his eyes as I cried out: “Quincey Morris!” and rushed towards him with outstretched

hands.

“What brought you here?” I cried as our hands met.

“I guess Art is the cause.”

He handed me a telegram:—

“Have not heard from Seward for three days, and am terribly anxious. Cannot

leave. Father still in same condition. Send me word how Lucy is. Do not delay.

—HOLMWOOD.”

“I think I came just in the nick of time. You know you have only to tell me

what to do.”

Van Helsing strode forward, and took his hand, looking him straight in the

eyes as he said:—

“A brave man’s blood is the best thing on this earth when a woman is in

trouble. You’re a man and no mistake. Well, the devil may work against us for

all he’s worth, but God sends us men when we want them.”

Once again we went through that ghastly operation. I have not the heart to go

through with the details. Lucy had got a terrible shock and it told on her more than before, for though plenty of blood went into her veins, her body did not respond to the treatment as well as on the other occasions. Her struggle back into

life was something frightful to see and hear. However, the action of both heart and lungs improved, and Van Helsing made a subcutaneous injection of morphia,

as before, and with good effect. Her faint became a profound slumber. The

Professor watched whilst I went downstairs with Quincey Morris, and sent one

of the maids to pay off one of the cabmen who were waiting. I left Quincey lying

down after having a glass of wine, and told the cook to get ready a good breakfast. Then a thought struck me, and I went back to the room where Lucy now was. When I came softly in, I found Van Helsing with a sheet or two of note-paper in his hand. He had evidently read it, and was thinking it over as he

sat with his hand to his brow. There was a look of grim satisfaction in his face, as

of one who has had a doubt solved. He handed me the paper saying only: “It

dropped from Lucy’s breast when we carried her to the bath.”

When I had read it, I stood looking at the Professor, and after a pause asked

him: “In God’s name, what does it all mean? Was she, or is she, mad; or what sort of horrible danger is it?” I was so bewildered that I did not know what to say

more. Van Helsing put out his hand and took the paper, saying:—

“Do not trouble about it now. Forget it for the present. You shall know and understand it all in good time; but it will be later. And now what is it that you came to me to say?” This brought me back to fact, and I was all myself again.

“I came to speak about the certificate of death. If we do not act properly and

wisely, there may be an inquest, and that paper would have to be produced. I am

in hopes that we need have no inquest, for if we had it would surely kill poor Lucy, if nothing else did. I know, and you know, and the other doctor who attended her knows, that Mrs. Westenra had disease of the heart, and we can certify that she died of it. Let us fill up the certificate at once, and I shall take it myself to the registrar and go on to the undertaker.”

“Good, oh my friend John! Well thought of! Truly Miss Lucy, if she be sad in

the foes that beset her, is at least happy in the friends that love her. One, two, three, all open their veins for her, besides one old man. Ah yes, I know, friend John; I am not blind! I love you all the more for it! Now go.”

In the hall I met Quincey Morris, with a telegram for Arthur telling him that Mrs. Westenra was dead; that Lucy also had been ill, but was now going on better; and that Van Helsing and I were with her. I told him where I was going,

and he hurried me out, but as I was going said:—

“When you come back, Jack, may I have two words with you all to

ourselves?” I nodded in reply and went out. I found no difficulty about the registration, and arranged with the local undertaker to come up in the evening to

measure for the coffin and to make arrangements.

When I got back Quincey was waiting for me. I told him I would see him as

soon as I knew about Lucy, and went up to her room. She was still sleeping, and

the Professor seemingly had not moved from his seat at her side. From his

putting his finger to his lips, I gathered that he expected her to wake before long

and was afraid of forestalling nature. So I went down to Quincey and took him

into the breakfast-room, where the blinds were not drawn down, and which was

a little more cheerful, or rather less cheerless, than the other rooms. When we were alone, he said to me:—

“Jack Seward, I don’t want to shove myself in anywhere where I’ve no right

to be; but this is no ordinary case. You know I loved that girl and wanted to marry her; but, although that’s all past and gone, I can’t help feeling anxious about her all the same. What is it that’s wrong with her? The Dutchman—and a

fine old fellow he is; I can see that—said, that time you two came into the room,

that you must have *another* transfusion of blood, and that both you and he were

exhausted. Now I know well that you medical men speak *in camera*, and that a

man must not expect to know what they consult about in private. But this is no

common matter, and, whatever it is, I have done my part. Is not that so?”

“That’s so,” I said, and he went on:—

“I take it that both you and Van Helsing had done already what I did to-day.

Is not that so?”

“That’s so.”

“And I guess Art was in it too. When I saw him four days ago down at his own place he looked queer. I have not seen anything pulled down so quick since

I was on the Pampas and had a mare that I was fond of go to grass all in a night.

One of those big bats that they call vampires had got at her in the night, and what

with his gorge and the vein left open, there wasn’t enough blood in her to let her

stand up, and I had to put a bullet through her as she lay. Jack, if you may tell me

without betraying confidence, Arthur was the first, is not that so?” As he spoke

the poor fellow looked terribly anxious. He was in a torture of suspense

regarding the woman he loved, and his utter ignorance of the terrible mystery which seemed to surround her intensified his pain. His very heart was bleeding,

and it took all the manhood of him—and there was a royal lot of it, too—to keep

him from breaking down. I paused before answering, for I felt that I must not betray anything which the Professor wished kept secret; but already he knew so

much, and guessed so much, that there could be no reason for not answering, so I

answered in the same phrase: “That’s so.”

“And how long has this been going on?”

“About ten days.”

“Ten days! Then I guess, Jack Seward, that that poor pretty creature that we

all love has had put into her veins within that time the blood of four strong men.

Man alive, her whole body wouldn’t hold it.” Then, coming close to me, he

spoke in a fierce half-whisper: “What took it out?”

I shook my head. “That,” I said, “is the crux. Van Helsing is simply frantic about it, and I am at my wits’ end. I can’t even hazard a guess. There has been a

series of little circumstances which have thrown out all our calculations as to Lucy being properly watched. But these shall not occur again. Here we stay until

all be well—or ill.” Quincey held out his hand. “Count me in,” he said. “You and

the Dutchman will tell me what to do, and I’ll do it.”

When she woke late in the afternoon, Lucy’s first movement was to feel in

her breast, and, to my surprise, produced the paper which Van Helsing had given

me to read. The careful Professor had replaced it where it had come from, lest on

waking she should be alarmed. Her eye then lit on Van Helsing and on me too,

and gladdened. Then she looked around the room, and seeing where she was,

shuddered; she gave a loud cry, and put her poor thin hands before her pale face.

We both understood what that meant—that she had realised to the full her

mother’s death; so we tried what we could to comfort her. Doubtless sympathy

eased her somewhat, but she was very low in thought and spirit, and wept

silently and weakly for a long time. We told her that either or both of us would

now remain with her all the time, and that seemed to comfort her. Towards dusk

she fell into a doze. Here a very odd thing occurred. Whilst still asleep she took

the paper from her breast and tore it in two. Van Helsing stepped over and took

the pieces from her. All the same, however, she went on with the action of tearing, as though the material were still in her hands; finally she lifted her hands

and opened them as though scattering the fragments. Van Helsing seemed

surprised, and his brows gathered as if in thought, but he said nothing.

19 September. —All last night she slept fitfully, being always afraid to sleep, and something weaker when she woke from it. The Professor and I took it in turns to watch, and we never left her for a moment unattended. Quincey Morris

said nothing about his intention, but I knew that all night long he patrolled round

and round the house.

When the day came, its searching light showed the ravages in poor Lucy’s

strength. She was hardly able to turn her head, and the little nourishment which

she could take seemed to do her no good. At times she slept, and both Van Helsing and I noticed the difference in her, between sleeping and waking. Whilst

asleep she looked stronger, although more haggard, and her breathing was softer;

her open mouth showed the pale gums drawn back from the teeth, which thus

looked positively longer and sharper than usual; when she woke the softness of

her eyes evidently changed the expression, for she looked her own self, although

a dying one. In the afternoon she asked for Arthur, and we telegraphed for him.

Quincey went off to meet him at the station.

When he arrived it was nearly six o’clock, and the sun was setting full and warm, and the red light streamed in through the window and gave more colour to

the pale cheeks. When he saw her, Arthur was simply choking with emotion, and

none of us could speak. In the hours that had passed, the fits of sleep, or the comatose condition that passed for it, had grown more frequent, so that the pauses when conversation was possible were shortened. Arthur’s presence,

however, seemed to act as a stimulant; she rallied a little, and spoke to him more

brightly than she had done since we arrived. He too pulled himself together, and

spoke as cheerily as he could, so that the best was made of everything.

It was now nearly one o’clock, and he and Van Helsing are sitting with her. I

am to relieve them in a quarter of an hour, and I am entering this on Lucy’s phonograph. Until six o’clock they are to try to rest. I fear that to-morrow will

end our watching, for the shock has been too great; the poor child cannot rally.

God help us all.

Letter, Mina Harker to Lucy Westenra.

(Unopened by her.)

“*17 September.*

“My dearest Lucy,—

“It seems *an age* since I heard from you, or indeed since I wrote. You will pardon me, I know, for all my faults when you have read all my budget of news.

Well, I got my husband back all right; when we arrived at Exeter there was a carriage waiting for us, and in it, though he had an attack of gout, Mr. Hawkins.

He took us to his house, where there were rooms for us all nice and comfortable, and we dined together. After dinner Mr. Hawkins said:—

“ ‘My dears, I want to drink your health and prosperity; and may every

blessing attend you both. I know you both from children, and have, with love and pride, seen you grow up. Now I want you to make your home here with me.

I have left to me neither chick nor child; all are gone, and in my will I have left

you everything.’ I cried, Lucy dear, as Jonathan and the old man clasped hands.

Our evening was a very, very happy one.

“So here we are, installed in this beautiful old house, and from both my

bedroom and the drawing-room I can see the great elms of the cathedral close,

with their great black stems standing out against the old yellow stone of the cathedral and I can hear the rooks overhead cawing and cawing and chattering and gossiping all day, after the manner of rooks—and humans. I am busy, I need

not tell you, arranging things and housekeeping. Jonathan and Mr. Hawkins are

busy all day; for, now that Jonathan is a partner, Mr. Hawkins wants to tell him

all about the clients.

“How is your dear mother getting on? I wish I could run up to town for a day

or two to see you, dear, but I dare not go yet, with so much on my shoulders; and

Jonathan wants looking after still. He is beginning to put some flesh on his bones

again, but he was terribly weakened by the long illness; even now he sometimes

starts out of his sleep in a sudden way and awakes all trembling until I can coax

him back to his usual placidity. However, thank God, these occasions grow less

frequent as the days go on, and they will in time pass away altogether, I trust.

And now I have told you my news, let me ask yours. When are you to be

married, and where, and who is to perform the ceremony, and what are you to wear, and is it to be a public or a private wedding? Tell me all about it, dear; tell

me all about everything, for there is nothing which interests you which will not

be dear to me. Jonathan asks me to send his ‘respectful duty,’ but I do not think

that is good enough from the junior partner of the important firm Hawkins & Harker; and so, as you love me, and he loves me, and I love you with all the moods and tenses of the verb, I send you simply his ‘love’ instead. Good-bye, my dearest Lucy, and all blessings on you.

“Yours,

“MINA HARKER.”

Report from Patrick Hennessey, M. D., M. R. C. S. L. K. Q. C. P. I., etc., etc., to John Seward, M. D.

“*20 September.*

“My dear Sir,—

“In accordance with your wishes, I enclose report of the conditions of

everything left in my charge.... With regard to patient, Renfield, there is more to

say. He has had another outbreak, which might have had a dreadful ending, but

which, as it fortunately happened, was unattended with any unhappy results.

This afternoon a carrier’s cart with two men made a call at the empty house whose grounds abut on ours—the house to which, you will remember, the patient

twice ran away. The men stopped at our gate to ask the porter their way, as they

were strangers. I was myself looking out of the study window, having a smoke

after dinner, and saw one of them come up to the house. As he passed the window of Renfield’s room, the patient began to rate him from within, and

called him all the foul names he could lay his tongue to. The man, who seemed a

decent fellow enough, contented himself by telling him to “shut up for a foul-mouthed beggar,” whereon our man

accused him of robbing him and wanting to

murder him and said that he would hinder him if he were to swing for it. I opened the window and signed to the man not to notice, so he contented himself

after looking the place over and making up his mind as to what kind of a place

he had got to by saying: ‘Lor’ bless yer, sir, I wouldn’t mind what was said to me

in a bloomin’ madhouse. I pity ye and the guv’nor for havin’ to live in the house

with a wild beast like that.’ Then he asked his way civilly enough, and I told him

where the gate of the empty house was; he went away, followed by threats and

curses and revilings from our man. I went down to see if I could make out any

cause for his anger, since he is usually such a well-behaved man, and except his

violent fits nothing of the kind had ever occurred. I found him, to my

astonishment, quite composed and most genial in his manner. I tried to get him

to talk of the incident, but he blandly asked me questions as to what I meant, and

led me to believe that he was completely oblivious of the affair. It was, I am sorry to say, however, only another

instance of his cunning, for within half an hour I heard of him again. This time he had broken out through the window of

his room, and was running down the avenue. I called to the attendants to follow

me, and ran after him, for I feared he was intent on some mischief. My fear was

justified when I saw the same cart which had passed before coming down the road, having on it some great wooden boxes. The men were wiping their

foreheads, and were flushed in the face, as if with violent exercise. Before I could get up to him the patient rushed at them, and pulling one of them off the

cart, began to knock his head against the ground. If I had not seized him just at

the moment I believe he would have killed the man there and then. The other fellow jumped down and struck him over the head with the butt-end of his heavy

whip. It was a terrible blow; but he did not seem to mind it, but seized him also, and struggled with the three of us, pulling us to and fro as if we were kittens.

You know I am no light weight, and the others were both burly men. At first he

was silent in his fighting; but as we began to master him, and the attendants were

putting a strait-waistcoat on him, he began to shout: ‘I’ll frustrate them! They shan’t rob me! they shan’t murder me

by inches! I'll fight for my Lord and Master!' and all sorts of similar incoherent ravings. It was with very considerable

difficulty that they got him back to the house and put him in the padded room.

One of the attendants, Hardy, had a finger broken. However, I set it all right; and

he is going on well.

"The two carriers were at first loud in their threats of actions for damages, and promised to rain all the penalties of the law on us. Their threats were, however, mingled with some sort of indirect apology for the defeat of the two of

them by a feeble madman. They said that if it had not been for the way their strength had been spent in carrying and raising the heavy boxes to the cart they

would have made short work of him. They gave as another reason for their

defeat the extraordinary state of drouth to which they had been reduced by the dusty nature of their occupation and the reprehensible distance from the scene of

their labours of any place of public entertainment. I quite understood their drift,

and after a stiff glass of grog, or rather more of the same, and with each a sovereign in hand, they made light of the attack, and swore that they would encounter a worse madman any day for the pleasure of meeting so 'bloomin'

good a bloke' as your correspondent. I took their names and addresses, in case they might be needed. They are as

follows:—Jack Smollet, of Dudding’s Rents,

King George’s Road, Great Walworth, and Thomas Snelling, Peter Farley’s Row,

Guide Court, Bethnal Green. They are both in the employment of Harris & Sons,

Moving and Shipment Company, Orange Master’s Yard, Soho.

“I shall report to you any matter of interest occurring here, and shall wire you

at once if there is anything of importance.

“Believe me, dear Sir,

“Yours faithfully,

“PATRICK HENNESSEY.”

Letter, Mina Harker to Lucy Westenra.

(Unopened by her.)

“*18 September.*

“My dearest Lucy,—

“Such a sad blow has befallen us. Mr. Hawkins has died very suddenly. Some

may not think it so sad for us, but we had both come to so love him that it really seems as though we had lost a father. I never knew either father or mother, so that the dear old man’s death is a real blow to me. Jonathan is greatly distressed.

It is not only that he feels sorrow, deep sorrow, for the dear, good man who has

befriended him all his life, and now at the end has treated him like his own son

and left him a fortune which to people of our modest bringing up is wealth beyond the dream of avarice, but Jonathan feels it on another account. He says

the amount of responsibility which it puts upon him makes him nervous. He

begins to doubt himself. I try to cheer him up, and *my* belief in *him* helps him to have a belief in himself. But it is here that the grave shock that he experienced

tells upon him the most. Oh, it is too hard that a sweet, simple, noble, strong nature such as his—a nature which enabled him by our dear, good friend’s aid to

rise from clerk to master in a few years—should be so injured that the very essence of its strength is gone. Forgive me, dear, if I worry you with my troubles

in the midst of your own happiness; but, Lucy dear, I must tell some one, for the

strain of keeping up a brave and cheerful appearance to Jonathan tries me, and I

have no one here that I can confide in. I dread coming up to London, as we must

do the day after to-morrow; for poor Mr. Hawkins left in his will that he was to

be buried in the grave with his father. As there are no relations at all, Jonathan

will have to be chief mourner. I shall try to run over to see you, dearest, if only

for a few minutes. Forgive me for troubling you. With all blessings,

“Your loving

“MINA HARKER.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

20 September. —Only resolution and habit can let me make an entry to-night.

I am too miserable, too low-spirited, too sick of the world and all in it, including

life itself, that I would not care if I heard this moment the flapping of the wings

of the angel of death. And he has been flapping those grim wings to some

purpose of late—Lucy’s mother and Arthur’s father, and now.... Let me get on with my work.

I duly relieved Van Helsing in his watch over Lucy. We wanted Arthur to go

to rest also, but he refused at first. It was only when I told him that we should

want him to help us during the day, and that we must not all break down for want

of rest, lest Lucy should suffer, that he agreed to go. Van Helsing was very kind

to him. “Come, my child,” he said; “come with me. You are sick and weak, and

have had much sorrow and much mental pain, as well as that tax on your

strength that we know of. You must not be alone; for to be alone is to be full of

fears and alarms. Come to the drawing-room, where there is a big fire, and there are two sofas. You shall lie on one, and I on the other, and our sympathy will be

comfort to each other, even though we do not speak, and even if we sleep.”

Arthur went off with him, casting back a longing look on Lucy’s face, which lay

in her pillow, almost whiter than the lawn. She lay quite still, and I looked round

the room to see that all was as it should be. I could see that the Professor had carried out in this room, as in the other, his purpose of using the garlic; the whole

of the window-sashes reeked with it, and round Lucy’s neck, over the silk

handkerchief which Van Helsing made her keep on, was a rough chaplet of the

same odorous flowers. Lucy was breathing somewhat stertorously, and her face

was at its worst, for the open mouth showed the pale gums. Her teeth, in the dim,

uncertain light, seemed longer and sharper than they had been in the morning. In

particular, by some trick of the light, the canine teeth looked longer and sharper

than the rest. I sat down by her, and presently she moved uneasily. At the same

moment there came a sort of dull flapping or buffeting at the window. I went over to it softly, and peeped out by the corner of the blind. There was a full moonlight, and I could see that the noise was made by a great bat, which

wheeled round—doubtless attracted by the light, although so dim—and every

now and again struck the window with its wings. When I came back to my seat, I

found that Lucy had moved slightly, and had torn away the garlic flowers from

her throat. I replaced them as well as I could, and sat watching her.

Presently she woke, and I gave her food, as Van Helsing had prescribed. She

took but a little, and that languidly. There did not seem to be with her now the

unconscious struggle for life and strength that had hitherto so marked her illness.

It struck me as curious that the moment she became conscious she pressed the garlic flowers close to her. It was certainly odd that whenever she got into that

lethargic state, with the stertorous breathing, she put the flowers from her; but that when she waked she clutched them close. There was no possibility of

making any mistake about this, for in the long hours that followed, she had many

spells of sleeping and waking and repeated both actions many times.

At six o’clock Van Helsing came to relieve me. Arthur had then fallen into a

doze, and he mercifully let him sleep on. When he saw Lucy’s face I could hear

the sissing indraw of his breath, and he said to me in a sharp whisper: “Draw up

the blind; I want light!” Then he bent down, and, with his face almost touching

Lucy’s, examined her carefully. He removed the flowers and lifted the silk

handkerchief from her throat. As he did so he started back, and I could hear his

ejaculation, “Mein Gott!” as it was smothered in his throat. I bent over and looked, too, and as I noticed some queer chill came over me.

The wounds on the throat had absolutely disappeared.

For fully five minutes Van Helsing stood looking at her, with his face at its sternest. Then he turned to me and said calmly:—

“She is dying. It will not be long now. It will be much difference, mark me,

whether she dies conscious or in her sleep. Wake that poor boy, and let him come

and see the last; he trusts us, and we have promised him.”

I went to the dining-room and waked him. He was dazed for a moment, but

when he saw the sunlight streaming in through the edges of the shutters he thought he was late, and expressed his fear. I assured him that Lucy was still asleep, but told him as gently as I could that both Van Helsing and I feared that

the end was near. He covered his face with his hands, and slid down on his knees

by the sofa, where he remained, perhaps a minute, with his head buried, praying,

whilst his shoulders shook with grief. I took him by the hand and raised him up.

“Come,” I said, “my dear old fellow, summon all your fortitude: it will be best

and easiest for her.”

When we came into Lucy’s room I could see that Van Helsing had, with his

usual forethought, been putting matters straight and making everything look as pleasing as possible. He had even brushed Lucy’s hair, so that it lay on the pillow in its usual sunny ripples. When we came into the room she opened her

eyes, and seeing him, whispered softly:—

“Arthur! Oh, my love, I am so glad you have come!” He was stooping to kiss

her, when Van Helsing motioned him back. “No,” he whispered, “not yet! Hold

her hand; it will comfort her more.”

So Arthur took her hand and knelt beside her, and she looked her best, with

all the soft lines matching the angelic beauty of her eyes. Then gradually her eyes closed, and she sank to sleep. For a little bit her breast heaved softly, and

her breath came and went like a tired child’s.

And then insensibly there came the strange change which I had noticed in the

night. Her breathing grew stertorous, the mouth opened, and the pale gums,

drawn back, made the teeth look longer and sharper than ever. In a sort of sleep-

waking, vague, unconscious way she opened her eyes, which were now dull and

hard at once, and said in a soft, voluptuous voice, such as I had never heard from

her lips:—

“Arthur! Oh, my love, I am so glad you have come! Kiss me!” Arthur bent

eagerly over to kiss her; but at that instant Van Helsing, who, like me, had been

startled by her voice, swooped upon him, and catching him by the neck with both hands, dragged him back with a fury of strength which I never thought he

could have possessed, and actually hurled him almost across the room.

“Not for your life!” he said; “not for your living soul and hers!” And he stood

between them like a lion at bay.

Arthur was so taken aback that he did not for a moment know what to do or

say; and before any impulse of violence could seize him he realised the place and the occasion, and stood silent, waiting.

I kept my eyes fixed on Lucy, as did Van Helsing, and we saw a spasm as of

rage flit like a shadow over her face; the sharp teeth champed together. Then her

eyes closed, and she breathed heavily.

Very shortly after she opened her eyes in all their softness, and putting out her

poor, pale, thin hand, took Van Helsing’s great brown one; drawing it to her, she

kissed it. “My true friend,” she said, in a faint voice, but with untellable pathos,

“My true friend, and his! Oh, guard him, and give me peace!”

“I swear it!” he said solemnly, kneeling beside her and holding up his hand,

as one who registers an oath. Then he turned to Arthur, and said to him: “Come,

my child, take her hand in yours, and kiss her on the forehead, and only once.”

Their eyes met instead of their lips; and so they parted.

Lucy’s eyes closed; and Van Helsing, who had been watching closely, took

Arthur’s arm, and drew him away.

And then Lucy’s breathing became stertorous again, and all at once it ceased.

“It is all over,” said Van Helsing. “She is dead!”

I took Arthur by the arm, and led him away to the drawing-room, where he

sat down, and covered his face with his hands, sobbing in a way that nearly broke me down to see.

I went back to the room, and found Van Helsing looking at poor Lucy, and his

face was sterner than ever. Some change had come over her body. Death had

given back part of her beauty, for her brow and cheeks had recovered some of their flowing lines; even the lips had lost their deadly pallor. It was as if the blood, no longer needed for the working of the heart, had gone to make the harshness of death as little rude as might be.

“We thought her dying whilst she slept,

And sleeping when she died.”

I stood beside Van Helsing, and said:—

“Ah, well, poor girl, there is peace for her at last. It is the end!”

He turned to me, and said with grave solemnity:—

“Not so; alas! not so. It is only the beginning!”

When I asked him what he meant, he only shook his head and answered:—

“We can do nothing as yet. Wait and see.”

CHAPTER XIII

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY— *continued*.

THE funeral was arranged for the next succeeding day, so that Lucy and her mother might be buried together. I attended to all the ghastly formalities, and the

urbane undertaker proved that his staff were afflicted—or blessed—with

something of his own obsequious suavity. Even the woman who performed the

last offices for the dead remarked to me, in a confidential, brother-professional

way, when she had come out from the death-chamber:—

“She makes a very beautiful corpse, sir. It’s quite a privilege to attend on her.

It’s not too much to say that she will do credit to our establishment!”

I noticed that Van Helsing never kept far away. This was possible from the disordered state of things in the household. There were no relatives at hand; and

as Arthur had to be back the next day to attend at his father’s funeral, we were

unable to notify any one who should have been bidden. Under the circumstances,

Van Helsing and I took it upon ourselves to examine papers, etc. He insisted upon looking over Lucy’s papers himself. I asked him why, for I feared that he,

being a foreigner, might not be quite aware of English legal requirements, and so

might in ignorance make some unnecessary trouble. He answered me:—

“I know; I know. You forget that I am a lawyer as well as a doctor. But this is

not altogether for the law. You knew that, when you avoided the coroner. I have

more than him to avoid. There may be papers more—such as this.”

As he spoke he took from his pocket-book the memorandum which had been

in Lucy’s breast, and which she had torn in her sleep.

“When you find anything of the solicitor who is for the late Mrs. Westenra,

seal all her papers, and write him to-night. For me, I watch here in the room and

in Miss Lucy’s old room all night, and I myself search for what may be. It is not

well that her very thoughts go into the hands of strangers.”

I went on with my part of the work, and in another half hour had found the

name and address of Mrs. Westenra’s solicitor and had written to him. All the poor lady’s papers were in order; explicit directions regarding the place of burial

were given. I had hardly sealed the letter, when, to my surprise, Van Helsing walked into the room, saying:—

“Can I help you, friend John? I am free, and if I may, my service is to you.”

“Have you got what you looked for?” I asked, to which he replied:—

“I did not look for any specific thing. I only hoped to find, and find I have, all

that there was—only some letters and a few memoranda, and a diary new begun.

But I have them here, and we shall for the present say nothing of them. I shall

see that poor lad to-morrow evening, and, with his sanction, I shall use some.”

When we had finished the work in hand, he said to me:—

“And now, friend John, I think we may to bed. We want sleep, both you and

I, and rest to recuperate. To-morrow we shall have much to do, but for the to-night there is no need of us. Alas!”

Before turning in we went to look at poor Lucy. The undertaker had certainly

done his work well, for the room was turned into a small *chapelle ardente*. There was a wilderness of beautiful white flowers, and death was made as little

repulsive as might be. The end of the winding-sheet was laid over the face; when

the Professor bent over and turned it gently back, we both started at the beauty

before us, the tall wax candles showing a sufficient light to note it well. All Lucy’s loveliness had come back to her in

death, and the hours that had passed,

instead of leaving traces of “decay’s effacing fingers,” had but restored the beauty of life, till positively I could not believe my eyes that I was looking at a

corpse.

The Professor looked sternly grave. He had not loved her as I had, and there

was no need for tears in his eyes. He said to me: “Remain till I return,” and left

the room. He came back with a handful of wild garlic from the box waiting in the hall, but which had not been opened, and placed the flowers amongst the others on and around the bed. Then he took from his neck, inside his collar, a little gold crucifix, and placed it over the mouth. He restored the sheet to its place, and we came away.

I was undressing in my own room, when, with a premonitory tap at the door,

he entered, and at once began to speak:—

“To-morrow I want you to bring me, before night, a set of post-mortem

knives.”

“Must we make an autopsy?” I asked.

“Yes and no. I want to operate, but not as you think. Let me tell you now, but

not a word to another. I want to cut off her head and take out her heart. Ah! you a

surgeon, and so shocked! You, whom I have seen with no tremble of hand or heart, do operations of life and death that make the rest shudder. Oh, but I must

not forget, my dear friend John, that you loved her; and I have not forgotten it,

for it is I that shall operate, and you must only help. I would like to do it to-

night, but for Arthur I must not; he will be free after his father's funeral to-morrow, and he will want to see her—to see *it*. Then, when she is coffined ready for the next day, you and I shall come when all sleep. We shall unscrew the coffin-lid, and shall do our operation: and then replace all, so that none know, save we alone."

"But why do it at all? The girl is dead. Why mutilate her poor body without

need? And if there is no necessity for a post-mortem and nothing to gain by it—

no good to her, to us, to science, to human knowledge—why do it? Without such

it is monstrous."

For answer he put his hand on my shoulder, and said, with infinite tenderness:

—

"Friend John, I pity your poor bleeding heart; and I love you the more

because it does so bleed. If I could, I would take on myself the burden that you

do bear. But there are things that you know not, but that you shall know, and bless me for knowing, though they are not pleasant things. John, my child, you

have been my friend now many years, and yet did you ever know me to do any

without good cause? I may err—I am but man; but I believe in all I do. Was it

not for these causes that you send for me when the great trouble came? Yes!

Were you not amazed, nay horrified, when I would not let Arthur kiss his love—

though she was dying—and snatched him away by all my strength? Yes! And yet

you saw how she thanked me, with her so beautiful dying eyes, her voice, too, so

weak, and she kiss my rough old hand and bless me? Yes! And did you not hear

me swear promise to her, that so she closed her eyes grateful? Yes!

“Well, I have good reason now for all I want to do. You have for many years

trust me; you have believe me weeks past, when there be things so strange that

you might have well doubt. Believe me yet a little, friend John. If you trust me

not, then I must tell what I think; and that is not perhaps well. And if I work—as

work I shall, no matter trust or no trust—without my friend trust in me, I work

with heavy heart and feel, oh! so lonely when I want all help and courage that may be!" He paused a moment and went on solemnly: "Friend John, there are

strange and terrible days before us. Let us not be two, but one, that so we work

to a good end. Will you not have faith in me?"

I took his hand, and promised him. I held my door open as he went away, and

watched him go into his room and close the door. As I stood without moving, I

saw one of the maids pass silently along the passage—she had her back towards

me, so did not see me—and go into the room where Lucy lay. The sight touched

me. Devotion is so rare, and we are so grateful to those who show it unasked to

those we love. Here was a poor girl putting aside the terrors which she naturally

had of death to go watch alone by the bier of the mistress whom she loved, so that the poor clay might not be lonely

till laid to eternal rest....

I must have slept long and soundly, for it was broad daylight when Van

Helsing waked me by coming into my room. He came over to my bedside and

said:—

“You need not trouble about the knives; we shall not do it.”

“Why not?” I asked. For his solemnity of the night before had greatly

impressed me.

“Because,” he said sternly, “it is too late—or too early. See!” Here he held up

the little golden crucifix. “This was stolen in the night.”

“How, stolen,” I asked in wonder, “since you have it now?”

“Because I get it back from the worthless wretch who stole it, from the

woman who robbed the dead and the living. Her punishment will surely come,

but not through me; she knew not altogether what she did and thus unknowing,

she only stole. Now we must wait.”

He went away on the word, leaving me with a new mystery to think of, a new

puzzle to grapple with.

The forenoon was a dreary time, but at noon the solicitor came: Mr.

Marquand, of Wholeman, Sons, Marquand & Lidderdale. He was very genial

and very appreciative of what we had done, and took off our hands all cares as to

details. During lunch he told us that Mrs. Westenra had for some time expected

sudden death from her heart, and had put her affairs in absolute order; he informed us that, with the exception of a certain entailed property of Lucy’s father’s which now, in default of direct issue, went back to a distant branch of the family, the whole estate, real and personal, was left absolutely to Arthur Holmwood. When he had told us so much he went on:—

“Frankly we did our best to prevent such a testamentary disposition, and

pointed out certain contingencies that might leave her daughter either penniless

or not so free as she should be to act regarding a matrimonial alliance. Indeed,

we pressed the matter so far that we almost came into collision, for she asked us

if we were or were not prepared to carry out her wishes. Of course, we had then

no alternative but to accept. We were right in principle, and ninety-nine times out

of a hundred we should have proved, by the logic of events, the accuracy of our

judgment. Frankly, however, I must admit that in this case any other form of disposition would have rendered impossible the carrying out of her wishes. For

by her predeceasing her daughter the latter would have come into possession of

the property, and, even had she only survived her mother by five minutes, her property would, in case there were no will —and a will was a practical

impossibility in such a case—have been treated at her decease as under intestacy.

In which case Lord Godalming, though so dear a friend, would have had no

claim in the world; and the inheritors, being remote, would not be likely to abandon their just rights, for sentimental reasons regarding an entire stranger. I

assure you, my dear sirs, I am rejoiced at the result, perfectly rejoiced."

He was a good fellow, but his rejoicing at the one little part— in which he was

officially interested—of so great a tragedy, was an object-lesson in the

limitations of sympathetic understanding.

He did not remain long, but said he would look in later in the day and see Lord Godalming. His coming, however, had been a certain comfort to us, since it

assured us that we should not have to dread hostile criticism as to any of our acts. Arthur was expected at five o'clock, so a little before that time we visited

the death-chamber. It was so in very truth, for now both mother and daughter lay

in it. The undertaker, true to his craft, had made the best display he could of his

goods, and there was a mortuary air about the place that lowered our spirits at once. Van Helsing ordered the former arrangement to be adhered to, explaining

that, as Lord Godalming was coming very soon, it would be less harrowing to his feelings to see all that was left of his *fiancée* quite alone. The undertaker seemed shocked at his own stupidity and exerted himself to restore things to the

condition in which we left them the night before, so that when Arthur came such

shocks to his feelings as we could avoid were saved.

Poor fellow! He looked desperately sad and broken; even his stalwart

manhood seemed to have shrunk somewhat under the strain of his much-tried

emotions. He had, I knew, been very genuinely and devotedly attached to his father; and to lose him, and at such a time, was a bitter blow to him. With me he

was warm as ever, and to Van Helsing he was sweetly courteous; but I could not

help seeing that there was some constraint with him. The Professor noticed it, too, and motioned me to bring him upstairs. I did so, and left him at the door of

the room, as I felt he would like to be quite alone with her, but he took my arm

and led me in, saying huskily:—

“You loved her too, old fellow; she told me all about it, and there was no friend had a closer place in her heart than you. I don’t know how to thank you

for all you have done for her. I can’t think yet....”

Here he suddenly broke down, and threw his arms round my shoulders and

laid his head on my breast, crying:—

“Oh, Jack! Jack! What shall I do! The whole of life seems gone from me all

at once, and there is nothing in the wide world for me to live for.”

I comforted him as well as I could. In such cases men do not need much

expression. A grip of the hand, the tightening of an arm over the shoulder, a sob

in unison, are expressions of sympathy dear to a man’s heart. I stood still and silent till his sobs died away, and then I said softly to him:—

“Come and look at her.”

Together we moved over to the bed, and I lifted the lawn from her face. God!

how beautiful she was. Every hour seemed to be enhancing her loveliness. It frightened and amazed me somewhat; and as for Arthur, he fell a-trembling, and

finally was shaken with doubt as with an ague. At last, after a long pause, he said

to me in a faint whisper:—

“Jack, is she really dead?”

I assured him sadly that it was so, and went on to suggest—for I felt that such

a horrible doubt should not have life for a moment longer than I could help—that

it often happened that after death faces became softened and even resolved into

their youthful beauty; that this was especially so when death had been preceded

by any acute or prolonged suffering. It seemed to quite do away with any doubt,

and, after kneeling beside the couch for a while and looking at her lovingly and

long, he turned aside. I told him that that must be good-bye, as the coffin had to

be prepared; so he went back and took her dead hand in his and kissed it, and bent over and kissed her forehead. He came away, fondly looking back over his

shoulder at her as he came.

I left him in the drawing-room, and told Van Helsing that he had said good-

bye; so the latter went to the kitchen to tell the undertaker’s men to proceed with

the preparations and to screw up the coffin. When he came out of the room again

I told him of Arthur’s question, and he replied:—

“I am not surprised. Just now I doubted for a moment myself!”

We all dined together, and I could see that poor Art was trying to make the

best of things. Van Helsing had been silent all dinner-time; but when we had lit

our cigars he said—

“Lord——”; but Arthur interrupted him:—

“No, no, not that, for God’s sake! not yet at any rate. Forgive me, sir: I did

not mean to speak offensively; it is only because my loss is so recent.”

The Professor answered very sweetly:—

“I only used that name because I was in doubt. I must not call you ‘Mr.,’ and I

have grown to love you—yes, my dear boy, to love you—as Arthur.”

Arthur held out his hand, and took the old man’s warmly.

“Call me what you will,” he said. “I hope I may always have the title of a friend. And let me say that I am at a loss for words to thank you for your goodness to my poor dear.” He paused a moment, and went on: “I know that she

understood your goodness even better than I do; and if I was rude or in any way

wanting at that time you acted so—you remember”—the Professor nodded

—“you must forgive me.”

He answered with a grave kindness:—

“I know it was hard for you to quite trust me then, for to trust such violence

needs to understand; and I take it that you do not—that you cannot—trust me now, for you do not yet understand. And there may be more times when I shall

want you to trust when you cannot—and may not—and must not yet understand.

But the time will come when your trust shall be whole and complete in me, and

when you shall understand as though the sunlight himself shone through. Then

you shall bless me from first to last for your own sake, and for the sake of others

and for her dear sake to whom I swore to protect."

"And, indeed, indeed, sir," said Arthur warmly, "I shall in all ways trust you.

I know and believe you have a very noble heart, and you are Jack's friend, and

you were hers. You shall do what you like."

The Professor cleared his throat a couple of times, as though about to speak,

and finally said:—

"May I ask you something now?"

"Certainly."

"You know that Mrs. Westenra left you all her property?"

"No, poor dear; I never thought of it."

"And as it is all yours, you have a right to deal with it as you will. I want you

to give me permission to read all Miss Lucy's papers and letters. Believe me, it

is no idle curiosity. I have a motive of which, be sure, she would have approved.

I have them all here. I took them before we knew that all was yours, so that no

strange hand might touch them—no strange eye look through words into her

soul. I shall keep them, if I may; even you may not see them yet, but I shall keep

them safe. No word shall be lost; and in the good time I shall give them back to

you. It’s a hard thing I ask, but you will do it, will you not, for Lucy’s sake?”

Arthur spoke out heartily, like his old self:—

“Dr. Van Helsing, you may do what you will. I feel that in saying this I am

doing what my dear one would have approved. I shall not trouble you with

questions till the time comes.”

The old Professor stood up as he said solemnly:—

“And you are right. There will be pain for us all; but it will not be all pain,

nor will this pain be the last. We and you too—you most of all, my dear boy—

will have to pass through the bitter water before we reach the sweet. But we must be brave of heart and unselfish, and do our duty, and all will be well!”

I slept on a sofa in Arthur’s room that night. Van Helsing did not go to bed at

all. He went to and fro, as if patrolling the house, and was never out of sight of

the room where Lucy lay in her coffin, strewn with the wild garlic flowers, which sent, through the odour of lily and rose, a heavy, overpowering smell into

the night.

Mina Harker's Journal.

22 September. —In the train to Exeter. Jonathan sleeping.

It seems only yesterday that the last entry was made, and yet how much

between then, in Whitby and all the world before me, Jonathan away and no

news of him; and now, married to Jonathan, Jonathan a solicitor, a partner, rich,

master of his business, Mr. Hawkins dead and buried, and Jonathan with another

attack that may harm him. Some day he may ask me about it. Down it all goes. I

am rusty in my shorthand—see what unexpected prosperity does for us—so it

may be as well to freshen it up again with an exercise anyhow....

The service was very simple and very solemn. There were only ourselves and

the servants there, one or two old friends of his from Exeter, his London agent,

and a gentleman representing Sir John Paxton, the President of the Incorporated

Law Society. Jonathan and I stood hand in hand, and we felt that our best and dearest friend was gone from us....

We came back to town quietly, taking a ’bus to Hyde Park Corner. Jonathan

thought it would interest me to go into the Row for a while, so we sat down; but

there were very few people there, and it was sad-looking and desolate to see so

many empty chairs. It made us think of the empty chair at home; so we got up

and walked down Piccadilly. Jonathan was holding me by the arm, the way he used to in old days before I went to school. I felt it very improper, for you can’t

go on for some years teaching etiquette and decorum to other girls without the pedantry of it biting into yourself a bit; but it was Jonathan, and he was my husband, and we didn’t know anybody who saw us—and we didn’t care if they

did—so on we walked. I was looking at a very beautiful girl, in a big cart-wheel

hat, sitting in a victoria outside Guiliano’s, when I felt Jonathan clutch my arm

so tight that he hurt me, and he said under his breath: “My God!” I am always

anxious about Jonathan, for I fear that some nervous fit may upset him again; so

I turned to him quickly, and asked him what it was that disturbed him.

He was very pale, and his eyes seemed bulging out as, half in terror and half

in amazement, he gazed at a tall, thin man, with a beaky nose and black

moustache and pointed beard, who was also observing the pretty girl. He was looking at her so hard that he did not see either of us, and so I had a good view

of him. His face was not a good face; it was hard, and cruel, and sensual, and his

big white teeth, that looked all the whiter because his lips were so red, were pointed like an animal’s. Jonathan kept staring at him, till I was afraid he would

notice. I feared he might take it ill, he looked so fierce and nasty. I asked Jonathan why he was disturbed, and he answered, evidently thinking that I knew

as much about it as he did: “Do you see who it is?”

“No, dear,” I said; “I don’t know him; who is it?” His answer seemed to

shock and thrill me, for it was said as if he did not know that it was to me, Mina,

to whom he was speaking:—

“It is the man himself!”

The poor dear was evidently terrified at something—very greatly terrified; I

do believe that if he had not had me to lean on and to support him he would have

sunk down. He kept staring; a man came out of the shop with a small parcel, and

gave it to the lady, who then drove off. The dark man kept his eyes fixed on her,

and when the carriage moved up Piccadilly he followed in the same direction, and hailed a hansom. Jonathan kept looking after him, and said, as if to himself:

—

“I believe it is the Count, but he has grown young. My God, if this be so! Oh,

my God! my God! If I only knew! if I only knew!” He was distressing himself so

much that I feared to keep his mind on the subject by asking him any questions,

so I remained silent. I drew him away quietly, and he, holding my arm, came easily. We walked a little further, and then went in and sat for a while in the Green Park. It was a hot day for autumn, and there was a comfortable seat in a

shady place. After a few minutes’ staring at nothing, Jonathan’s eyes closed, and

he went quietly into a sleep, with his head on my shoulder. I thought it was the

best thing for him, so did not disturb him. In about twenty minutes he woke up,

and said to me quite cheerfully:—

“Why, Mina, have I been asleep! Oh, do forgive me for being so rude. Come,

and we’ll have a cup of tea somewhere.” He had evidently forgotten all about the

dark stranger, as in his illness he had forgotten all that this episode had reminded

him of. I don’t like this lapsing into forgetfulness; it may make or continue some

injury to the brain. I must not ask him, for fear I shall do more harm than good;

but I must somehow learn the facts of his journey abroad. The time is come, I

fear, when I must open that parcel, and know what is written. Oh, Jonathan, you will, I know, forgive me if I do wrong, but it is for your own dear sake.

Later. —A sad home-coming in every way—the house empty of the dear soul

who was so good to us; Jonathan still pale and dizzy under a slight relapse of his

malady; and now a telegram from Van Helsing, whoever he may be:—

“You will be grieved to hear that Mrs. Westenra died five days ago, and that

Lucy died the day before yesterday. They were both buried to-day.”

Oh, what a wealth of sorrow in a few words! Poor Mrs. Westenra! poor Lucy!

Gone, gone, never to return to us! And poor, poor Arthur, to have lost such sweetness out of his life! God help us all to bear our troubles.

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

22 September. —It is all over. Arthur has gone back to Ring, and has taken Quincey Morris with him. What a fine fellow is Quincey! I believe in my heart

of hearts that he suffered as much about Lucy’s death as any of us; but he bore

himself through it like a moral Viking. If America can go on breeding men like

that, she will be a power in the world indeed. Van Helsing is lying down, having

a rest preparatory to his journey. He goes over to Amsterdam to-night, but says

he returns to-morrow night; that he only wants to make some arrangements

which can only be made personally. He is to stop with me then, if he can; he says

he has work to do in London which may take him some time. Poor old fellow! I

fear that the strain of the past week has broken down even his iron strength. All

the time of the burial he was, I could see, putting some terrible restraint on himself. When it was all over, we were standing beside Arthur, who, poor fellow,

was speaking of his part in the operation where his blood had been transfused to

his Lucy’s veins; I could see Van Helsing’s face grow white and purple by turns.

Arthur was saying that he felt since then as if they two had been really married

and that she was his wife in the sight of God. None of us said a word of the other

operations, and none of us ever shall. Arthur and Quincey went away together to

the station, and Van Helsing and I came on here. The moment we were alone in

the carriage he gave way to a regular fit of hysterics. He has denied to me since

that it was hysterics, and insisted that it was only his sense of humour asserting

itself under very terrible conditions. He laughed till he cried, and I had to draw

down the blinds lest any one should see us and misjudge; and then he cried, till

he laughed again; and laughed and cried together, just as a woman does. I tried

to be stern with him, as one is to a woman under the circumstances; but it had no

effect. Men and women are so different in manifestations of nervous strength or

weakness! Then when his face grew grave and stern again I asked him why his mirth, and why at such a time. His reply was in a way characteristic of him, for it

was logical and forceful and mysterious. He said:—

“Ah, you don’t comprehend, friend John. Do not think that I am not sad,

though I laugh. See, I have cried even when the laugh did choke me. But no more think that I am all sorry when I cry, for the laugh he come just the same.

Keep it always with you that laughter who knock at your door and say, ‘May I

come in?’ is not the true laughter. No! he is a king, and he come when and how

he like. He ask no person; he choose no time of suitability. He say, ‘I am here.’

Behold, in example I grieve my heart out for that so sweet young girl; I give my

blood for her, though I am old and worn; I give my time, my skill, my sleep; I let

my other sufferers want that so she may have all. And yet I can laugh at her very

grave—laugh when the clay from the spade of the sexton drop upon her coffin

and say ‘Thud! thud!’ to my heart, till it send back the blood from my cheek. My

heart bleed for that poor boy—that dear boy, so of the age of mine own boy had I

been so blessed that he live, and with his hair and eyes the same. There, you know now why I love him so. And yet when he say things that touch my

husband-heart to the quick, and make my father-heart yearn to him as to no other

man—not even to you, friend John, for we are more level in experiences than father and son—yet even at such moment King Laugh he come to me and shout

and bellow in my ear, ‘Here I am! here I am!’ till the blood come dance back and

bring some of the sunshine that he carry with him to my cheek. Oh, friend John,

it is a strange world, a sad world, a world full of miseries, and woes, and troubles; and yet when King Laugh come he make them all dance to the tune he

play. Bleeding hearts, and dry bones of the churchyard, and tears that burn as they fall—all dance together to the music that he make with that smileless mouth

of him. And believe me, friend John, that he is good to come, and kind. Ah, we

men and women are like ropes drawn tight with strain that pull us different ways.

Then tears come; and, like the rain on the ropes, they brace us up, until perhaps

the strain become too great, and we break. But King Laugh he come like the sunshine, and he ease off the strain again; and we bear to go on with our labour,

what it may be.”

I did not like to wound him by pretending not to see his idea; but, as I did not

yet understand the cause of his laughter, I asked him. As he answered me his face grew stern, and he said in quite a different tone:—

“Oh, it was the grim irony of it all—this so lovely lady garlanded with

flowers, that looked so fair as life, till one by one we wondered if she were truly

dead; she laid in that so fine marble house in that lonely churchyard, where rest

so many of her kin, laid there with the mother who loved her, and whom she loved; and that sacred bell going ‘Toll!

toll! toll!’ so sad and slow; and those holy men, with the white garments of the angel, pretending to read books, and yet all the time their eyes never on the page; and all of us with the bowed head.

And all for what? She is dead; so! Is it not?”

“Well, for the life of me, Professor,” I said, “I can’t see anything to laugh at

in all that. Why, your explanation makes it a harder puzzle than before. But even

if the burial service was comic, what about poor Art and his trouble? Why, his

heart was simply breaking.”

“Just so. Said he not that the transfusion of his blood to her veins had made

her truly his bride?”

“Yes, and it was a sweet and comforting idea for him.”

“Quite so. But there was a difficulty, friend John. If so that, then what about

the others? Ho, ho! Then this so sweet maid is a polyandrist, and me, with my

poor wife dead to me, but alive by Church’s law, though no wits, all gone—even

I, who am faithful husband to this now-no-wife, am bigamist.”

“I don’t see where the joke comes in there either!” I said; and I did not feel

particularly pleased with him for saying such things. He laid his hand on my arm, and said:—

“Friend John, forgive me if I pain. I showed not my feeling to others when it

would wound, but only to you, my old friend, whom I can trust. If you could have looked into my very heart then when I want to laugh; if you could have done so when the laugh arrived; if you could do so now, when King Laugh have

pack up his crown, and all that is to him—for he go far, far away from me, and

for a long, long time—maybe you would perhaps pity me the most of all.”

I was touched by the tenderness of his tone, and asked why.

“Because I know!”

And now we are all scattered; and for many a long day loneliness will sit over

our roofs with brooding wings. Lucy lies in the tomb of her kin, a lordly death-

house in a lonely churchyard, away from teeming London; where the air is fresh,

and the sun rises over Hampstead Hill, and where wild flowers grow of their own accord.

So I can finish this diary; and God only knows if I shall ever begin another. If

I do, or if I even open this again, it will be to deal with different people and different themes; for here at the end, where the romance of my life is told, ere I

go back to take up the thread of my life-work, I say sadly and without hope,

“FINIS.”

“The Westminster Gazette,” 25 September.

A HAMPSTEAD MYSTERY.

The neighbourhood of Hampstead is just at present exercised with a series of

events which seem to run on lines parallel to those of what was known to the writers of headlines as “The Kensington Horror,” or “The Stabbing Woman,” or

“The Woman in Black.” During the past two or three days several cases have occurred of young children straying from home or neglecting to return from their

playing on the Heath. In all these cases the children were too young to give any

properly intelligible account of themselves, but the consensus of their excuses is

that they had been with a “bloofer lady.” It has always been late in the evening

when they have been missed, and on two occasions the children have not been

found until early in the following morning. It is generally supposed in the neighbourhood that, as the first child

missed gave as his reason for being away

that a “bloofer lady” had asked him to come for a walk, the others had picked up

the phrase and used it as occasion served. This is the more natural as the favourite game of the little ones at present is luring each other away by wiles. A

correspondent writes us that to see some of the tiny tots pretending to be the

“bloofer lady” is supremely funny. Some of our caricaturists might, he says, take

a lesson in the irony of grotesque by comparing the reality and the picture. It is

only in accordance with general principles of human nature that the “bloofer lady” should be the popular rôle at these *al fresco* performances. Our correspondent naïvely says that even Ellen Terry could not be so winningly

attractive as some of these grubby-faced little children pretend—and even

imagine themselves—to be.

There is, however, possibly a serious side to the question, for some of the children, indeed all who have been missed at night, have been slightly torn or wounded in the throat. The wounds seem such as might be made by a rat or a small dog, and although of not much importance individually, would tend to

show that whatever animal inflicts them has a system or method of its own. The

police of the division have been instructed to keep a sharp look-out for straying

children, especially when very young, in and around Hampstead Heath, and for

any stray dog which may be about.

“The Westminster Gazette,” 25 September.

Extra Special.

THE HAMPSTEAD HORROR.

ANOTHER CHILD INJURED.

The “Bloofer Lady.”

We have just received intelligence that another child, missed last night, was

only discovered late in the morning under a furze bush at the Shooter’s Hill side

of Hampstead Heath, which is, perhaps, less frequented than the other parts. It has the same tiny wound in the throat as has been noticed in other cases. It was

terribly weak, and looked quite emaciated. It too, when partially restored, had the common story to tell of being lured away by the “bloofer lady.”

CHAPTER XIV

MINA HARKER’S JOURNAL

23 September.—Jonathan is better after a bad night. I am so glad that he has

plenty of work to do, for that keeps his mind off the terrible things; and oh, I am

rejoiced that he is not now weighed down with the responsibility of his new position. I knew he would be true to himself, and now how proud I am to see my

Jonathan rising to the height of his advancement and keeping pace in all ways with the duties that come upon him. He will be away all day till late, for he said

he could not lunch at home. My household work is done, so I shall take his foreign journal, and lock myself up in my room and read it....

24 September.—I hadn't the heart to write last night; that terrible record of Jonathan's upset me so. Poor dear! How he must have suffered, whether it be true or only imagination. I wonder if there is any truth in it at all. Did he get his

brain fever, and then write all those terrible things, or had he some cause for it

all? I suppose I shall never know, for I dare not open the subject to him.... And

yet that man we saw yesterday! He seemed quite certain of him.... Poor fellow! I

suppose it was the funeral upset him and sent his mind back on some train of thought.... He believes it all himself. I remember how on our wedding-day he said: "Unless some solemn duty come upon me to go back to the bitter hours, asleep or awake, mad or sane." There seems to be through it all some thread of

continuity.... That fearful Count was coming to London.... If it should be, and he

came to London, with his teeming millions.... There may be a solemn duty; and

if it come we must not shrink from it.... I shall be prepared. I shall get my typewriter this very hour and begin transcribing. Then we shall be ready for other eyes if required. And if it be wanted; then, perhaps, if I am ready, poor Jonathan may not be upset, for I can speak for him and never let him be troubled

or worried with it at all. If ever Jonathan quite gets over the nervousness he may

want to tell me of it all, and I can ask him questions and find out things, and see

how I may comfort him.

Letter, Van Helsing to Mrs. Harker.

“*24 September.*

(*Confidence*)

“Dear Madam,—

“I pray you to pardon my writing, in that I am so far friend as that I sent to you sad news of Miss Lucy Westenra’s death. By the kindness of Lord

Godalming, I am empowered to read her letters and papers, for I am deeply

concerned about certain matters vitally important. In them I find some letters from you, which show how great friends

you were and how you love her. Oh, Madam Mina, by that love, I implore you, help me. It is for others' good that I

ask—to redress great wrong, and to lift much and terrible troubles—that may be

more great than you can know. May it be that I see you? You can trust me. I am

friend of Dr. John Seward and of Lord Godalming (that was Arthur of Miss

Lucy). I must keep it private for the present from all. I should come to Exeter to

see you at once if you tell me I am privilege to come, and where and when. I implore your pardon, madam. I have read your letters to poor Lucy, and know how good you are and how your husband suffer; so I pray you, if it may be, enlighten him not, lest it may harm. Again your pardon, and forgive me.

"VAN HELSING."

Telegram, Mrs. Harker to Van Helsing.

"*25 September.* —Come to-day by quarter-past ten train if you can catch it.

Can see you any time you call.

"WILHELMINA HARKER."

MINA HARKER'S JOURNAL.

25 September. —I cannot help feeling terribly excited as the time draws near

for the visit of Dr. Van Helsing, for somehow I expect that it will throw some light upon Jonathan’s sad experience; and as he attended poor dear Lucy in her

last illness, he can tell me all about her. That is the reason of his coming; it is concerning Lucy and her sleep-walking, and not about Jonathan. Then I shall

never know the real truth now! How silly I am. That awful journal gets hold of

my imagination and tinges everything with something of its own colour. Of

course it is about Lucy. That habit came back to the poor dear, and that awful night on the cliff must have made her ill. I had almost forgotten in my own affairs how ill she was afterwards. She must have told him of her sleep-walking

adventure on the cliff, and that I knew all about it; and now he wants me to tell

him what she knows, so that he may understand. I hope I did right in not saying

anything of it to Mrs. Westenra; I should never forgive myself if any act of mine,

were it even a negative one, brought harm on poor dear Lucy. I hope, too, Dr.

Van Helsing will not blame me; I have had so much trouble and anxiety of late

that I feel I cannot bear more just at present.

I suppose a cry does us all good at times—clears the air as other rain does.

Perhaps it was reading the journal yesterday that upset me, and then Jonathan went away this morning to stay away from me a whole day and night, the first

time we have been parted since our marriage. I do hope the dear fellow will take

care of himself, and that nothing will occur to upset him. It is two o’clock, and

the doctor will be here soon now. I shall say nothing of Jonathan’s journal unless

he asks me. I am so glad I have type-written out my own journal, so that, in case

he asks about Lucy, I can hand it to him; it will save much questioning.

Later. —He has come and gone. Oh, what a strange meeting, and how it all makes my head whirl round! I feel like one in a dream. Can it be all possible, or

even a part of it? If I had not read Jonathan’s journal first, I should never have

accepted even a possibility. Poor, poor, dear Jonathan! How he must have

suffered. Please the good God, all this may not upset him again. I shall try to save him from it; but it may be even a consolation and a help to him—terrible

though it be and awful in its consequences—to know for certain that his eyes and

ears and brain did not deceive him, and that it is all true. It may be that it is the

doubt which haunts him; that when the doubt is removed, no matter which—

waking or dreaming—may prove the truth, he will be more satisfied and better

able to bear the shock. Dr. Van Helsing must be a good man as well as a clever

one if he is Arthur’s friend and Dr. Seward’s, and if they brought him all the way

from Holland to look after Lucy. I feel from having seen him that he *is* good and kind and of a noble nature. When he comes to-morrow I shall ask him about Jonathan; and then, please God, all this sorrow and anxiety may lead to a good

end. I used to think I would like to practise interviewing; Jonathan’s friend on

“The Exeter News” told him that memory was everything in such work—that

you must be able to put down exactly almost every word spoken, even if you had

to refine some of it afterwards. Here was a rare interview; I shall try to record it

verbatim.

It was half-past two o’clock when the knock came. I took my courage *à deux*

mains and waited. In a few minutes Mary opened the door, and announced “Dr.

Van Helsing.”

I rose and bowed, and he came towards me; a man of medium weight,

strongly built, with his shoulders set back over a broad, deep chest and a neck well balanced on the trunk as the head is on the neck. The poise of the head strikes one at once as indicative of thought and power; the head is noble, well-sized, broad, and large behind the ears. The face, clean-shaven, shows a hard, square chin, a large, resolute, mobile mouth, a good-sized nose, rather straight,

but with quick, sensitive nostrils, that seem to broaden as the big, bushy brows come down and the mouth tightens. The forehead is broad and fine, rising at first

almost straight and then sloping back above two bumps or ridges wide apart; such a forehead that the reddish hair cannot possibly tumble over it, but falls naturally back and to the sides. Big, dark blue eyes are set widely apart, and are

quick and tender or stern with the man’s moods. He said to me:—

“Mrs. Harker, is it not?” I bowed assent.

“That was Miss Mina Murray?” Again I assented.

“It is Mina Murray that I came to see that was friend of that poor dear child

Lucy Westenra. Madam Mina, it is on account of the dead I come.”

“Sir,” I said, “you could have no better claim on me than that you were a friend and helper of Lucy Westenra.” And I held out my hand. He took it and said tenderly:—

“Oh, Madam Mina, I knew that the friend of that poor lily girl must be good,

but I had yet to learn——” He finished his speech with a courtly bow. I asked him what it was that he wanted to see me about, so he at once began:—

“I have read your letters to Miss Lucy. Forgive me, but I had to begin to inquire somewhere, and there was none to ask. I know that you were with her at

Whitby. She sometimes kept a diary—you need not look surprised, Madam

Mina; it was begun after you had left, and was in imitation of you—and in that

diary she traces by inference certain things to a sleep-walking in which she puts

down that you saved her. In great perplexity then I come to you, and ask you out

of your so much kindness to tell me all of it that you can remember.”

“I can tell you, I think, Dr. Van Helsing, all about it.”

“Ah, then you have good memory for facts, for details? It is not always so with young ladies.”

“No, doctor, but I wrote it all down at the time. I can show it to you if you

like.”

“Oh, Madam Mina, I will be grateful; you will do me much favour.” I could

not resist the temptation of mystifying him a bit—I suppose it is some of the taste of the original apple that remains still in our mouths—so I handed him the

shorthand diary. He took it with a grateful bow, and said:—

“May I read it?”

“If you wish,” I answered as demurely as I could. He opened it, and for an instant his face fell. Then he stood up and bowed.

“Oh, you so clever woman!” he said. “I knew long that Mr. Jonathan was a

man of much thankfulness; but see, his wife have all the good things. And will

you not so much honour me and so help me as to read it for me? Alas! I know

not the shorthand.” By this time my little joke was over, and I was almost ashamed; so I took the typewritten copy from my workbasket and handed it to him.

“Forgive me,” I said: “I could not help it; but I had been thinking that it was

of dear Lucy that you wished to ask, and so that you might not have time to wait

—not on my account, but because I know your time must be precious—I have

written it out on the typewriter for you."

He took it and his eyes glistened. "You are so good," he said. "And may I read it now? I may want to ask you some things when I have read."

"By all means," I said, "read it over whilst I order lunch; and then you can ask me questions whilst we eat." He bowed and settled himself in a chair with his back to the light, and became absorbed in the papers, whilst I went to see after lunch chiefly in order that he might not be disturbed. When I came back, I

found him walking hurriedly up and down the room, his face all ablaze with excitement. He rushed up to me and took me by both hands.

"Oh, Madam Mina," he said, "how can I say what I owe to you? This paper is

as sunshine. It opens the gate to me. I am daze, I am dazzle, with so much light,

and yet clouds roll in behind the light every time. But that you do not, cannot, comprehend. Oh, but I am grateful to you, you so clever woman. Madam"—he

said this very solemnly—"if ever Abraham Van Helsing can do anything for you

or yours, I trust you will let me know. It will be pleasure and delight if I may serve you as a friend; as a friend, but all I have ever learned, all I can ever do,

shall be for you and those you love. There are darknesses in life, and there are

lights; you are one of the lights. You will have happy life and good life, and your husband will be blessed in you."

"But, doctor, you praise me too much, and—and you do not know me."

"Not know you—I, who am old, and who have studied all my life men and

women; I, who have made my specialty the brain and all that belongs to him and

all that follow from him! And I have read your diary that you have so goodly written for me, and which breathes out truth in every line. I, who have read your

so sweet letter to poor Lucy of your marriage and your trust, not know you! Oh,

Madam Mina, good women tell all their lives, and by day and by hour and by minute, such things that angels can read; and we men who wish to know have in

us something of angels' eyes. Your husband is noble nature, and you are noble too, for you trust, and trust cannot be where there is mean nature. And your husband—tell me of him. Is he quite well? Is all that fever gone, and is he strong

and hearty?" I saw here an opening to ask him about Jonathan, so I said:—

“He was almost recovered, but he has been greatly upset by Mr. Hawkins’s

death.” He interrupted:—

“Oh, yes, I know, I know. I have read your last two letters.” I went on:—

“I suppose this upset him, for when we were in town on Thursday last he had

a sort of shock.”

“A shock, and after brain fever so soon! That was not good. What kind of a

shock was it?”

“He thought he saw some one who recalled something terrible, something

which led to his brain fever.” And here the whole thing seemed to overwhelm me in a rush. The pity for Jonathan, the horror which he experienced, the whole

fearful mystery of his diary, and the fear that has been brooding over me ever since, all came in a tumult. I suppose I was hysterical, for I threw myself on my

knees and held up my hands to him, and implored him to make my husband well

again. He took my hands and raised me up, and made me sit on the sofa, and sat

by me; he held my hand in his, and said to me with, oh, such infinite sweetness:

—

“My life is a barren and lonely one, and so full of work that I have not had

much time for friendships; but since I have been summoned to here by my friend

John Seward I have known so many good people and seen such nobility that I feel more than ever—and it has grown with my advancing years—the loneliness

of my life. Believe, me, then, that I come here full of respect for you, and you

have given me hope—hope, not in what I am seeking of, but that there are good

women still left to make life happy—good women, whose lives and whose truths

may make good lesson for the children that are to be. I am glad, glad, that I may here be of some use to you; for if your husband suffer, he suffer within the range

of my study and experience. I promise you that I will gladly do *all* for him that I can—all to make his life strong and manly, and your life a happy one. Now you

must eat. You are overwrought and perhaps over-anxious. Husband Jonathan

would not like to see you so pale; and what he like not where he love, is not to

his good. Therefore for his sake you must eat and smile. You have told me all about Lucy, and so now we shall not speak

of it, lest it distress. I shall stay in Exeter to-night, for I want to think much over what you have told me, and when

I have thought I will ask you questions, if I may. And then, too, you will tell me

of husband Jonathan’s trouble so far as you can, but not yet. You must eat now;

afterwards you shall tell me all.”

After lunch, when we went back to the drawing-room, he said to me:—

“And now tell me all about him.” When it came to speaking to this great

learned man, I began to fear that he would think me a weak fool, and Jonathan a

madman—that journal is all so strange—and I hesitated to go on. But he was so

sweet and kind, and he had promised to help, and I trusted him, so I said:—

“Dr. Van Helsing, what I have to tell you is so queer that you must not laugh

at me or at my husband. I have been since yesterday in a sort of fever of doubt;

you must be kind to me, and not think me foolish that I have even half believed

some very strange things.” He reassured me by his manner as well as his words

when he said:—

“Oh, my dear, if you only know how strange is the matter regarding which I

am here, it is you who would laugh. I have learned not to think little of any one’s

belief, no matter how strange it be. I have tried to keep an open mind; and it is

not the ordinary things of life that could close it, but the strange things, the extraordinary things, the things that make one doubt if they be mad or sane.”

“Thank you, thank you, a thousand times! You have taken a weight off my

mind. If you will let me, I shall give you a paper to read. It is long, but I have

typewritten it out. It will tell you my trouble and Jonathan’s. It is the copy of his

journal when abroad, and all that happened. I dare not say anything of it; you will read for yourself and judge. And then when I see you, perhaps, you will be

very kind and tell me what you think.”

“I promise,” he said as I gave him the papers; “I shall in the morning, so soon

as I can, come to see you and your husband, if I may.”

“Jonathan will be here at half-past eleven, and you must come to lunch with

us and see him then; you could catch the quick 3:34 train, which will leave you

at Paddington before eight.” He was surprised at my knowledge of the trains off-hand, but he does not know that I have made up all the trains to and from Exeter,

so that I may help Jonathan in case he is in a hurry.

So he took the papers with him and went away, and I sit here thinking—

thinking I don’t know what.

Letter (by hand), Van Helsing to Mrs. Harker.

“*25 September, 6 o’clock.*

“Dear Madam Mina,—

“I have read your husband’s so wonderful diary. You may sleep without

doubt. Strange and terrible as it is, it is *true*! I will pledge my life on it. It may be worse for others; but for him and you there is no dread. He is a noble fellow; and

let me tell you from experience of men, that one who would do as he did in going down that wall and to that room—ay, and going a second time—is not one

to be injured in permanence by a shock. His brain and his heart are all right; this

I swear, before I have even seen him; so be at rest. I shall have much to ask him

of other things. I am blessed that to-day I come to see you, for I have learn all at

once so much that again I am dazzle—dazzle more than ever, and I must think.

“Yours the most faithful,

“ABRAHAM VAN HELSING.”

Letter, Mrs. Harker to Van Helsing.

“*25 September, 6:30 p. m.*

“My dear Dr. Van Helsing,—

“A thousand thanks for your kind letter, which has taken a great weight off my mind. And yet, if it be true, what terrible things there are in the world, and

what an awful thing if that man, that monster, be really in London! I fear to think. I have this moment, whilst writing, had a wire from Jonathan, saying that

he leaves by the 6:25 to-night from Launceston and will be here at 10:18, so that

I shall have no fear to-night. Will you, therefore, instead of lunching with us, please come to breakfast at eight o’clock, if this be not too early for you? You

can get away, if you are in a hurry, by the 10:30 train, which will bring you to

Paddington by 2:35. Do not answer this, as I shall take it that, if I do not hear,

you will come to breakfast.

“Believe me,

“Your faithful and grateful friend,

“MINA HARKER.”

Jonathan Harker’s Journal.

26 September. —I thought never to write in this diary again, but the time has

come. When I got home last night Mina had supper ready, and when we had

supped she told me of Van Helsing’s visit, and of her having given him the two

diaries copied out, and of how anxious she has been about me. She showed me

in the doctor’s letter that all I wrote down was true. It seems to have made a new

man of me. It was the doubt as to the reality of the whole thing that knocked me

over. I felt impotent, and in the dark, and distrustful. But, now that I *know*, I am not afraid, even of the Count. He has succeeded after all, then, in his design in

getting to London, and it was he I saw. He has got younger, and how? Van Helsing is the man to unmask him and hunt him out, if he is anything like what

Mina says. We sat late, and talked it all over. Mina is dressing, and I shall call at

the hotel in a few minutes and bring him over....

He was, I think, surprised to see me. When I came into the room where he was, and introduced myself, he took me by the shoulder, and turned my face round to the light, and said, after a sharp scrutiny:—

“But Madam Mina told me you were ill, that you had had a shock.” It was so

funny to hear my wife called “Madam Mina” by this kindly, strong-faced old

man. I smiled, and said:—

“I *was* ill, I *have* had a shock; but you have cured me already.”

“And how?”

“By your letter to Mina last night. I was in doubt, and then everything took a

hue of unreality, and I did not know what to trust, even the evidence of my own

senses. Not knowing what to trust, I did not know what to do; and so had only to

keep on working in what had hitherto been the groove of my life. The groove ceased to avail me, and I mistrusted myself. Doctor, you don’t know what it is to

doubt everything, even yourself. No, you don’t; you couldn’t with eyebrows like

yours.” He seemed pleased, and laughed as he said:—

“So! You are physiognomist. I learn more here with each hour. I am with so

much pleasure coming to you to breakfast; and, oh, sir, you will pardon praise from an old man, but you are blessed in your wife.” I would listen to him go on

praising Mina for a day, so I simply nodded and stood silent.

“She is one of God’s women, fashioned by His own hand to show us men and

other women that there is a heaven where we can enter, and that its light can be

here on earth. So true, so sweet, so noble, so little an egoist—and that, let me tell

you, is much in this age, so sceptical and selfish. And you, sir—I have read all

the letters to poor Miss Lucy, and some of them speak of you, so I know you

since some days from the knowing of others; but I have seen your true self since last night. You will give me your hand, will you not? And let us be friends for all

our lives.”

We shook hands, and he was so earnest and so kind that it made me quite

choky.

“And now,” he said, “may I ask you for some more help? I have a great task

to do, and at the beginning it is to know. You can help me here. Can you tell me

what went before your going to Transylvania? Later on I may ask more help, and

of a different kind; but at first this will do.”

“Look here, sir,” I said, “does what you have to do concern the Count?”

“It does,” he said solemnly.

“Then I am with you heart and soul. As you go by the 10:30 train, you will

not have time to read them; but I shall get the bundle of papers. You can take them with you and read them in the train.”

After breakfast I saw him to the station. When we were parting he said:—

“Perhaps you will come to town if I send to you, and take Madam Mina too.”

“We shall both come when you will,” I said.

I had got him the morning papers and the London papers of the previous

night, and while we were talking at the carriage window, waiting for the train to

start, he was turning them over. His eyes suddenly seemed to catch something in

one of them, “The Westminster Gazette”—I knew it by the colour—and he grew

quite white. He read something intently, groaning to himself: “Mein Gott! Mein

Gott! So soon! so soon!” I do not think he remembered me at the moment. Just

then the whistle blew, and the train moved off. This recalled him to himself, and

he leaned out of the window and waved his hand, calling out: “Love to Madam

Mina; I shall write so soon as ever I can.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

26 September. —Truly there is no such thing as finality. Not a week since I said “Finis,” and yet here I am starting fresh again, or rather going on with the

same record. Until this afternoon I had no cause to think of what is done.

Renfield had become, to all intents, as sane as he ever was. He was already well

ahead with his fly business; and he had just started in the spider line also; so he

had not been of any trouble to me. I had a letter from Arthur, written on Sunday,

and from it I gather that he is bearing up wonderfully well. Quincey Morris is with him, and that is much of a help, for he himself is a bubbling well of good

spirits. Quincey wrote me a line too, and from him I hear that Arthur is

beginning to recover something of his old buoyancy; so as to them all my mind is at rest. As for myself, I was settling down to my work with the enthusiasm which I used to have for it, so that I might fairly have said that the wound which

poor Lucy left on me was becoming cicatrised. Everything is, however, now

reopened; and what is to be the end God only knows. I have an idea that Van Helsing thinks he knows, too, but he will only let out enough at a time to whet

curiosity. He went to Exeter yesterday, and stayed there all night. To-day he came back, and almost bounded into the room at about half-past five o'clock, and thrust last night's "Westminster Gazette" into my hand.

"What do you think of that?" he asked as he stood back and folded his arms.

I looked over the paper, for I really did not know what he meant; but he took

it from me and pointed out a paragraph about children being decoyed away at Hampstead. It did not convey much to me, until I reached a passage where it described small punctured wounds on their throats. An idea struck me, and I looked up. "Well?" he said.

"It is like poor Lucy's."

"And what do you make of it?"

"Simply that there is some cause in common. Whatever it was that injured

her has injured them.” I did not quite understand his answer:—

“That is true indirectly, but not directly.”

“How do you mean, Professor?” I asked. I was a little inclined to take his seriousness lightly—for, after all, four days of rest and freedom from burning, harrowing anxiety does help to restore one’s spirits—but when I saw his face, it

sobered me. Never, even in the midst of our despair about poor Lucy, had he looked more stern.

“Tell me!” I said. “I can hazard no opinion. I do not know what to think, and I

have no data on which to found a conjecture.”

“Do you mean to tell me, friend John, that you have no suspicion as to what

poor Lucy died of; not after all the hints given, not only by events, but by me?”

“Of nervous prostration following on great loss or waste of blood.”

“And how the blood lost or waste?” I shook my head. He stepped over and

sat down beside me, and went on:—

“You are clever man, friend John; you reason well, and your wit is bold; but

you are too prejudiced. You do not let your eyes see nor your ears hear, and that

which is outside your daily life is not of account to you. Do you not think that

there are things which you cannot understand, and yet which are; that some

people see things that others cannot? But there are things old and new which

must not be contemplate by men’s eyes, because they know —or think they know

—some things which other men have told them. Ah, it is the fault of our science

that it wants to explain all; and if it explain not, then it says there is nothing to

explain. But yet we see around us every day the growth of new beliefs, which think themselves new; and which are yet but the old, which pretend to be young

—like the fine ladies at the opera. I suppose now you do not believe in corporeal

transference. No? Nor in materialisation. No? Nor in astral bodies. No? Nor in the reading of thought. No? Nor in hypnotism——”

“Yes,” I said. “Charcot has proved that pretty well.” He smiled as he went on:

“Then you are satisfied as to it. Yes? And of course then you understand how it

act, and can follow the mind of the great Charcot—alas that he is no more!—into

the very soul of the patient that he influence. No? Then, friend John, am I to take

it that you simply accept fact, and are satisfied to let from premise to conclusion

be a blank? No? Then tell me—for I am student of the brain —how you accept

the hypnotism and reject the thought reading. Let me tell you, my friend, that there are things done to-day in electrical science which would have been deemed

unholy by the very men who discovered electricity—who would themselves not

so long before have been burned as wizards. There are always mysteries in life.

Why was it that Methuselah lived nine hundred years, and ‘Old Parr’ one

hundred and sixty-nine, and yet that poor Lucy, with four men’s blood in her poor veins, could not live even one day? For, had she live one more day, we could have save her. Do you know all the mystery of life and death? Do you know the altogether of comparative anatomy and can say wherefore the qualities

of brutes are in some men, and not in others? Can you tell me why, when other

spiders die small and soon, that one great spider lived for centuries in the tower

of the old Spanish church and grew and grew, till, on descending, he could drink

the oil of all the church lamps? Can you tell me why in the Pampas, ay and elsewhere, there are bats that come at night and open the veins of cattle and horses and suck dry their veins; how in some islands of the Western seas there

are bats which hang on the trees all day, and those who have seen describe as like giant nuts or pods, and that when the sailors sleep on the deck, because that

it is hot, flit down on them, and then—and then in the morning are found dead

men, white as even Miss Lucy was?”

“Good God, Professor!” I said, starting up. “Do you mean to tell me that

Lucy was bitten by such a bat; and that such a thing is here in London in the nineteenth century?” He waved his hand for silence, and went on:—

“Can you tell me why the tortoise lives more long than generations of men;

why the elephant goes on and on till he have seen dynasties; and why the parrot

never die only of bite of cat or dog or other complaint? Can you tell me why men believe in all ages and places that there are some few who live on always if

they be permit; that there are men and women who cannot die? We all know—

because science has vouched for the fact—that there have been toads shut up in

rocks for thousands of years, shut in one so small hole that only hold him since

the youth of the world. Can you tell me how the Indian fakir can make himself to

die and have been buried, and his grave sealed and corn sowed on it, and the corn reaped and be cut and sown and reaped and cut again, and then men come

and take away the unbroken seal and that there lie the Indian fakir, not dead, but

that rise up and walk amongst them as before?" Here I interrupted him. I was getting bewildered; he so crowded on my mind his list of nature's eccentricities

and possible impossibilities that my imagination was getting fired. I had a dim idea that he was teaching me some lesson, as long ago he used to do in his study

at Amsterdam; but he used then to tell me the thing, so that I could have the object of thought in mind all the time. But now I was without this help, yet I wanted to follow him, so I said:—

"Professor, let me be your pet student again. Tell me the thesis, so that I may

apply your knowledge as you go on. At present I am going in my mind from point to point as a mad man, and not a sane one, follows an idea. I feel like a novice lumbering through a bog in a mist, jumping from one tussock to another

in the mere blind effort to move on without knowing where I am going."

“That is good image,” he said. “Well, I shall tell you. My thesis is this: I want

you to believe.”

“To believe what?”

“To believe in things that you cannot. Let me illustrate. I heard once of an American who so defined faith: ‘that faculty which enables us to believe things

which we know to be untrue.’ For one, I follow that man. He meant that we shall

have an open mind, and not let a little bit of truth check the rush of a big truth,

like a small rock does a railway truck. We get the small truth first. Good! We keep him, and we value him; but all the same we must not let him think himself

all the truth in the universe.”

“Then you want me not to let some previous conviction injure the receptivity

of my mind with regard to some strange matter. Do I read your lesson aright?”

“Ah, you are my favourite pupil still. It is worth to teach you. Now that you

are willing to understand, you have taken the first step to understand. You think

then that those so small holes in the children’s throats were made by the same that made the hole in Miss Lucy?”

“I suppose so.” He stood up and said solemnly:—

“Then you are wrong. Oh, would it were so! but alas! no. It is worse, far, far

worse.”

“In God’s name, Professor Van Helsing, what do you mean?” I cried.

He threw himself with a despairing gesture into a chair, and placed his

elbows on the table, covering his face with his hands as he spoke:—

“They were made by Miss Lucy!”

CHAPTER XV

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY— *continued*.

FOR a while sheer anger mastered me; it was as if he had during her life struck

Lucy on the face. I smote the table hard and rose up as I said to him:—

“Dr. Van Helsing, are you mad?” He raised his head and looked at me, and

somehow the tenderness of his face calmed me at once. “Would I were!” he said.

“Madness were easy to bear compared with truth like this. Oh, my friend, why,

think you, did I go so far round, why take so long to tell you so simple a thing?

Was it because I hate you and have hated you all my life? Was it because I wished to give you pain? Was it that I wanted, now so late, revenge for that time

when you saved my life, and from a fearful death? Ah no!”

“Forgive me,” said I. He went on:—

“My friend, it was because I wished to be gentle in the breaking to you, for I

know you have loved that so sweet lady. But even yet I do not expect you to believe. It is so hard to accept at once any abstract truth, that we may doubt such

to be possible when we have always believed the ‘no’ of it; it is more hard still to

accept so sad a concrete truth, and of such a one as Miss Lucy. To-night I go to

prove it. Dare you come with me?”

This staggered me. A man does not like to prove such a truth; Byron excepted

from the category, jealousy.

“And prove the very truth he most abhorred.”

He saw my hesitation, and spoke:—

“The logic is simple, no madman’s logic this time, jumping from tussock to

tussock in a misty bog. If it be not true, then proof will be relief; at worst it will

not harm. If it be true! Ah, there is the dread; yet very dread should help my cause, for in it is some need of belief. Come, I tell you what I propose: first, that

we go off now and see that child in the hospital. Dr. Vincent, of the North Hospital, where the papers say the child is, is friend of mine, and I think of yours

since you were in class at Amsterdam. He will let two scientists see his case, if

he will not let two friends. We shall tell him nothing, but only that we wish to

learn. And then——”

“And then?” He took a key from his pocket and held it up. “And then we

spend the night, you and I, in the churchyard where Lucy lies. This is the key that lock the tomb. I had it from the coffin-man to give to Arthur.” My heart sank

within me, for I felt that there was some fearful ordeal before us. I could do nothing, however, so I plucked up what heart I could and said that we had better

hasten, as the afternoon was passing....

We found the child awake. It had had a sleep and taken some food, and

altogether was going on well. Dr. Vincent took the bandage from its throat, and

showed us the punctures. There was no mistaking the similarity to those which

had been on Lucy’s throat. They were smaller, and the edges looked fresher; that

was all. We asked Vincent to what he attributed them, and he replied that it must

have been a bite of some animal, perhaps a rat; but, for his own part, he was inclined to think that it was one of the bats which are so numerous on the northern heights of London. “Out of so many harmless ones,” he said, “there may be some wild specimen from the South of a more malignant species. Some

sailor may have brought one home, and it managed to escape; or even from the

Zoölogical Gardens a young one may have got loose, or one be bred there from a

vampire. These things do occur, you know. Only ten days ago a wolf got out, and

was, I believe, traced up in this direction. For a week after, the children were playing nothing but Red Riding Hood on the Heath and in every alley in the place until this ‘bloofer lady’ scare came along, since when it has been quite a gala-time with them. Even this poor little mite, when he woke up to-day, asked

the nurse if he might go away. When she asked him why he wanted to go, he said he wanted to play with the ‘bloofer lady.’ ”

“I hope,” said Van Helsing, “that when you are sending the child home you

will caution its parents to keep strict watch over it. These fancies to stray are most dangerous; and if the child were to remain out another night, it would probably be fatal. But in any case I suppose you will not let it away for some days?”

“Certainly not, not for a week at least; longer if the wound is not healed.”

Our visit to the hospital took more time than we had reckoned on, and the sun

had dipped before we came out. When Van Helsing saw how dark it was, he

said:—

“There is no hurry. It is more late than I thought. Come, let us seek

somewhere that we may eat, and then we shall go on our way.”

We dined at “Jack Straw’s Castle” along with a little crowd of bicyclists and

others who were genially noisy. About ten o’clock we started from the inn. It was then very dark, and the scattered lamps made the darkness greater when we

were once outside their individual radius. The Professor had evidently noted the

road we were to go, for he went on unhesitatingly; but, as for me, I was in quite a mixup as to locality. As we went further,

we met fewer and fewer people, till at

last we were somewhat surprised when we met even the patrol of horse police going their usual suburban round. At last we reached the wall of the churchyard,

which we climbed over. With some little difficulty—for it was very dark, and the

whole place seemed so strange to us—we found the Westenra tomb. The

Professor took the key, opened the creaky door, and standing back, politely, but

quite unconsciously, motioned me to precede him. There was a delicious irony in

the offer, in the courtliness of giving preference on such a ghastly occasion. My

companion followed me quickly, and cautiously drew the door to, after carefully

ascertaining that the lock was a falling, and not a spring, one. In the latter case

we should have been in a bad plight. Then he fumbled in his bag, and taking out

a matchbox and a piece of candle, proceeded to make a light. The tomb in the day-time, and when wreathed with fresh flowers, had looked grim and gruesome

enough; but now, some days afterwards, when the flowers hung lank and dead,

their whites turning to rust and their greens to browns; when the spider and the

beetle had resumed their accustomed dominance; when time-discoloured stone,

and dust-encrusted mortar, and rusty, dank iron, and tarnished brass, and clouded

silver-plating gave back the feeble glimmer of a candle, the effect was more miserable and sordid than could have been imagined. It conveyed irresistibly the

idea that life—animal life—was not the only thing which could pass away.

Van Helsing went about his work systematically. Holding his candle so that

he could read the coffin plates, and so holding it that the sperm dropped in white

patches which congealed as they touched the metal, he made assurance of Lucy’s

coffin. Another search in his bag, and he took out a turnscrew.

“What are you going to do?” I asked.

“To open the coffin. You shall yet be convinced.” Straightway he began

taking out the screws, and finally lifted off the lid, showing the casing of lead beneath. The sight was almost too much for me. It seemed to be as much an affront to the dead as it would have been to have stripped off her clothing in her

sleep whilst living; I actually took hold of his hand to stop him. He only said:

“You shall see,” and again fumbling in his bag, took out a tiny fret-saw. Striking

the turnscrew through the lead with a swift downward stab, which made me

wince, he made a small hole, which was, however, big enough to admit the point

of the saw. I had expected a rush of gas from the week-old corpse. We doctors,

who have had to study our dangers, have to become accustomed to such things,

and I drew back towards the door. But the Professor never stopped for a

moment; he sawed down a couple of feet along one side of the lead coffin, and

then across, and down the other side. Taking the edge of the loose flange, he bent it back towards the foot of the coffin, and holding up the candle into the aperture,

motioned to me to look.

I drew near and looked. The coffin was empty.

It was certainly a surprise to me, and gave me a considerable shock, but Van

Helsing was unmoved. He was now more sure than ever of his ground, and so emboldened to proceed in his task. “Are you satisfied now, friend John?” he asked.

I felt all the dogged argumentativeness of my nature awake within me as I

answered him:—

“I am satisfied that Lucy’s body is not in that coffin; but that only proves one

thing.”

“And what is that, friend John?”

“That it is not there.”

“That is good logic,” he said, “so far as it goes. But how do you—how can

you—account for it not being there?”

“Perhaps a body-snatcher,” I suggested. “Some of the undertaker’s people

may have stolen it.” I felt that I was speaking folly, and yet it was the only real

cause which I could suggest. The Professor sighed. “Ah well!” he said, “we must

have more proof. Come with me.”

He put on the coffin-lid again, gathered up all his things and placed them in

the bag, blew out the light, and placed the candle also in the bag. We opened the

door, and went out. Behind us he closed the door and locked it. He handed me

the key, saying: “Will you keep it? You had better be assured.” I laughed—it was

not a very cheerful laugh, I am bound to say—as I motioned him to keep it. “A

key is nothing,” I said; “there may be duplicates; and anyhow it is not difficult to

pick a lock of that kind.” He said nothing, but put the key in his pocket. Then he

told me to watch at one side of the churchyard whilst he would watch at the other. I took up my place behind a yew-tree, and I saw his dark figure move until

the intervening headstones and trees hid it from my sight.

It was a lonely vigil. Just after I had taken my place I heard a distant clock

strike twelve, and in time came one and two. I was chilled and unnerved, and angry with the Professor for taking me on such an errand and with myself for coming. I was too cold and too sleepy to be keenly observant, and not sleepy enough to betray my trust so altogether I had a dreary, miserable time.

Suddenly, as I turned round, I thought I saw something like a white streak, moving between two dark yew-trees at the side of the churchyard farthest from

the tomb; at the same time a dark mass moved from the Professor’s side of the ground, and hurriedly went towards it. Then I too moved; but I had to go round

headstones and railed-off tombs, and I stumbled over graves. The sky was

overcast, and somewhere far off an early cock crew. A little way off, beyond a

line of scattered juniper-trees, which marked the pathway to the church, a white,

dim figure flitted in the direction of the tomb. The tomb itself was hidden by trees, and I could not see where the figure disappeared. I heard the rustle of actual movement where I had first seen the white figure, and coming over, found

the Professor holding in his arms a tiny child. When he saw me he held it out to

me, and said:—

“Are you satisfied now?”

“No,” I said, in a way that I felt was aggressive.

“Do you not see the child?”

“Yes, it is a child, but who brought it here? And is it wounded?” I asked.

“We shall see,” said the Professor, and with one impulse we took our way out

of the churchyard, he carrying the sleeping child.

When we had got some little distance away, we went into a clump of trees, and struck a match, and looked at the child’s throat. It was without a scratch or

scar of any kind.

“Was I right?” I asked triumphantly.

“We were just in time,” said the Professor thankfully.

We had now to decide what we were to do with the child, and so consulted

about it. If we were to take it to a police-station we should have to give some account of our movements during the night; at least, we should have had to make

some statement as to how we had come to find the child. So finally we decided

that we would take it to the Heath, and when we heard a policeman coming, would leave it where he could not fail to find it; we would then seek our way home as quickly as we could. All fell out well. At the edge of Hampstead Heath

we heard a policeman’s heavy tramp, and laying the child on the pathway, we waited and watched until he saw it as he flashed his lantern to and fro. We heard

his exclamation of astonishment, and then we went away silently. By good

chance we got a cab near the “Spaniards,” and drove to town.

I cannot sleep, so I make this entry. But I must try to get a few hours’ sleep,

as Van Helsing is to call for me at noon. He insists that I shall go with him on

another expedition.

27 September. —It was two o’clock before we found a suitable opportunity

for our attempt. The funeral held at noon was all completed, and the last stragglers of the mourners had taken themselves lazily away, when, looking

carefully from behind a clump of alder-trees, we saw the sexton lock the gate after him. We knew then that we were safe till morning did we desire it; but the

Professor told me that we should not want more than an hour at most. Again I felt that horrid sense of the reality of things, in which any effort of imagination

seemed out of place; and I realised distinctly the perils of the law which we were

incurring in our unhallowed work. Besides, I felt it was all so useless.

Outrageous as it was to open a leaden coffin, to see if a woman dead nearly a week were really dead, it now seemed the height of folly to open the tomb again,

when we knew, from the evidence of our own eyesight, that the coffin was

empty. I shrugged my shoulders, however, and rested silent, for Van Helsing had

a way of going on his own road, no matter who remonstrated. He took the key,

opened the vault, and again courteously motioned me to precede. The place was

not so gruesome as last night, but oh, how unutterably mean-looking when the sunshine streamed in. Van Helsing walked over to Lucy’s coffin, and I followed.

He bent over and again forced back the leaden flange; and then a shock of surprise and dismay shot through me.

There lay Lucy, seemingly just as we had seen her the night before her

funeral. She was, if possible, more radiantly beautiful than ever; and I could not

believe that she was dead. The lips were red, nay redder than before; and on the

cheeks was a delicate bloom.

“Is this a juggle?” I said to him.

“Are you convinced now?” said the Professor in response, and as he spoke he

put over his hand, and in a way that made me shudder, pulled back the dead lips

and showed the white teeth.

“See,” he went on, “see, they are even sharper than before. With this and

this”—and he touched one of the canine teeth and that below it—“the little

children can be bitten. Are you of belief now, friend John?” Once more,

argumentative hostility woke within me. I *could* not accept such an

overwhelming idea as he suggested; so, with an attempt to argue of which I was

even at the moment ashamed, I said:—

“She may have been placed here since last night.”

“Indeed? That is so, and by whom?”

“I do not know. Some one has done it.”

“And yet she has been dead one week. Most peoples in that time would not

look so.” I had no answer for this, so was silent. Van Helsing did not seem to

notice my silence; at any rate, he showed neither chagrin nor triumph. He was looking intently at the face of the dead woman, raising the eyelids and looking at

the eyes, and once more opening the lips and examining the teeth. Then he

turned to me and said:—

“Here, there is one thing which is different from all recorded; here is some dual life that is not as the common. She was bitten by the vampire when she was

in a trance, sleep-walking—oh, you start; you do not know that, friend John, but

you shall know it all later—and in trance could he best come to take more blood.

In trance she died, and in trance she is Un-Dead, too. So it is that she differ from

all other. Usually when the Un-Dead sleep at home”—as he spoke he made a

comprehensive sweep of his arm to designate what to a vampire was

“home”—“their face show what they are, but this so sweet that was when she not Un-Dead she go back to the nothings of the common dead. There is no

malign there, see, and so it make hard that I must kill her in her sleep.” This turned my blood cold, and it began to dawn upon me that I was accepting Van

Helsing’s theories; but if she were really dead, what was there of terror in the idea of killing her? He looked up at me, and evidently saw the change in my face, for he said almost joyously:—

“Ah, you believe now?”

I answered: “Do not press me too hard all at once. I am willing to accept.

How will you do this bloody work?”

“I shall cut off her head and fill her mouth with garlic, and I shall drive a stake through her body.” It made me shudder to think of so mutilating the body

of the woman whom I had loved. And yet the feeling was not so strong as I had

expected. I was, in fact, beginning to shudder at the presence of this being, this

Un-Dead, as Van Helsing called it, and to loathe it. Is it possible that love is all

subjective, or all objective?

I waited a considerable time for Van Helsing to begin, but he stood as if wrapped in thought. Presently he closed the catch of his bag with a snap, and said:—

“I have been thinking, and have made up my mind as to what is best. If I did

simply follow my inclining I would do now, at this moment, what is to be done;

but there are other things to follow, and things that are thousand times more difficult in that them we do not know. This is simple. She have yet no life taken,

though that is of time; and to act now would be to take danger from her for ever.

But then we may have to want Arthur, and how shall we tell him of this? If you,

who saw the wounds on Lucy’s throat, and saw the wounds so similar on the child’s at the hospital; if you, who saw the coffin empty last night and full to-day

with a woman who have not change only to be more rose and more beautiful in a whole week, after she die—if you know of this and know of the white figure last

night that brought the child to the churchyard, and yet of your own senses you

did not believe, how, then, can I expect Arthur, who know none of those things,

to believe? He doubted me when I took him from her kiss when she was dying. I

know he has forgiven me because in some mistaken idea I have done things that

prevent him say good-bye as he ought; and he may think that in some more

mistaken idea this woman was buried alive; and that in most mistake of all we

have killed her. He will then argue back that it is we, mistaken ones, that have

killed her by our ideas; and so he will be much unhappy always. Yet he never can be sure; and that is the worst of all. And he will sometimes think that she he

loved was buried alive, and that will paint his dreams with horrors of what she

must have suffered; and again, he will think that we may be right, and that his so

beloved was, after all, an Un-Dead. No! I told him once, and since then I learn

much. Now, since I know it is all true, a hundred thousand times more do I know

that he must pass through the bitter waters to reach the sweet. He, poor fellow,

must have one hour that will make the very face of heaven grow black to him;

then we can act for good all round and send him peace. My mind is made up. Let

us go. You return home for to-night to your asylum, and see that all be well. As

for me, I shall spend the night here in this churchyard in my own way. To-morrow night you will come to me to the Berkeley Hotel at ten of the clock. I

shall send for Arthur to come too, and also that so fine young man of America

that gave his blood. Later we shall all have work to do. I come with you so far as

Piccadilly and there dine, for I must be back here before the sun set."

So we locked the tomb and came away, and got over the wall of the

churchyard, which was not much of a task, and drove back to Piccadilly.

Note left by Van Helsing in his portmanteau, Berkeley Hotel directed to John

Seward, M. D.

(Not delivered.)

"*27 September.*

"Friend John,—

"I write this in case anything should happen. I go alone to watch in that churchyard. It pleases me that the Un-Dead, Miss Lucy, shall not leave to-night,

that so on the morrow night she may be more eager. Therefore I shall fix some

things she like not—garlic and a crucifix—and so seal up the door of the tomb.

She is young as Un-Dead, and will heed. Moreover, these are only to prevent her

coming out; they may not prevail on her wanting to get in; for then the Un-Dead

is desperate, and must find the line of least resistance, whatsoever it may be. I shall be at hand all the night from sunset till after the sunrise, and if there be aught that may be learned I shall learn it. For Miss Lucy or from her, I have no

fear; but that other to whom is there that she is Un-Dead, he have now the power

to seek her tomb and find shelter. He is cunning, as I know from Mr. Jonathan

and from the way that all along he have fooled us when he played with us for Miss Lucy’s life, and we lost; and in many ways the Un-Dead are strong. He have always the strength in his hand of twenty men; even we four who gave our

strength to Miss Lucy it also is all to him. Besides, he can summon his wolf and

I know not what. So if it be that he come thither on this night he shall find me;

but none other shall—until it be too late. But it may be that he will not attempt

the place. There is no reason why he should; his hunting ground is more full of

game than the churchyard where the Un-Dead woman sleep, and the one old

man watch.

“Therefore I write this in case.... Take the papers that are with this, the diaries

of Harker and the rest, and read them, and then find this great Un-Dead, and cut

off his head and burn his heart or drive a stake through it, so that the world may

rest from him.

“If it be so, farewell.

“VAN HELSING.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

28 September. —It is wonderful what a good night’s sleep will do for one.

Yesterday I was almost willing to accept Van Helsing’s monstrous ideas; but now

they seem to start out lurid before me as outrages on common sense. I have no

doubt that he believes it all. I wonder if his mind can have become in any way

unhinged. Surely there must be *some* rational explanation of all these mysterious things. Is it possible that the Professor can have done it himself? He is so abnormally clever that if he went off his head he would carry out his intent with

regard to some fixed idea in a wonderful way. I am loath to think it, and indeed it

would be almost as great a marvel as the other to find that Van Helsing was mad;

but anyhow I shall watch him carefully. I may get some light on the mystery.

29 September, morning. .... Last night, at a little before ten o’clock, Arthur and Quincey came into Van Helsing’s room; he told us all that he wanted us to do,

but especially addressing himself to Arthur, as if all our wills were centred in his.

He began by saying that he hoped we would all come with him too, “for,” he said, “there is a grave duty to be done there. You were doubtless surprised at my

letter?” This query was directly addressed to Lord Godalming.

“I was. It rather upset me for a bit. There has been so much trouble around my house of late that I could do without any more. I have been curious, too, as to

what you mean. Quincey and I talked it over; but the more we talked, the more

puzzled we got, till now I can say for myself that I’m about up a tree as to any

meaning about anything.”

“Me too,” said Quincey Morris laconically.

“Oh,” said the Professor, “then you are nearer the beginning, both of you,

than friend John here, who has to go a long way back before he can even get so

far as to begin.”

It was evident that he recognised my return to my old doubting frame of mind

without my saying a word. Then, turning to the other two, he said with intense

gravity:—

“I want your permission to do what I think good this night. It is, I know, much to ask; and when you know what it is I propose to do you will know, and

only then, how much. Therefore may I ask that you promise me in the dark, so

that afterwards, though you may be angry with me for a time—I must not

disguise from myself the possibility that such may be—you shall not blame

yourselves for anything.”

“That’s frank anyhow,” broke in Quincey. “I’ll answer for the Professor. I

don’t quite see his drift, but I swear he’s honest; and that’s good enough for me.”

“I thank you, sir,” said Van Helsing proudly. “I have done myself the honour

of counting you one trusting friend, and such endorsement is dear to me.” He held out a hand, which Quincey took.

Then Arthur spoke out:—

“Dr. Van Helsing, I don’t quite like to ‘buy a pig in a poke,’ as they say in Scotland, and if it be anything in which my honour as a gentleman or my faith as

a Christian is concerned, I cannot make such a promise. If you can assure me that what you intend does not violate either of these two, then I give my consent

at once; though for the life of me, I cannot understand what you are driving at."

"I accept your limitation," said Van Helsing, "and all I ask of you is that if you feel it necessary to condemn any act of mine, you will first consider it well

and be satisfied that it does not violate your reservations."

"Agreed!" said Arthur; "that is only fair. And now that the *pourparlers* are over, may I ask what it is we are to do?"

"I want you to come with me, and to come in secret, to the churchyard at Kingstead."

Arthur's face fell as he said in an amazed sort of way:—

"Where poor Lucy is buried?" The Professor bowed. Arthur went on: "And

when there?"

"To enter the tomb!" Arthur stood up.

"Professor, are you in earnest; or it is some monstrous joke? Pardon me, I see

that you are in earnest." He sat down again, but I could see that he sat firmly and

proudly, as one who is on his dignity. There was silence until he asked again:—

"And when in the tomb?"

"To open the coffin."

“This is too much!” he said, angrily rising again. “I am willing to be patient

in all things that are reasonable; but in this—this desecration of the grave—of one who——” He fairly choked with indignation. The Professor looked

pityingly at him.

“If I could spare you one pang, my poor friend,” he said, “God knows I

would. But this night our feet must tread in thorny paths; or later, and for ever,

the feet you love must walk in paths of flame!”

Arthur looked up with set white face and said:—

“Take care, sir, take care!”

“Would it not be well to hear what I have to say?” said Van Helsing. “And then you will at least know the limit of my purpose. Shall I go on?”

“That’s fair enough,” broke in Morris.

After a pause Van Helsing went on, evidently with an effort:—

“Miss Lucy is dead; is it not so? Yes! Then there can be no wrong to her. But

if she be not dead——”

Arthur jumped to his feet.

“Good God!” he cried. “What do you mean? Has there been any mistake; has

she been buried alive?” He groaned in anguish that not even hope could soften.

“I did not say she was alive, my child; I did not think it. I go no further than

to say that she might be Un-Dead.”

“Un-Dead! Not alive! What do you mean? Is this all a nightmare, or what is

it?”

“There are mysteries which men can only guess at, which age by age they

may solve only in part. Believe me, we are now on the verge of one. But I have

not done. May I cut off the head of dead Miss Lucy?”

“Heavens and earth, no!” cried Arthur in a storm of passion. “Not for the

wide world will I consent to any mutilation of her dead body. Dr. Van Helsing, you try me too far. What have I done to you that you should torture me so? What

did that poor, sweet girl do that you should want to cast such dishonour on her

grave? Are you mad that speak such things, or am I mad to listen to them? Don’t

dare to think more of such a desecration; I shall not give my consent to anything

you do. I have a duty to do in protecting her grave from outrage; and, by God, I

shall do it!”

Van Helsing rose up from where he had all the time been seated, and said, gravely and sternly:—

“My Lord Godalming, I, too, have a duty to do, a duty to others, a duty to you, a duty to the dead; and, by God, I shall do it! All I ask you now is that you

come with me, that you look and listen; and if when later I make the same request you do not be more eager for its fulfilment even than I am, then—then I

shall do my duty, whatever it may seem to me. And then, to follow of your Lordship’s wishes I shall hold myself at your disposal to render an account to you, when and where you will.” His voice broke a little, and he went on with a

voice full of pity:—

“But, I beseech you, do not go forth in anger with me. In a long life of acts

which were often not pleasant to do, and which sometimes did wring my heart, I

have never had so heavy a task as now. Believe me that if the time comes for you

to change your mind towards me, one look from you will wipe away all this so

sad hour, for I would do what a man can to save you from sorrow. Just think. For

why should I give myself so much of labour and so much of sorrow? I have come here from my own land to do what I can of good; at the first to please my

friend John, and then to help a sweet young lady, whom, too, I came to love. For

her—I am ashamed to say so much, but I say it in kindness—I gave what you gave; the blood of my veins; I gave it, I, who was not, like you, her lover, but only her physician and her friend. I gave to her my nights and days—before death, after death; and if my death can do her good even now, when she is the

dead Un-Dead, she shall have it freely.” He said this with a very grave, sweet pride, and Arthur was much affected by it. He took the old man’s hand and said

in a broken voice:—

“Oh, it is hard to think of it, and I cannot understand; but at least I shall go

with you and wait.”

CHAPTER XVI

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY— *continued*

IT was just a quarter before twelve o’clock when we got into the churchyard over

the low wall. The night was dark with occasional gleams of moonlight between

the rents of the heavy clouds that scudded across the sky. We all kept somehow

close together, with Van Helsing slightly in front as he led the way. When we had come close to the tomb I looked well at Arthur, for I feared that the proximity to a place laden with so sorrowful a memory would upset him; but he

bore himself well. I took it that the very mystery of the proceeding was in some

way a counteractant to his grief. The Professor unlocked the door, and seeing a

natural hesitation amongst us for various reasons, solved the difficulty by

entering first himself. The rest of us followed, and he closed the door. He then lit

a dark lantern and pointed to the coffin. Arthur stepped forward hesitatingly; Van

Helsing said to me:—

“You were with me here yesterday. Was the body of Miss Lucy in that

coffin?”

“It was.” The Professor turned to the rest saying:—

“You hear; and yet there is no one who does not believe with me.” He took

his screwdriver and again took off the lid of the coffin. Arthur looked on, very

pale but silent; when the lid was removed he stepped forward. He evidently did

not know that there was a leaden coffin, or, at any rate, had not thought of it.

When he saw the rent in the lead, the blood rushed to his face for an instant, but

as quickly fell away again, so that he remained of a ghastly whiteness; he was still silent. Van Helsing forced back the leaden flange, and we all looked in and

recoiled.

The coffin was empty!

For several minutes no one spoke a word. The silence was broken by

Quincey Morris:—

“Professor, I answered for you. Your word is all I want. I wouldn’t ask such a

thing ordinarily—I wouldn’t so dishonour you as to imply a doubt; but this is a

mystery that goes beyond any honour or dishonour. Is this your doing?”

“I swear to you by all that I hold sacred that I have not removed nor touched

her. What happened was this: Two nights ago my friend Seward and I came here

—with good purpose, believe me. I opened that coffin, which was then sealed up, and we found it, as now, empty. We then waited, and saw something white

come through the trees. The next day we came here in day-time, and she lay there. Did she not, friend John?”

“Yes.”

“That night we were just in time. One more so small child was missing, and

we find it, thank God, unharmed amongst the graves. Yesterday I came here

before sundown, for at sundown the Un-Dead can move. I waited here all the night till the sun rose, but I saw nothing. It was most probable that it was because I had laid over the clamps of those doors garlic, which the Un-Dead cannot bear, and other things which they shun. Last night there was no exodus,

so to-night before the sundown I took away my garlic and other things. And so it

is we find this coffin empty. But bear with me. So far there is much that is strange. Wait you with me outside, unseen and unheard, and things much

stranger are yet to be. So”—here he shut the dark slide of his lantern—“now to

the outside.” He opened the door, and we filed out, he coming last and locking

the door behind him.

Oh! but it seemed fresh and pure in the night air after the terror of that vault.

How sweet it was to see the clouds race by, and the passing gleams of the moonlight between the scudding clouds crossing and passing—like the gladness

and sorrow of a man's life; how sweet it was to breathe the fresh air, that had no

taint of death and decay; how humanising to see the red lighting of the sky beyond the hill, and to hear far away the muffled roar that marks the life of a great city. Each in his own way was solemn and overcome. Arthur was silent, and was, I could see, striving to grasp the purpose and the inner meaning of the

mystery. I was myself tolerably patient, and half inclined again to throw aside doubt and to accept Van Helsing's conclusions. Quincey Morris was phlegmatic

in the way of a man who accepts all things, and accepts them in the spirit of cool

bravery, with hazard of all he has to stake. Not being able to smoke, he cut himself a good-sized plug of tobacco and began to chew. As to Van Helsing, he

was employed in a definite way. First he took from his bag a mass of what looked like thin, wafer-like biscuit, which was carefully rolled up in a white napkin; next he took out a double-handful of some whitish stuff, like dough or

putty. He crumbled the wafer up fine and worked it into the mass between his hands. This he then took, and rolling it into thin strips, began to lay them into the

crevices between the door and its setting in the tomb. I was somewhat puzzled at

this, and being close, asked him what it was that he was doing. Arthur and Quincey drew near also, as they too were curious. He answered:—

“I am closing the tomb, so that the Un-Dead may not enter.”

“And is that stuff you have put there going to do it?” asked Quincey. “Great

Scott! Is this a game?”

“It is.”

“What is that which you are using?” This time the question was by Arthur.

Van Helsing reverently lifted his hat as he answered:—

“The Host. I brought it from Amsterdam. I have an Indulgence.” It was an

answer that appalled the most sceptical of us, and we felt individually that in the

presence of such earnest purpose as the Professor’s, a purpose which could thus

use the to him most sacred of things, it was impossible to distrust. In respectful

silence we took the places assigned to us close round the tomb, but hidden from

the sight of any one approaching. I pitied the others, especially Arthur. I had myself been apprenticed by my

former visits to this watching horror; and yet I,

who had up to an hour ago repudiated the proofs, felt my heart sink within me.

Never did tombs look so ghastly white; never did cypress, or yew, or juniper so

seem the embodiment of funereal gloom; never did tree or grass wave or rustle

so ominously; never did bough creak so mysteriously; and never did the far-

away howling of dogs send such a woeful presage through the night.

There was a long spell of silence, a big, aching void, and then from the

Professor a keen “S-s-s-s!” He pointed; and far down the avenue of yews we saw

a white figure advance—a dim white figure, which held something dark at its breast. The figure stopped, and at the moment a ray of moonlight fell upon the

masses of driving clouds and showed in startling prominence a dark-haired

woman, dressed in the cerements of the grave. We could not see the face, for it

was bent down over what we saw to be a fair-haired child. There was a pause and a sharp little cry, such as a child gives in sleep, or a dog as it lies before the

fire and dreams. We were starting forward, but the Professor’s warning hand, seen by us as he stood behind a yew-tree, kept us back; and then as we looked

the white figure moved forwards again. It was now near enough for us to see clearly, and the moonlight still held. My own heart grew cold as ice, and I could

hear the gasp of Arthur, as we recognised the features of Lucy Westenra. Lucy

Westenra, but yet how changed. The sweetness was turned to adamantine,

heartless cruelty, and the purity to voluptuous wantonness. Van Helsing stepped

out, and, obedient to his gesture, we all advanced too; the four of us ranged in a

line before the door of the tomb. Van Helsing raised his lantern and drew the slide; by the concentrated light that fell on Lucy’s face we could see that the lips

were crimson with fresh blood, and that the stream had trickled over her chin and stained the purity of her lawn death-robe.

We shuddered with horror. I could see by the tremulous light that even Van Helsing’s iron nerve had failed. Arthur was next to me, and if I had not seized

his arm and held him up, he would have fallen.

When Lucy—I call the thing that was before us Lucy because it bore her

shape—saw us she drew back with an angry snarl, such as a cat gives when

taken unawares; then her eyes ranged over us. Lucy’s eyes in form and colour;

but Lucy’s eyes unclean and full of hell-fire, instead of the pure, gentle orbs we

knew. At that moment the remnant of my love passed into hate and loathing; had

she then to be killed, I could have done it with savage delight. As she looked, her

eyes blazed with unholy light, and the face became wreathed with a voluptuous

smile. Oh, God, how it made me shudder to see it! With a careless motion, she

flung to the ground, callous as a devil, the child that up to now she had clutched

strenuously to her breast, growling over it as a dog growls over a bone. The child

gave a sharp cry, and lay there moaning. There was a cold-bloodedness in the act

which wrung a groan from Arthur; when she advanced to him with outstretched

arms and a wanton smile he fell back and hid his face in his hands.

She still advanced, however, and with a languorous, voluptuous grace, said:

—

“Come to me, Arthur. Leave these others and come to me. My arms are

hungry for you. Come, and we can rest together. Come, my husband, come!”

There was something diabolically sweet in her tones—something of the

tingling of glass when struck—which rang through the brains even of us who

heard the words addressed to another. As for Arthur, he seemed under a spell; moving his hands from his face, he opened wide his arms. She was leaping for

them, when Van Helsing sprang forward and held between them his little golden

crucifix. She recoiled from it, and, with a suddenly distorted face, full of rage, dashed past him as if to enter the tomb.

When within a foot or two of the door, however, she stopped, as if arrested by

some irresistible force. Then she turned, and her face was shown in the clear burst of moonlight and by the lamp, which had now no quiver from Van

Helsing’s iron nerves. Never did I see such baffled malice on a face; and never, I

trust, shall such ever be seen again by mortal eyes. The beautiful colour became

livid, the eyes seemed to throw out sparks of hell-fire, the brows were wrinkled

as though the folds of the flesh were the coils of Medusa’s snakes, and the lovely, blood-stained mouth grew to an open square, as in the passion masks of

the Greeks and Japanese. If ever a face meant death—if looks could kill—we

saw it at that moment.

And so for full half a minute, which seemed an eternity, she remained

between the lifted crucifix and the sacred closing of her means of entry. Van Helsing broke the silence by asking Arthur:—

“Answer me, oh my friend! Am I to proceed in my work?”

Arthur threw himself on his knees, and hid his face in his hands, as he

answered:—

“Do as you will, friend; do as you will. There can be no horror like this ever

any more;” and he groaned in spirit. Quincey and I simultaneously moved

towards him, and took his arms. We could hear the click of the closing lantern as

Van Helsing held it down; coming close to the tomb, he began to remove from

the chinks some of the sacred emblem which he had placed there. We all looked

on in horrified amazement as we saw, when he stood back, the woman, with a corporeal body as real at that moment as our own, pass in through the interstice

where scarce a knife-blade could have gone. We all felt a glad sense of relief when we saw the Professor calmly restoring the strings of putty to the edges of

the door.

When this was done, he lifted the child and said:

“Come now, my friends; we can do no more till to-morrow. There is a funeral

at noon, so here we shall all come before long after that. The friends of the dead

will all be gone by two, and when the sexton lock the gate we shall remain. Then

there is more to do; but not like this of to-night. As for this little one, he is not

much harm, and by to-morrow night he shall be well. We shall leave him where

the police will find him, as on the other night; and then to home.” Coming close

to Arthur, he said:—

“My friend Arthur, you have had a sore trial; but after, when you look back,

you will see how it was necessary. You are now in the bitter waters, my child. By

this time to-morrow you will, please God, have passed them, and have drunk of

the sweet waters; so do not mourn overmuch. Till then I shall not ask you to forgive me.”

Arthur and Quincey came home with me, and we tried to cheer each other on

the way. We had left the child in safety, and were tired; so we all slept with more

or less reality of sleep.

29 September, night. —A little before twelve o’clock we three—Arthur,

Quincey Morris, and myself—called for the Professor. It was odd to notice that

by common consent we had all put on black clothes. Of course, Arthur wore

black, for he was in deep mourning, but the rest of us wore it by instinct. We got

to the churchyard by half-past one, and strolled about, keeping out of official

observation, so that when the gravediggers had completed their task and the sexton under the belief that every one had gone, had locked the gate, we had the

place all to ourselves. Van Helsing, instead of his little black bag, had with him a

long leather one, something like a cricketing bag; it was manifestly of fair weight.

When we were alone and had heard the last of the footsteps die out up the road, we silently, and as if by ordered intention, followed the Professor to the tomb. He unlocked the door, and we entered, closing it behind us. Then he took

from his bag the lantern, which he lit, and also two wax candles, which, when lighted, he stuck, by melting their own ends, on other coffins, so that they might

give light sufficient to work by. When he again lifted the lid off Lucy’s coffin we

all looked—Arthur trembling like an aspen—and saw that the body lay there in

all its death-beauty. But there was no love in my own heart, nothing but loathing

for the foul Thing which had taken Lucy’s shape without her soul. I could see even Arthur’s face grow hard as he looked. Presently he said to Van Helsing:—

“Is this really Lucy’s body, or only a demon in her shape?”

“It is her body, and yet not it. But wait a while, and you all see her as she was, and is.”

She seemed like a nightmare of Lucy as she lay there; the pointed teeth, the

bloodstained, voluptuous mouth—which it made one shudder to see—the whole

carnal and unspiritual appearance, seeming like a devilish mockery of Lucy’s

sweet purity. Van Helsing, with his usual methodicalness, began taking the

various contents from his bag and placing them ready for use. First he took out a

soldering iron and some plumbing solder, and then a small oil-lamp, which gave

out, when lit in a corner of the tomb, gas which burned at fierce heat with a blue

flame; then his operating knives, which he placed to hand; and last a round wooden stake, some two and a half or three inches thick and about three feet long. One end of it was hardened by charring in the fire, and was sharpened to a

fine point. With this stake came a heavy hammer, such as in households is used

in the coal-cellar for breaking the lumps. To me, a doctor’s preparations for work

of any kind are stimulating and bracing, but the effect of these things on both Arthur and Quincey was to cause them a sort of consternation. They both,

however, kept their courage, and remained silent and quiet.

When all was ready, Van Helsing said:—

“Before we do anything, let me tell you this; it is out of the lore and

experience of the ancients and of all those who have studied the powers of the

Un-Dead. When they become such, there comes with the change the curse of

immortality; they cannot die, but must go on age after age adding new victims

and multiplying the evils of the world; for all that die from the preying of the Un-Dead becomes themselves Un-Dead, and prey on their kind. And so the

circle goes on ever widening, like as the ripples from a stone thrown in the water. Friend Arthur, if you had met that kiss which you know of before poor Lucy die; or again, last night when you open your arms to her, you would in time, when you had died, have become *nosferatu*, as they call it in Eastern Europe, and would all time make more of those Un-Deads that so have fill us with horror. The career of this so unhappy dear lady is but just begun. Those children whose blood she suck are not as yet so much the worse; but if she live

on, Un-Dead, more and more they lose their blood and by her power over them

they come to her; and so she draw their blood with that so wicked mouth. But if

she die in truth, then all cease; the tiny wounds of the throats disappear, and they

go back to their plays unknowing ever of what has been. But of the most blessed

of all, when this now Un-Dead be made to rest as true dead, then the soul of the

poor lady whom we love shall again be free. Instead of working wickedness by

night and growing more debased in the assimilating of it by day, she shall take

her place with the other Angels. So that, my friend, it will be a blessed hand for

her that shall strike the blow that sets her free. To this I am willing; but is there

none amongst us who has a better right? Will it be no joy to think of hereafter in

the silence of the night when sleep is not: ‘It was my hand that sent her to the stars; it was the hand of him that loved her best; the hand that of all she would

herself have chosen, had it been to her to choose?’ Tell me if there be such a one

amongst us?”

We all looked at Arthur. He saw, too, what we all did, the infinite kindness which suggested that his should be the hand which would restore Lucy to us as a

holy, and not an unholy, memory; he stepped forward and said bravely, though his hand trembled, and his face was as pale as snow:—

“My true friend, from the bottom of my broken heart I thank you. Tell me

what I am to do, and I shall not falter!” Van Helsing laid a hand on his shoulder,

and said:—

“Brave lad! A moment’s courage, and it is done. This stake must be driven

through her. It will be a fearful ordeal—be not deceived in that—but it will be only a short time, and you will then rejoice more than your pain was great; from

this grim tomb you will emerge as though you tread on air. But you must not falter when once you have begun. Only think that we, your true friends, are round you, and that we pray for you all the time.”

“Go on,” said Arthur hoarsely. “Tell me what I am to do.”

“Take this stake in your left hand, ready to place the point over the heart, and

the hammer in your right. Then when we begin our prayer for the dead—I shall

read him, I have here the book, and the others shall follow—strike in God’s name, that so all may be well with the dead that we love and that the Un-Dead

pass away.”

Arthur took the stake and the hammer, and when once his mind was set on

action his hands never trembled nor even quivered. Van Helsing opened his

missal and began to read, and Quincey and I followed as well as we could.

Arthur placed the point over the heart, and as I looked I could see its dint in the

white flesh. Then he struck with all his might.

The Thing in the coffin writhed; and a hideous, blood-curdling screech came

from the opened red lips. The body shook and quivered and twisted in wild

contortions; the sharp white teeth champed together till the lips were cut, and the

mouth was smeared with a crimson foam. But Arthur never faltered. He looked

like a figure of Thor as his untrembling arm rose and fell, driving deeper and deeper the mercy-bearing stake, whilst the blood from the pierced heart welled

and spurted up around it. His face was set, and high duty seemed to shine through it; the sight of it gave us courage so that our voices seemed to ring through the little vault.

And then the writhing and quivering of the body became less, and the teeth

seemed to champ, and the face to quiver. Finally it lay still. The terrible task was

over.

The hammer fell from Arthur’s hand. He reeled and would have fallen had

we not caught him. The great drops of sweat sprang from his forehead, and his breath came in broken gasps. It had indeed been an awful strain on him; and had

he not been forced to his task by more than human considerations he could never

have gone through with it. For a few minutes we were so taken up with him that

we did not look towards the coffin. When we did, however, a murmur of startled

surprise ran from one to the other of us. We gazed so eagerly that Arthur rose,

for he had been seated on the ground, and came and looked too; and then a glad,

strange light broke over his face and dispelled altogether the gloom of horror that lay upon it.

There, in the coffin lay no longer the foul Thing that we had so dreaded and

grown to hate that the work of her destruction was yielded as a privilege to the

one best entitled to it, but Lucy as we had seen her in her life, with her face of

unequalled sweetness and purity. True that there were there, as we had seen them

in life, the traces of care and pain and waste; but these were all dear to us, for they marked her truth to what we knew. One and all we felt that the holy calm

that lay like sunshine over the wasted face and form was only an earthly token

and symbol of the calm that was to reign for ever.

Van Helsing came and laid his hand on Arthur’s shoulder, and said to him:—

“And now, Arthur my friend, dear lad, am I not forgiven?”

The reaction of the terrible strain came as he took the old man’s hand in his,

and raising it to his lips, pressed it, and said:—

“Forgiven! God bless you that you have given my dear one her soul again,

and me peace.” He put his hands on the Professor’s shoulder, and laying his head

on his breast, cried for a while silently, whilst we stood unmoving. When he raised his head Van Helsing said to him:—

“And now, my child, you may kiss her. Kiss her dead lips if you will, as she

would have you to, if for her to choose. For she is not a grinning devil now—not

any more a foul Thing for all eternity. No longer she is the devil’s Un-Dead. She

is God’s true dead, whose soul is with Him!”

Arthur bent and kissed her, and then we sent him and Quincey out of the

tomb; the Professor and I sawed the top off the stake, leaving the point of it in

the body. Then we cut off the head and filled the mouth with garlic. We soldered

up the leaden coffin, screwed on the coffin-lid, and gathering up our belongings,

came away. When the Professor locked the door he gave the key to Arthur.

Outside the air was sweet, the sun shone, and the birds sang, and it seemed as

if all nature were tuned to a different pitch. There was gladness and mirth and peace everywhere, for we were at rest ourselves on one account, and we were

glad, though it was with a tempered joy.

Before we moved away Van Helsing said:—

“Now, my friends, one step of our work is done, one the most harrowing to

ourselves. But there remains a greater task: to find out the author of all this our

sorrow and to stamp him out. I have clues which we can follow; but it is a long

task, and a difficult, and there is danger in it, and pain. Shall you not all help me?

We have learned to believe, all of us—is it not so? And since so, do we not see

our duty? Yes! And do we not promise to go on to the bitter end?”

Each in turn, we took his hand, and the promise was made. Then said the

Professor as we moved off:—

“Two nights hence you shall meet with me and dine together at seven of the

clock with friend John. I shall entreat two others, two that you know not as yet;

and I shall be ready to all our work show and our plans unfold. Friend John, you

come with me home, for I have much to consult about, and you can help me. To-

night I leave for Amsterdam, but shall return to-morrow night. And then begins

our great quest. But first I shall have much to say, so that you may know what is

to do and to dread. Then our promise shall be made to each other anew; for there

is a terrible task before us, and once our feet are on the ploughshare we must not

draw back.”

CHAPTER XVII

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY— *continued*

WHEN we arrived at the Berkeley Hotel, Van Helsing found a telegram waiting

for him:—

“Am coming up by train. Jonathan at Whitby. Important news.—MINA

HARKER.”

The Professor was delighted. “Ah, that wonderful Madam Mina,” he said,

“pearl among women! She arrive, but I cannot stay. She must go to your house,

friend John. You must meet her at the station. Telegraph her *en route*, so that she may be prepared.”

When the wire was despatched he had a cup of tea; over it he told me of a diary kept by Jonathan Harker when abroad, and gave me a typewritten copy of

it, as also of Mrs. Harker’s diary at Whitby. “Take these,” he said, “and study them well. When I have returned you will be master of all the facts, and we can

then better enter on our inquisition. Keep them safe, for there is in them much of

treasure. You will need all your faith, even you who have had such an experience

as that of to-day. What is here told,” he laid his hand heavily and gravely on the

packet of papers as he spoke, “may be the beginning of the end to you and me

and many another; or it may sound the knell of the Un-Dead who walk the earth.

Read all, I pray you, with the open mind; and if you can add in any way to the

story here told do so, for it is all-important. You have kept diary of all these so

strange things; is it not so? Yes! Then we shall go through all these together when we meet." He then made ready for his departure, and shortly after drove off to Liverpool Street. I took my way to Paddington, where I arrived about fifteen minutes before the train came in.

The crowd melted away, after the bustling fashion common to arrival

platforms; and I was beginning to feel uneasy, lest I might miss my guest, when

a sweet-faced, dainty-looking girl stepped up to me, and, after a quick glance, said: "Dr. Seward, is it not?"

"And you are Mrs. Harker!" I answered at once; whereupon she held out her

hand.

"I knew you from the description of poor dear Lucy; but——" She stopped

suddenly, and a quick blush overspread her face.

The blush that rose to my own cheeks somehow set us both at ease, for it was

a tacit answer to her own. I got her luggage, which included a typewriter, and we

took the Underground to Fenchurch Street, after I had sent a wire to my

housekeeper to have a sitting-room and bedroom prepared at once for Mrs.

Harker.

In due time we arrived. She knew, of course, that the place was a lunatic asylum, but I could see that she was unable to repress a shudder when we

entered.

She told me that, if she might, she would come presently to my study, as she

had much to say. So here I am finishing my entry in my phonograph diary whilst

I await her. As yet I have not had the chance of looking at the papers which Van

Helsing left with me, though they lie open before me. I must get her interested in

something, so that I may have an opportunity of reading them. She does not know how precious time is, or what a task we have in hand. I must be careful not

to frighten her. Here she is!

Mina Harker’s Journal.

29 September. —After I had tidied myself, I went down to Dr. Seward’s study.

At the door I paused a moment, for I thought I heard him talking with some one.

As, however, he had pressed me to be quick, I knocked at the door, and on his

calling out, “Come in,” I entered.

To my intense surprise, there was no one with him. He was quite alone, and

on the table opposite him was what I knew at once from the description to be a

phonograph. I had never seen one, and was much interested.

“I hope I did not keep you waiting,” I said; “but I stayed at the door as I heard

you talking, and thought there was some one with you.”

“Oh,” he replied with a smile, “I was only entering my diary.”

“Your diary?” I asked him in surprise.

“Yes,” he answered. “I keep it in this.” As he spoke he laid his hand on the

phonograph. I felt quite excited over it, and blurted out:—

“Why, this beats even shorthand! May I hear it say something?”

“Certainly,” he replied with alacrity, and stood up to put it in train for speaking. Then he paused, and a troubled look overspread his face.

“The fact is,” he began awkwardly, “I only keep my diary in it; and as it is entirely—almost entirely—about my cases, it may be awkward—that is, I mean

——” He stopped, and I tried to help him out of his embarrassment:—

“You helped to attend dear Lucy at the end. Let me hear how she died; for all that I know of her, I shall be very grateful. She was very, very dear to me.”

To my surprise, he answered, with a horrorstruck look in his face:—

“Tell you of her death? Not for the wide world!”

“Why not?” I asked, for some grave, terrible feeling was coming over me.

Again he paused, and I could see that he was trying to invent an excuse. At length he stammered out:—

“You see, I do not know how to pick out any particular part of the diary.”

Even while he was speaking an idea dawned upon him, and he said with

unconscious simplicity, in a different voice, and with the naïveté of a child:

“That’s quite true, upon my honour. Honest Indian!” I could not but smile, at which he grimaced. “I gave myself away

that time!” he said. “But do you know

that, although I have kept the diary for months past, it never once struck me how

I was going to find any particular part of it in case I wanted to look it up?” By

this time my mind was made up that the diary of a doctor who attended Lucy might have something to add to the sum of our knowledge of that terrible Being,

and I said boldly:—

“Then, Dr. Seward, you had better let me copy it out for you on my

typewriter.” He grew to a positively deathly pallor as he said:—

“No! no! no! For all the world, I wouldn’t let you know that terrible story!”

Then it was terrible; my intuition was right! For a moment I thought, and as

my eyes ranged the room, unconsciously looking for something or some

opportunity to aid me, they lit on a great batch of typewriting on the table. His

eyes caught the look in mine, and, without his thinking, followed their direction.

As they saw the parcel he realised my meaning.

“You do not know me,” I said. “When you have read those papers—my own

diary and my husband’s also, which I have typed—you will know me better. I have not faltered in giving every thought of my own heart in this cause; but, of

course, you do not know me—yet; and I must not expect you to trust me so far.”

He is certainly a man of noble nature; poor dear Lucy was right about him.

He stood up and opened a large drawer, in which were arranged in order a

number of hollow cylinders of metal covered with dark wax, and said:—

“You are quite right. I did not trust you because I did not know you. But I know you now; and let me say that I should have known you long ago. I know

that Lucy told you of me; she told me of you too. May I make the only

atonement in my power? Take the cylinders and hear them—the first half-dozen

of them are personal to me, and they will not horrify you; then you will know me

better. Dinner will by then be ready. In the meantime I shall read over some of these documents, and shall be better able to understand certain things.” He

carried the phonograph himself up to my sitting-room and adjusted it for me.

Now I shall learn something pleasant, I am sure; for it will tell me the other side

of a true love episode of which I know one side already....

Dr. Seward's Diary.

29 September. —I was so absorbed in that wonderful diary of Jonathan Harker

and that other of his wife that I let the time run on without thinking. Mrs. Harker

was not down when the maid came to announce dinner, so I said: "She is

possibly tired; let dinner wait an hour," and I went on with my work. I had just

finished Mrs. Harker's diary, when she came in. She looked sweetly pretty, but

very sad, and her eyes were flushed with crying. This somehow moved me

much. Of late I have had cause for tears, God knows! but the relief of them was

denied me; and now the sight of those sweet eyes, brightened with recent tears,

went straight to my heart. So I said as gently as I could:—

"I greatly fear I have distressed you."

“Oh, no, not distressed me,” she replied, “but I have been more touched than

I can say by your grief. That is a wonderful machine, but it is cruelly true. It told

me, in its very tones, the anguish of your heart. It was like a soul crying out to

Almighty God. No one must hear them spoken ever again! See, I have tried to be

useful. I have copied out the words on my typewriter, and none other need now

hear your heart beat, as I did.”

“No one need ever know, shall ever know,” I said in a low voice. She laid her

hand on mine and said very gravely:—

“Ah, but they must!”

“Must! But why?” I asked.

“Because it is a part of the terrible story, a part of poor dear Lucy’s death and

all that led to it; because in the struggle which we have before us to rid the earth

of this terrible monster we must have all the knowledge and all the help which

we can get. I think that the cylinders which you gave me contained more than you intended me to know; but I can see that there are in your record many lights

to this dark mystery. You will let me help, will you not? I know all up to a certain point; and I see already, though your diary only took me to 7 September,

how poor Lucy was beset, and how her terrible doom was being wrought out.

Jonathan and I have been working day and night since Professor Van Helsing

saw us. He is gone to Whitby to get more information, and he will be here to-morrow to help us. We need have no secrets amongst us; working together and

with absolute trust, we can surely be stronger than if some of us were in the dark." She looked at me so appealingly, and at the same time manifested such courage and resolution in her bearing, that I gave in at once to her wishes. "You

shall," I said, "do as you like in the matter. God forgive me if I do wrong! There

are terrible things yet to learn of; but if you have so far travelled on the road to

poor Lucy's death, you will not be content, I know, to remain in the dark. Nay,

the end—the very end—may give you a gleam of peace. Come, there is dinner.

We must keep one another strong for what is before us; we have a cruel and dreadful task. When you have eaten you shall learn the rest, and I shall answer

any questions you ask—if there be anything which you do not understand,

though it was apparent to us who were present.”

Mina Harker’s Journal.

29 September. —After dinner I came with Dr. Seward to his study. He brought

back the phonograph from my room, and I took my typewriter. He placed me in

a comfortable chair, and arranged the phonograph so that I could touch it without

getting up, and showed me how to stop it in case I should want to pause. Then he

very thoughtfully took a chair, with his back to me, so that I might be as free as

possible, and began to read. I put the forked metal to my ears and listened.

When the terrible story of Lucy’s death, and—and all that followed, was

done, I lay back in my chair powerless. Fortunately I am not of a fainting disposition. When Dr. Seward saw me he jumped up with a horrified

exclamation, and hurriedly taking a case-bottle from a cupboard, gave me some

brandy, which in a few minutes somewhat restored me. My brain was all in a whirl, and only that there came through all the multitude of horrors, the holy ray

of light that my dear, dear Lucy was at last at peace, I do not think I could have

borne it without making a scene. It is all so wild, and mysterious, and strange that if I had not known Jonathan’s experience in Transylvania I could not have

believed. As it was, I didn’t know what to believe, and so got out of my difficulty by attending to something else. I took the cover off my typewriter, and

said to Dr. Seward:—

“Let me write this all out now. We must be ready for Dr. Van Helsing when

he comes. I have sent a telegram to Jonathan to come on here when he arrives in

London from Whitby. In this matter dates are everything, and I think that if we

get all our material ready, and have every item put in chronological order, we shall have done much. You tell me that Lord Godalming and Mr. Morris are

coming too. Let us be able to tell him when they come.” He accordingly set the

phonograph at a slow pace, and I began to typewrite from the beginning of the

seventh cylinder. I used manifold, and so took three copies of the diary, just as I had done with all the rest. It was late when I got through, but Dr. Seward went

about his work of going his round of the patients; when he had finished he came

back and sat near me, reading, so that I did not feel too lonely whilst I worked.

How good and thoughtful he is; the world seems full of good men—even if there

are monsters in it. Before I left him I remembered what Jonathan put in his diary of the Professor’s perturbation at reading something in an evening paper at the station at Exeter; so, seeing that Dr. Seward keeps his newspapers, I borrowed the files of “The Westminster Gazette” and “The Pall Mall Gazette,” and took them to my room. I remember how much “The Dailygraph” and “The Whitby

Gazette,” of which I had made cuttings, helped us to understand the terrible events at Whitby when Count Dracula landed, so I shall look through the

evening papers since then, and perhaps I shall get some new light. I am not sleepy, and the work will help to keep me quiet.

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

30 September. —Mr. Harker arrived at nine o’clock. He had got his wife’s wire just before starting. He is uncommonly clever, if one can judge from his face, and full of energy. If this journal be true—and judging by one’s own wonderful experiences, it must be—he is also a man of great nerve. That going

down to the vault a second time was a remarkable piece of daring. After reading

his account of it I was prepared to meet a good specimen of manhood, but hardly

the quiet, business-like gentleman who came here to-day.

Later. —After lunch Harker and his wife went back to their own room, and as

I passed a while ago I heard the click of the typewriter. They are hard at it. Mrs.

Harker says that they are knitting together in chronological order every scrap of

evidence they have. Harker has got the letters between the consignee of the boxes at Whitby and the carriers in London who took charge of them. He is now

reading his wife’s typescript of my diary. I wonder what they make out of it.

Here it is....

Strange that it never struck me that the very next house might be the Count’s

hiding-place! Goodness knows that we had enough clues from the conduct of the

patient Renfield! The bundle of letters relating to the purchase of the house were

with the typescript. Oh, if we had only had them earlier we might have saved poor Lucy! Stop; that way madness lies! Harker has gone back, and is again collating his material. He says that by dinner-time they will be able to show a whole

connected narrative. He thinks that in the meantime I should see Renfield,

as hitherto he has been a sort of index to the coming and going of the Count. I hardly see this yet, but when I get at the dates I suppose I shall. What a good thing that Mrs. Harker put my cylinders into type! We never could have found the dates otherwise....

I found Renfield sitting placidly in his room with his hands folded, smiling benignly. At the moment he seemed as sane as any one I ever saw. I sat down and talked with him on a lot of subjects, all of which he treated naturally. He then, of his own accord, spoke of going home, a subject he has never mentioned

to my knowledge during his sojourn here. In fact, he spoke quite confidently of

getting his discharge at once. I believe that, had I not had the chat with Harker

and read the letters and the dates of his outbursts, I should have been prepared to

sign for him after a brief time of observation. As it is, I am darkly suspicious. All

those outbreaks were in some way linked with the proximity of the Count. What

then does this absolute content mean? Can it be that his instinct is satisfied as to

the vampire’s ultimate triumph? Stay; he is himself zoöphagous, and in his wild

ravings outside the chapel door of the deserted house he always spoke of

“master.” This all seems confirmation of our idea. However, after a while I came

away; my friend is just a little too sane at present to make it safe to probe him

too deep with questions. He might begin to think, and then —! So I came away. I

mistrust these quiet moods of his; so I have given the attendant a hint to look closely after him, and to have a strait-waistcoat ready in case of need.

Jonathan Harker’s Journal.

29 September, in train to London. —When I received Mr. Billington’s

courteous message that he would give me any information in his power I thought

it best to go down to Whitby and make, on the spot, such inquiries as I wanted. It

was now my object to trace that horrid cargo of the Count’s to its place in London. Later, we may be able to deal with it. Billington junior, a nice lad, met

me at the station, and brought me to his father’s house, where they had decided

that I must stay the night. They are hospitable, with true Yorkshire hospitality: give a guest everything, and leave him free to do as he likes. They all knew that I

was busy, and that my stay was short, and Mr. Billington had ready in his office

all the papers concerning the consignment of boxes. It gave me almost a turn to

see again one of the letters which I had seen on the Count’s table before I knew

of his diabolical plans. Everything had been carefully thought out, and done systematically and with precision. He seemed to have been prepared for every obstacle which might be placed by accident in the way of his intentions being carried out. To use an Americanism, he had “taken no chances,” and the absolute

accuracy with which his instructions were fulfilled, was simply the logical result

of his care. I saw the invoice, and took note of it: “Fifty cases of common earth, to be used for experimental purposes.” Also the copy of letter to Carter Paterson,

and their reply; of both of these I got copies. This was all the information Mr.

Billington could give me, so I went down to the port and saw the coastguards, the Customs officers and the harbour-master. They had all something to say of the strange entry of the ship, which is already taking its place in local tradition;

but no one could add to the simple description “Fifty cases of common earth.” I

then saw the station-master, who kindly put me in communication with the men

who had actually received the boxes. Their tally was exact with the list, and they

had nothing to add except that the boxes were “main and mortal heavy,” and that

shifting them was dry work. One of them added that it was hard lines that there

wasn’t any gentleman “such-like as yourself, squire,” to show some sort of

appreciation of their efforts in a liquid form; another put in a rider that the thirst

then generated was such that even the time which had elapsed had not

completely allayed it. Needless to add, I took care before leaving to lift, for ever

and adequately, this source of reproach.

30 September. —The station-master was good enough to give me a line to his

old companion the station-master at King’s Cross, so that when I arrived there in

the morning I was able to ask him about the arrival of the boxes. He, too, put me

at once in communication with the proper officials, and I saw that their tally was

correct with the original invoice. The opportunities of acquiring an abnormal thirst had been here limited; a noble use of them had, however, been made, and

again I was compelled to deal with the result in an *ex post facto* manner.

From thence I went on to Carter Paterson’s central office, where I met with

the utmost courtesy. They looked up the transaction in their day-book and letter-

book, and at once telephoned to their King’s Cross office for more details. By good fortune, the men who did the teaming were waiting for work, and the

official at once sent them over, sending also by one of them the way-bill and all

the papers connected with the delivery of the boxes at Carfax. Here again I found the tally agreeing exactly; the carriers’ men were able to supplement the paucity of the written words with a few details. These were, I shortly found, connected almost solely with the dusty nature of the job, and of the consequent

thirst engendered in the operators. On my affording an opportunity, through the

medium of the currency of the realm, of the allaying, at a later period, this beneficial evil, one of the men remarked:—

“That ’ere ’ouse, guv’nor, is the rummiest I ever was in. Blyme! but it ain’t

been touched sence a hundred years. There was dust that thick in the place that

you might have slep’ on it without ’urtin’ of yer bones; an’ the place was that neglected that yer might ’ave smelled ole

Jerusalem in it. But the ole chapel—

that took the cike, that did! Me and my mate, we thort we wouldn’t never git out

quick enough. Lor’, I wouldn’t take less nor a quid a moment to stay there arter

dark.”

Having been in the house, I could well believe him; but if he knew what I know, he would, I think, have raised his terms.

Of one thing I am now satisfied: that *all* the boxes which arrived at Whitby

from Varna in the *Demeter* were safely deposited in the old chapel at Carfax.

There should be fifty of them there, unless any have since been removed—as

from Dr. Seward’s diary I fear.

I shall try to see the carter who took away the boxes from Carfax when

Renfield attacked them. By following up this clue we may learn a good deal.

Later. —Mina and I have worked all day, and we have put all the papers into

order.

Mina Harker’s Journal

30 September. —I am so glad that I hardly know how to contain myself. It is, I

suppose, the reaction from the haunting fear which I have had: that this terrible

affair and the reopening of his old wound might act detrimentally on Jonathan. I

saw him leave for Whitby with as brave a face as I could, but I was sick with apprehension. The effort has, however, done him good. He was never so

resolute, never so strong, never so full of volcanic energy, as at present. It is just

as that dear, good Professor Van Helsing said: he is true grit, and he improves under strain that would kill a weaker nature. He came back full of life and hope

and determination; we have got everything in order for to-night. I feel myself quite wild with excitement. I suppose one ought to pity any thing so hunted as is

the Count. That is just it: this Thing is not human—not even beast. To read Dr.

Seward's account of poor Lucy's death, and what followed, is enough to dry up

the springs of pity in one's heart.

Later. —Lord Godalming and Mr. Morris arrived earlier than we expected. Dr.

Seward was out on business, and had taken Jonathan with him, so I had to see

them. It was to me a painful meeting, for it brought back all poor dear Lucy’s hopes of only a few months ago. Of course they had heard Lucy speak of me, and it seemed that Dr. Van Helsing, too, has been quite “blowing my trumpet,”

as Mr. Morris expressed it. Poor fellows, neither of them is aware that I know all

about the proposals they made to Lucy. They did not quite know what to say or do, as they were ignorant of the amount of my knowledge; so they had to keep

on neutral subjects. However, I thought the matter over, and came to the

conclusion that the best thing I could do would be to post them in affairs right up

to date. I knew from Dr. Seward’s diary that they had been at Lucy’s death—her

real death—and that I need not fear to betray any secret before the time. So I told

them, as well as I could, that I had read all the papers and diaries, and that my

husband and I, having typewritten them, had just finished putting them in order. I

gave them each a copy to read in the library. When Lord Godalming got his and

turned it over—it does make a pretty good pile—he said:—

“Did you write all this, Mrs. Harker?”

I nodded, and he went on:—

“I don’t quite see the drift of it; but you people are all so good and kind, and

have been working so earnestly and so energetically, that all I can do is to accept

your ideas blindfold and try to help you. I have had one lesson already in accepting facts that should make a man humble to the last hour of his life.

Besides, I know you loved my poor Lucy—” Here he turned away and covered

his face with his hands. I could hear the tears in his voice. Mr. Morris, with instinctive delicacy, just laid a hand for a moment on his shoulder, and then walked quietly out of the room. I suppose there is something in woman’s nature

that makes a man free to break down before her and express his feelings on the

tender or emotional side without feeling it derogatory to his manhood; for when

Lord Godalming found himself alone with me he sat down on the sofa and gave

way utterly and openly. I sat down beside him and took his hand. I hope he didn’t think it forward of me, and that if he ever thinks of it afterwards he never

will have such a thought. There I wrong him; I *know* he never will—he is too true a gentleman. I said to him, for I could see that his heart was breaking:—

“I loved dear Lucy, and I know what she was to you, and what you were to

her. She and I were like sisters; and now she is gone, will you not let me be like

a sister to you in your trouble? I know what sorrows you have had, though I cannot measure the depth of them. If sympathy and pity can help in your

affliction, won’t you let me be of some little service—for Lucy’s sake?”

In an instant the poor dear fellow was overwhelmed with grief. It seemed to

me that all that he had of late been suffering in silence found a vent at once. He

grew quite hysterical, and raising his open hands, beat his palms together in a perfect agony of grief. He stood up and then sat down again, and the tears rained

down his cheeks. I felt an infinite pity for him, and opened my arms

unthinkingly. With a sob he laid his head on my shoulder and cried like a

wearied child, whilst he shook with emotion.

We women have something of the mother in us that makes us rise above

smaller matters when the mother-spirit is invoked; I felt this big sorrowing man’s

head resting on me, as though it were that of the baby that some day may lie on

my bosom, and I stroked his hair as though he were my own child. I never thought at the time how strange it all was.

After a little bit his sobs ceased, and he raised himself with an apology, though he made no disguise of his emotion. He told me that for days and nights

past—weary days and sleepless nights—he had been unable to speak with any

one, as a man must speak in his time of sorrow. There was no woman whose sympathy could be given to him, or with whom, owing to the terrible

circumstance with which his sorrow was surrounded, he could speak freely. “I know now how I suffered,” he said, as he dried his eyes, “but I do not know even

yet—and none other can ever know—how much your sweet sympathy has been

to me to-day. I shall know better in time; and believe me that, though I am not

ungrateful now, my gratitude will grow with my understanding. You will let me

be like a brother, will you not, for all our lives—for dear Lucy’s sake?”

“For dear Lucy’s sake,” I said as we clasped hands. “Ay, and for your own sake,” he added, “for if a man’s esteem and gratitude are ever worth the winning,

you have won mine to-day. If ever the future should bring to you a time when you need a man’s help, believe me, you will not call in vain. God grant that no

such time may ever come to you to break the sunshine of your life; but if it should ever come, promise me that you will let me know." He was so earnest, and his sorrow was so fresh, that I felt it would comfort him, so I said:—

"I promise."

As I came along the corridor I saw Mr. Morris looking out of a window. He

turned as he heard my footsteps. "How is Art?" he said. Then noticing my red eyes, he went on: "Ah, I see you have been comforting him. Poor old fellow! he

needs it. No one but a woman can help a man when he is in trouble of the heart;

and he had no one to comfort him."

He bore his own trouble so bravely that my heart bled for him. I saw the manuscript in his hand, and I knew that when he read it he would realise how much I knew; so I said to him:—

"I wish I could comfort all who suffer from the heart. Will you let me be your

friend, and will you come to me for comfort if you need it? You will know, later

on, why I speak." He saw that I was in earnest, and stooping, took my hand, and

raising it to his lips, kissed it. It seemed but poor comfort to so brave and

unselfish a soul, and impulsively I bent over and kissed him. The tears rose in his eyes, and there was a momentary choking in his throat; he said quite calmly:

—

“Little girl, you will never regret that true-hearted kindness, so long as ever

you live!” Then he went into the study to his friend.

“Little girl!”—the very words he had used to Lucy, and oh, but he proved

himself a friend!

CHAPTER XVIII

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY

30 September. —I got home at five o’clock, and found that Godalming and Morris had not only arrived, but had already studied the transcript of the various

diaries and letters which Harker and his wonderful wife had made and arranged.

Harker had not yet returned from his visit to the carriers’ men, of whom Dr.

Hennessey had written to me. Mrs. Harker gave us a cup of tea, and I can honestly say that, for the first time since I have lived in it, this old house seemed

like *home*. When we had finished, Mrs. Harker said:—

“Dr. Seward, may I ask a favour? I want to see your patient, Mr. Renfield. Do

let me see him. What you have said of him in your diary interests me so much!”

She looked so appealing and so pretty that I could not refuse her, and there was

no possible reason why I should; so I took her with me. When I went into the room, I told the man that a lady would like to see him; to which he simply answered: “Why?”

“She is going through the house, and wants to see every one in it,” I

answered. “Oh, very well,” he said; “let her come in, by all means; but just wait

a minute till I tidy up the place.” His method of tidying was peculiar: he simply

swallowed all the flies and spiders in the boxes before I could stop him. It was

quite evident that he feared, or was jealous of, some interference. When he had

got through his disgusting task, he said cheerfully: “Let the lady come in,” and

sat down on the edge of his bed with his head down, but with his eyelids raised

so that he could see her as she entered. For a moment I thought that he might have some homicidal intent; I remembered how quiet he had been just before he

attacked me in my own study, and I took care to stand where I could seize him at

once if he attempted to make a spring at her. She came into the room with an easy gracefulness which would at once command the respect of any lunatic—for

easiness is one of the qualities mad people most respect. She walked over to him,

smiling pleasantly, and held out her hand.

“Good-evening, Mr. Renfield,” said she. “You see, I know you, for Dr.

Seward has told me of you.” He made no immediate reply, but eyed her all over

intently with a set frown on his face. This look gave way to one of wonder, which merged in doubt; then, to my intense astonishment, he said:—

“You’re not the girl the doctor wanted to marry, are you? You can’t be, you

know, for she’s dead.” Mrs. Harker smiled sweetly as she replied:—

“Oh no! I have a husband of my own, to whom I was married before I ever

saw Dr. Seward, or he me. I am Mrs. Harker.”

“Then what are you doing here?”

“My husband and I are staying on a visit with Dr. Seward.”

“Then don’t stay.”

“But why not?” I thought that this style of conversation might not be pleasant

to Mrs. Harker, any more than it was to me, so I joined in:—

“How did you know I wanted to marry any one?” His reply was simply

contemptuous, given in a pause in which he turned his eyes from Mrs. Harker to

me, instantly turning them back again:—

“What an asinine question!”

“I don’t see that at all, Mr. Renfield,” said Mrs. Harker, at once championing

me. He replied to her with as much courtesy and respect as he had shown

contempt to me:—

“You will, of course, understand, Mrs. Harker, that when a man is so loved and honoured as our host is, everything regarding him is of interest in our little

community. Dr. Seward is loved not only by his household and his friends, but

even by his patients, who, being some of them hardly in mental equilibrium, are

apt to distort causes and effects. Since I myself have been an inmate of a lunatic

asylum, I cannot but notice that the sophistic tendencies of some of its inmates

lean towards the errors of *non causa* and *ignoratio elenchi*.” I positively opened my eyes at this new development. Here

was my own pet lunatic—the most

pronounced of his type that I had ever met with—talking elemental philosophy,

and with the manner of a polished gentleman. I wonder if it was Mrs. Harker’s

presence which had touched some chord in his memory. If this new phase was spontaneous, or in any way due to her unconscious influence, she must have

some rare gift or power.

We continued to talk for some time; and, seeing that he was seemingly quite

reasonable, she ventured, looking at me questioningly as she began, to lead him

to his favourite topic. I was again astonished, for he addressed himself to the question with the impartiality of the completest sanity; he even took himself as

an example when he mentioned certain things.

“Why, I myself am an instance of a man who had a strange belief. Indeed, it

was no wonder that my friends were alarmed, and insisted on my being put

under control. I used to fancy that life was a positive and perpetual entity, and that by consuming a multitude of live things, no matter how low in the scale of

creation, one might indefinitely prolong life. At times I held the belief so strongly that I actually tried to take human life.

The doctor here will bear me out

that on one occasion I tried to kill him for the purpose of strengthening my vital

powers by the assimilation with my own body of his life through the medium of

his blood—relying, of course, upon the Scriptural phrase, ‘For the blood is the life.’ Though, indeed, the vendor of a certain nostrum has vulgarised the truism

to the very point of contempt. Isn’t that true, doctor?” I nodded assent, for I was

so amazed that I hardly knew what to either think or say; it was hard to imagine

that I had seen him eat up his spiders and flies not five minutes before. Looking

at my watch, I saw that I should go to the station to meet Van Helsing, so I told

Mrs. Harker that it was time to leave. She came at once, after saying pleasantly

to Mr. Renfield: “Good-bye, and I hope I may see you often, under auspices pleasanter to yourself,” to which, to my astonishment, he replied:—

“Good-bye, my dear. I pray God I may never see your sweet face again. May

He bless and keep you!”

When I went to the station to meet Van Helsing I left the boys behind me.

Poor Art seemed more cheerful than he has been since Lucy first took ill, and Quincey is more like his own bright self than he has been for many a long day.

Van Helsing stepped from the carriage with the eager nimbleness of a boy. He

saw me at once, and rushed up to me, saying:—

“Ah, friend John, how goes all? Well? So! I have been busy, for I come here

to stay if need be. All affairs are settled with me, and I have much to tell. Madam

Mina is with you? Yes. And her so fine husband? And Arthur and my friend

Quincey, they are with you, too? Good!”

As I drove to the house I told him of what had passed, and of how my own

diary had come to be of some use through Mrs. Harker’s suggestion; at which the Professor interrupted me:—

“Ah, that wonderful Madam Mina! She has man’s brain—a brain that a man

should have were he much gifted—and a woman’s heart. The good God

fashioned her for a purpose, believe me, when He made that so good

combination. Friend John, up to now fortune has made that woman of help to us;

after to-night she must not have to do with this so terrible affair. It is not good

that she run a risk so great. We men are determined—nay, are we not pledged?—

to destroy this monster; but it is no part for a woman. Even if she be not harmed,

her heart may fail her in so much and so many horrors; and hereafter she may suffer—both in waking, from her nerves, and in sleep, from her dreams. And, besides, she is young woman and not so long married; there may be other things

to think of some time, if not now. You tell me she has wrote all, then she must

consult with us; but to-morrow she say good-bye to this work, and we go alone."

I agreed heartily with him, and then I told him what we had found in his absence: that the house which Dracula had bought was the very next one to my

own. He was amazed, and a great concern seemed to come on him. "Oh that we

had known it before!" he said, "for then we might have reached him in time to

save poor Lucy. However, 'the milk that is spilt cries not out afterwards,' as you

say. We shall not think of that, but go on our way to the end." Then he fell into a

silence that lasted till we entered my own gateway. Before we went to prepare for dinner he said to Mrs. Harker:—

“I am told, Madam Mina, by my friend John that you and your husband have

put up in exact order all things that have been, up to this moment.”

“Not up to this moment, Professor,” she said impulsively, “but up to this

morning.”

“But why not up to now? We have seen hitherto how good light all the little

things have made. We have told our secrets, and yet no one who has told is the

worse for it.”

Mrs. Harker began to blush, and taking a paper from her pockets, she said:—

“Dr. Van Helsing, will you read this, and tell me if it must go in. It is my record of to-day. I too have seen the need of putting down at present everything,

however trivial; but there is little in this except what is personal. Must it go in?”

The Professor read it over gravely, and handed it back, saying:—

“It need not go in if you do not wish it; but I pray that it may. It can but make

your husband love you the more, and all us, your friends, more honour you—as

well as more esteem and love." She took it back with another blush and a bright

smile.

And so now, up to this very hour, all the records we have are complete and in

order. The Professor took away one copy to study after dinner, and before our meeting, which is fixed for nine o'clock. The rest of us have already read everything; so when we meet in the study we shall all be informed as to facts, and can arrange our plan of battle with this terrible and mysterious enemy.

Mina Harker's Journal.

30 September. —When we met in Dr. Seward's study two hours after dinner,

which had been at six o'clock, we unconsciously formed a sort of board or

committee. Professor Van Helsing took the head of the table, to which Dr.

Seward motioned him as he came into the room. He made me sit next to him on

his right, and asked me to act as secretary; Jonathan sat next to me. Opposite us

were Lord Godalming, Dr. Seward, and Mr. Morris—Lord Godalming being

next the Professor, and Dr. Seward in the centre. The Professor said:—

“I may, I suppose, take it that we are all acquainted with the facts that are in

these papers.” We all expressed assent, and he went on:—

“Then it were, I think good that I tell you something of the kind of enemy with which we have to deal. I shall then make known to you something of the history of this man, which has been ascertained for me. So we then can discuss

how we shall act, and can take our measure according.

“There are such beings as vampires; some of us have evidence that they exist.

Even had we not the proof of our own unhappy experience, the teachings and the

records of the past give proof enough for sane peoples. I admit that at the first I

was sceptic. Were it not that through long years I have train myself to keep an

open mind, I could not have believe until such time as that fact thunder on my

ear. ‘See! see! I prove; I prove.’ Alas! Had I known at the first what now I know

—nay, had I even guess at him—one so precious life had been spared to many of

us who did love her. But that is gone; and we must so work, that other poor souls

perish not, whilst we can save. The *nosferatu* do not die like the bee when he sting once. He is only stronger; and being stronger, have yet more power to work

evil. This vampire which is amongst us is of himself so strong in person as twenty men; he is of cunning more than mortal, for his cunning be the growth of

ages; he have still the aids of necromancy, which is, as his etymology imply, the

divination by the dead, and all the dead that he can come nigh to are for him at

command; he is brute, and more than brute; he is devil in callous, and the heart

of him is not; he can, within limitations, appear at will when, and where, and in

any of the forms that are to him; he can, within his range, direct the elements; the

storm, the fog, the thunder; he can command all the meaner things: the rat, and

the owl, and the bat—the moth, and the fox, and the wolf; he can grow and become small; and he can at times vanish and come unknown. How then are we

to begin our strike to destroy him? How shall we find his where; and having found it, how can we destroy? My friends, this is much; it is a terrible task that

we undertake, and there may be consequence to make the brave shudder. For if

we fail in this our fight he must surely win; and then where end we? Life is nothings; I heed him not. But to fail here, is not mere life or death. It is that we

become as him; that we henceforward become foul things of the night like him

—without heart or conscience, preying on the bodies and the souls of those we

love best. To us for ever are the gates of heaven shut; for who shall open them to

us again? We go on for all time abhorred by all; a blot on the face of God’s sunshine; an arrow in the side of Him who died for man. But we are face to face

with duty; and in such case must we shrink? For me, I say, no; but then I am old,

and life, with his sunshine, his fair places, his song of birds, his music and his love, lie far behind. You others are young. Some have seen sorrow; but there are

fair days yet in store. What say you?”

Whilst he was speaking, Jonathan had taken my hand. I feared, oh so much,

that the appalling nature of our danger was overcoming him when I saw his hand

stretch out; but it was life to me to feel its touch—so strong, so self-reliant, so

resolute. A brave man’s hand can speak for itself; it does not even need a woman’s love to hear its music.

When the Professor had done speaking my husband looked in my eyes, and I

in his; there was no need for speaking between us.

“I answer for Mina and myself,” he said.

“Count me in, Professor,” said Mr. Quincey Morris, laconically as usual.

“I am with you,” said Lord Godalming, “for Lucy’s sake, if for no other

reason.”

Dr. Seward simply nodded. The Professor stood up and, after laying his

golden crucifix on the table, held out his hand on either side. I took his right hand, and Lord Godalming his left; Jonathan held my right with his left and stretched across to Mr. Morris. So as we all took hands our solemn compact was

made. I felt my heart icy cold, but it did not even occur to me to draw back. We

resumed our places, and Dr. Van Helsing went on with a sort of cheerfulness which showed that the serious work had begun. It was to be taken as gravely, and in as businesslike a way, as any other transaction of life:—

“Well, you know what we have to contend against; but we, too, are not

without strength. We have on our side power of combination —a power denied to

the vampire kind; we have sources of science; we are free to act and think; and

the hours of the day and the night are ours equally. In fact, so far as our powers

extend, they are unfettered, and we are free to use them. We have self-devotion

in a cause, and an end to achieve which is not a selfish one. These things are much.

“Now let us see how far the general powers arrayed against us are restrict, and how the individual cannot. In fine, let us consider the limitations of the vampire in general, and of this one in particular.

“All we have to go upon are traditions and superstitions. These do not at the

first appear much, when the matter is one of life and death—nay of more than either life or death. Yet must we be satisfied; in the first place because we have

to be—no other means is at our control—and secondly, because, after all, these

things—tradition and superstition—are everything. Does not the belief in

vampires rest for others—though not, alas! for us—on them? A year ago which of us would have received such a possibility, in the midst of our scientific, sceptical, matter-of-fact nineteenth century? We even scouted a belief that we saw justified under our very eyes. Take it, then, that the vampire, and the belief

in his limitations and his cure, rest for the moment on the same base. For, let me

tell you, he is known everywhere that men have been. In old Greece, in old Rome; he flourish in Germany all over, in France, in India, even in the

Chernosese; and in China, so far from us in all ways, there even is he, and the

peoples fear him at this day. He have follow the wake of the berserker Icelander,

the devil-begotten Hun, the Slav, the Saxon, the Magyar. So far, then, we have all we may act upon; and let me tell you that very much of the beliefs are justified by what we have seen in our own so unhappy experience. The vampire

live on, and cannot die by mere passing of the time; he can flourish when that he

can fatten on the blood of the living. Even more, we have seen amongst us that

he can even grow younger; that his vital faculties grow strenuous, and seem as

though they refresh themselves when his special pabulum is plenty. But he

cannot flourish without this diet; he eat not as others. Even friend Jonathan, who

lived with him for weeks, did never see him to eat, never! He throws no shadow;

he make in the mirror no reflect, as again Jonathan observe. He has the strength

of many of his hand—witness again Jonathan when he shut the door against the

wolfs, and when he help him from the diligence too. He can transform himself to

wolf, as we gather from the ship arrival in Whitby, when he tear open the dog; he

can be as bat, as Madam Mina saw him on the window at Whitby, and as friend

John saw him fly from this so near house, and as my friend Quincey saw him at

the window of Miss Lucy. He can come in mist which he create—that noble

ship’s captain proved him of this; but, from what we know, the distance he can

make this mist is limited, and it can only be round himself. He come on

moonlight rays as elemental dust—as again Jonathan saw those sisters in the

castle of Dracula. He become so small—we ourselves saw Miss Lucy, ere she

was at peace, slip through a hairbreadth space at the tomb door. He can, when once he find his way, come out from anything or into anything, no matter how

close it be bound or even fused up with fire—solder you call it. He can see in the

dark—no small power this, in a world which is one half shut from the light. Ah,

but hear me through. He can do all these things, yet he is not free. Nay; he is even more prisoner than the slave of the galley, than the madman in his cell. He

cannot go where he lists; he who is not of nature has yet to obey some of nature's laws—why we know not. He may not enter anywhere at the first, unless

there be some one of the household who bid him to come; though afterwards he

can come as he please. His power ceases, as does that of all evil things, at the

coming of the day. Only at certain times can he have limited freedom. If he be not at the place whither he is bound, he can only change himself at noon or at exact sunrise or sunset. These things are we told, and in this record of ours we

have proof by inference. Thus, whereas he can do as he will within his limit, when he have his earth-home, his coffin-home, his hell-home, the place

unhallowed, as we saw when he went to the grave of the suicide at Whitby; still

at other time he can only change when the time come. It is said, too, that he can

only pass running water at the slack or the flood of the tide. Then there are things which so afflict him that he has no power, as the garlic that we know of;

and as for things sacred, as this symbol, my crucifix, that was amongst us even

now when we resolve, to them he is nothing, but in their presence he take his place far off and silent with respect. There are others, too, which I shall tell you

of, lest in our seeking we may need them. The branch of wild rose on his coffin

keep him that he move not from it; a sacred bullet fired into the coffin kill him so

that he be true dead; and as for the stake through him, we know already of its peace; or the cut-off head that giveth rest. We have seen it with our eyes.

“Thus when we find the habitation of this man-that-was, we can confine him

to his coffin and destroy him, if we obey what we know. But he is clever. I have

asked my friend Arminius, of Buda-Pesth University, to make his record; and, from all the means that are, he tell me of what he has been. He must, indeed, have been that Voivode Dracula who won his name against the Turk, over the great river on the very frontier of Turkey-land. If it be so, then was he no common man; for in that time, and for centuries after, he was spoken of as the

cleverest and the most cunning, as well as the bravest of the sons of the ‘land beyond the forest.’ That mighty brain and

that iron resolution went with him to

his grave, and are even now arrayed against us. The Draculas were, says

Arminius, a great and noble race, though now and again were scions who were

held by their coevals to have had dealings with the Evil One. They learned his

secrets in the Scholomance, amongst the mountains over Lake Hermanstadt,

where the devil claims the tenth scholar as his due. In the records are such words

as ‘stregoica’—witch, ‘ordog,’ and ‘pokol’—Satan and hell; and in one

manuscript this very Dracula is spoken of as ‘wampyr,’ which we all understand

too well. There have been from the loins of this very one great men and good women, and their graves make sacred the earth where alone this foulness can dwell. For it is not the least of its terrors that this evil thing is rooted deep in all good; in soil barren of holy memories it cannot rest.”

Whilst they were talking Mr. Morris was looking steadily at the window, and

he now got up quietly, and went out of the room. There was a little pause, and

then the Professor went on:—

“And now we must settle what we do. We have here much data, and we must

proceed to lay out our campaign. We know from the inquiry of Jonathan that from the castle to Whitby came fifty boxes of earth, all of which were delivered

at Carfax; we also know that at least some of these boxes have been removed. It

seems to me, that our first step should be to ascertain whether all the rest remain

in the house beyond that wall where we look to-day; or whether any more have

been removed. If the latter, we must trace——”

Here we were interrupted in a very startling way. Outside the house came the

sound of a pistol-shot; the glass of the window was shattered with a bullet, which, ricochetting from the top of the embrasure, struck the far wall of the room. I am afraid I am at heart a coward, for I shrieked out. The men all jumped

to their feet; Lord Godalming flew over to the window and threw up the sash. As

he did so we heard Mr. Morris’s voice without:—

“Sorry! I fear I have alarmed you. I shall come in and tell you about it.” A minute later he came in and said:—

“It was an idiotic thing of me to do, and I ask your pardon, Mrs. Harker, most

sincerely; I fear I must have frightened you terribly. But the fact is that whilst the

Professor was talking there came a big bat and sat on the window-sill. I have got

such a horror of the damned brutes from recent events that I cannot stand them,

and I went out to have a shot, as I have been doing of late of evenings, whenever

I have seen one. You used to laugh at me for it then, Art."

"Did you hit it?" asked Dr. Van Helsing.

"I don't know; I fancy not, for it flew away into the wood." Without saying

any more he took his seat, and the Professor began to resume his statement:—

"We must trace each of these boxes; and when we are ready, we must either

capture or kill this monster in his lair; or we must, so to speak, sterilise the earth, so that no more he can seek safety in it. Thus in the end we may find him in his

form of man between the hours of noon and sunset, and so engage with him

when he is at his most weak.

"And now for you, Madam Mina, this night is the end until all be well. You

are too precious to us to have such risk. When we part to-night, you no more must question. We shall tell you all in good time. We are men and are able to bear; but you must be our star and our hope, and we shall act all the more free

that you are not in the danger, such as we are."

All the men, even Jonathan, seemed relieved; but it did not seem to me good

that they should brave danger and, perhaps, lessen their safety—strength being

the best safety—through care of me; but their minds were made up, and, though it was a bitter pill for me to swallow, I could say nothing, save to accept their chivalrous care of me.

Mr. Morris resumed the discussion:—

"As there is no time to lose, I vote we have a look at his house right now.

Time is everything with him; and swift action on our part may save another victim."

I own that my heart began to fail me when the time for action came so close,

but I did not say anything, for I had a greater fear that if I appeared as a drag or a

hindrance to their work, they might even leave me out of their counsels

altogether. They have now gone off to Carfax, with means to get into the house.

Manlike, they had told me to go to bed and sleep; as if a woman can sleep when those she loves are in danger! I shall lie down and pretend to sleep, lest Jonathan have added anxiety about me when he returns.

Dr. Seward's Diary.

1 October, 4 a. m. —Just as we were about to leave the house, an urgent message was brought to me from Renfield to know if I would see him at once, as

he had something of the utmost importance to say to me. I told the messenger to

say that I would attend to his wishes in the morning; I was busy just at the moment. The attendant added:—

"He seems very importunate, sir. I have never seen him so eager. I don't

know but what, if you don't see him soon, he will have one of his violent fits." I

knew the man would not have said this without some cause, so I said: "All right;

I'll go now"; and I asked the others to wait a few minutes for me, as I had to go

and see my "patient."

"Take me with you, friend John," said the Professor. "His case in your diary

interest me much, and it had bearing, too, now and again on *our* case. I should

much like to see him, and especial when his mind is disturbed.”

“May I come also?” asked Lord Godalming.

“Me too?” said Quincey Morris. “May I come?” said Harker. I nodded, and

we all went down the passage together.

We found him in a state of considerable excitement, but far more rational in

his speech and manner than I had ever seen him. There was an unusual

understanding of himself, which was unlike anything I had ever met with in a lunatic; and he took it for granted that his reasons would prevail with others entirely sane. We all four went into the room, but none of the others at first said

anything. His request was that I would at once release him from the asylum and send him home. This he backed up with arguments regarding his complete

recovery, and adduced his own existing sanity. “I appeal to your friends,” he said, “they will, perhaps, not mind sitting in judgment on my case. By the way,

you have not introduced me.” I was so much astonished, that the oddness of introducing a madman in an asylum did not strike me at the moment; and,

besides, there was a certain dignity in the man’s manner, so much of the habit of

equality, that I at once made the introduction: “Lord Godalming; Professor Van

Helsing; Mr. Quincey Morris, of Texas; Mr. Renfield.” He shook hands with

each of them, saying in turn:—

“Lord Godalming, I had the honour of seconding your father at the Windham;

I grieve to know, by your holding the title, that he is no more. He was a man loved and honoured by all who knew him; and in his youth was, I have heard, the inventor of a burnt rum punch, much patronised on Derby night. Mr. Morris,

you should be proud of your great state. Its reception into the Union was a precedent which may have far-reaching effects hereafter, when the Pole and the

Tropics may hold alliance to the Stars and Stripes. The power of Treaty may yet

prove a vast engine of enlargement, when the Monroe doctrine takes its true place as a political fable. What shall any man say of his pleasure at meeting Van

Helsing? Sir, I make no apology for dropping all forms of conventional prefix.

When an individual has revolutionised therapeutics by his discovery of the

continuous evolution of brain-matter, conventional forms are unfitting, since

they would seem to limit him to one of a class. You, gentlemen, who by

nationality, by heredity, or by the possession of natural gifts, are fitted to hold your respective places in the moving world, I take to witness that I am as sane as

at least the majority of men who are in full possession of their liberties. And I am sure that you, Dr. Seward, humanitarian and medico-jurist as well as

scientist, will deem it a moral duty to deal with me as one to be considered as under exceptional circumstances.” He made this last appeal with a courtly air of

conviction which was not without its own charm.

I think we were all staggered. For my own part, I was under the conviction,

despite my knowledge of the man’s character and history, that his reason had been restored; and I felt under a strong impulse to tell him that I was satisfied as

to his sanity, and would see about the necessary formalities for his release in the

morning. I thought it better to wait, however, before making so grave a

statement, for of old I knew the sudden changes to which this particular patient

was liable. So I contented myself with making a general statement that he

appeared to be improving very rapidly; that I would have a longer chat with him

in the morning, and would then see what I could do in the direction of meeting his wishes. This did not at all satisfy him, for he said quickly:—

“But I fear, Dr. Seward, that you hardly apprehend my wish. I desire to go at

once—here—now—this very hour—this very moment, if I may. Time presses,

and in our implied agreement with the old scytheman it is of the essence of the

contract. I am sure it is only necessary to put before so admirable a practitioner

as Dr. Seward so simple, yet so momentous a wish, to ensure its fulfilment.” He

looked at me keenly, and seeing the negative in my face, turned to the others, and scrutinised them closely. Not meeting any sufficient response, he went on:—

“Is it possible that I have erred in my supposition?”

“You have,” I said frankly, but at the same time, as I felt, brutally. There was

a considerable pause, and then he said slowly:—

“Then I suppose I must only shift my ground of request. Let me ask for this

concession—boon, privilege, what you will. I am content to implore in such a case, not on personal grounds, but for the sake of others. I am not at liberty to

give you the whole of my reasons; but you may, I assure you, take it from me that they are good ones, sound and unselfish, and spring from the highest sense

of duty. Could you look, sir, into my heart, you would approve to the full the sentiments which animate me. Nay, more, you would count me amongst the best

and truest of your friends.” Again he looked at us all keenly. I had a growing conviction that this sudden change of his entire intellectual method was but yet

another form or phase of his madness, and so determined to let him go on a little

longer, knowing from experience that he would, like all lunatics, give himself away in the end. Van Helsing was gazing at him with a look of utmost intensity,

his bushy eyebrows almost meeting with the fixed concentration of his look. He

said to Renfield in a tone which did not surprise me at the time, but only when I

thought of it afterwards—for it was as of one addressing an equal:—

“Can you not tell frankly your real reason for wishing to be free to-night? I

will undertake that if you will satisfy even me—a stranger, without prejudice, and with the habit of keeping an open mind—Dr. Seward will give you, at his own risk and on his own responsibility, the privilege you seek.” He shook his head sadly, and with a look of poignant regret on his face. The Professor went on:—

“Come, sir, bethink yourself. You claim the privilege of reason in the highest

degree, since you seek to impress us with your complete reasonableness. You do

this, whose sanity we have reason to doubt, since you are not yet released from

medical treatment for this very defect. If you will not help us in our effort to choose the wisest course, how can we perform the duty which you yourself put

upon us? Be wise, and help us; and if we can we shall aid you to achieve your wish.” He still shook his head as he said:—

“Dr. Van Helsing, I have nothing to say. Your argument is complete, and if I

were free to speak I should not hesitate a moment; but I am not my own master

in the matter. I can only ask you to trust me. If I am refused, the responsibility

does not rest with me." I thought it was now time to end the scene, which was

becoming too comically grave, so I went towards the door, simply saying:—

"Come, my friends, we have work to do. Good-night."

As, however, I got near the door, a new change came over the patient. He

moved towards me so quickly that for the moment I feared that he was about to

make another homicidal attack. My fears, however, were groundless, for he held

up his two hands imploringly, and made his petition in a moving manner. As he

saw that the very excess of his emotion was militating against him, by restoring

us more to our old relations, he became still more demonstrative. I glanced at Van Helsing, and saw my conviction reflected in his eyes; so I became a little more fixed in my manner, if not more stern, and motioned to him that his efforts

were unavailing. I had previously seen something of the same constantly

growing excitement in him when he had to make some request of which at the

time he had thought much, such, for instance, as when he wanted a cat; and I was prepared to see the collapse into the same sullen acquiescence on this

occasion. My expectation was not realised, for, when he found that his appeal would not be successful, he got into quite a frantic condition. He threw himself

on his knees, and held up his hands, wringing them in plaintive supplication, and

poured forth a torrent of entreaty, with the tears rolling down his cheeks, and his

whole face and form expressive of the deepest emotion:—

“Let me entreat you, Dr. Seward, oh, let me implore you, to let me out of this

house at once. Send me away how you will and where you will; send keepers with me with whips and chains; let them take me in a strait-waistcoat, manacled

and leg-ironed, even to a gaol; but let me go out of this. You don’t know what

you do by keeping me here. I am speaking from the depths of my heart—of my

very soul. You don’t know whom you wrong, or how; and I may not tell. Woe is

me! I may not tell. By all you hold sacred—by all you hold dear—by your love

that is lost—by your hope that lives—for the sake of the Almighty, take me out

of this and save my soul from guilt! Can’t you hear me, man? Can’t you

understand? Will you never learn? Don’t you know that I am sane and earnest now; that I am no lunatic in a mad fit, but a sane man fighting for his soul? Oh,

hear me! hear me! Let me go! let me go! let me go!”

I thought that the longer this went on the wilder he would get, and so would

bring on a fit; so I took him by the hand and raised him up.

“Come,” I said sternly, “no more of this; we have had quite enough already.

Get to your bed and try to behave more discreetly.”

He suddenly stopped and looked at me intently for several moments. Then,

without a word, he rose and moving over, sat down on the side of the bed. The

collapse had come, as on former occasion, just as I had expected.

When I was leaving the room, last of our party, he said to me in a quiet, well-bred voice:—

“You will, I trust, Dr. Seward, do me the justice to bear in mind, later on, that

I did what I could to convince you to-night.”

CHAPTER XIX

JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL

1 October, 5 a. m. —I went with the party to the search with an easy mind, for

I think I never saw Mina so absolutely strong and well. I am so glad that she consented to hold back and let us men do the work. Somehow, it was a dread to

me that she was in this fearful business at all; but now that her work is done, and

that it is due to her energy and brains and foresight that the whole story is put together in such a way that every point tells, she may well feel that her part is finished, and that she can henceforth leave the rest to us. We were, I think, all a

little upset by the scene with Mr. Renfield. When we came away from his room

we were silent till we got back to the study. Then Mr. Morris said to Dr. Seward:

—

“Say, Jack, if that man wasn’t attempting a bluff, he is about the sanest

lunatic I ever saw. I’m not sure, but I believe that he had some serious purpose,

and if he had, it was pretty rough on him not to get a chance.” Lord Godalming

and I were silent, but Dr. Van Helsing added:—

“Friend John, you know more of lunatics than I do, and I’m glad of it, for I

fear that if it had been to me to decide I would before that last hysterical outburst

have given him free. But we live and learn, and in our present task we must take

no chance, as my friend Quincey would say. All is best as they are.” Dr. Seward

seemed to answer them both in a dreamy kind of way:—

“I don’t know but that I agree with you. If that man had been an ordinary lunatic I would have taken my chance of trusting him; but he seems so mixed up

with the Count in an indexy kind of way that I am afraid of doing anything wrong by helping his fads. I can’t forget how he prayed with almost equal

fervour for a cat, and then tried to tear my throat out with his teeth. Besides, he

called the Count ‘lord and master,’ and he may want to get out to help him in some diabolical way. That horrid thing has the wolves and the rats and his own

kind to help him, so I suppose he isn’t above trying to use a respectable lunatic.

He certainly did seem earnest, though. I only hope we have done what is best.

These things, in conjunction with the wild work we have in hand, help to

unnerve a man.” The Professor stepped over, and laying his hand on his

shoulder, said in his grave, kindly way:—

“Friend John, have no fear. We are trying to do our duty in a very sad and

terrible case; we can only do as we deem best. What else have we to hope for, except the pity of the good God?” Lord Godalming had slipped away for a few

minutes, but now he returned. He held up a little silver whistle, as he remarked:

—

“That old place may be full of rats, and if so, I’ve got an antidote on call.”

Having passed the wall, we took our way to the house, taking care to keep in the

shadows of the trees on the lawn when the moonlight shone out. When we got to

the porch the Professor opened his bag and took out a lot of things, which he laid

on the step, sorting them into four little groups, evidently one for each. Then he

spoke:—

“My friends, we are going into a terrible danger, and we need arms of many

kinds. Our enemy is not merely spiritual. Remember that he has the strength of

twenty men, and that, though our necks or our windpipes are of the common

kind—and therefore breakable or crushable—his are not amenable to mere

strength. A stronger man, or a body of men more strong in all than him, can at

certain times hold him; but they cannot hurt him as we can be hurt by him. We

must, therefore, guard ourselves from his touch. Keep this near your heart”—as

he spoke he lifted a little silver crucifix and held it out to me, I being nearest to

him—“put these flowers round your neck”—here he handed to me a wreath of

withered garlic blossoms—“for other enemies more mundane, this revolver and

this knife; and for aid in all, these so small electric lamps, which you can fasten

to your breast; and for all, and above all at the last, this, which we must not desecrate needless.” This was a portion of Sacred Wafer, which he put in an envelope and handed to me. Each of the others was similarly equipped. “Now,”

he said, “friend John, where are the skeleton keys? If so that we can open the door, we need not break house by the

window, as before at Miss Lucy’s.”

Dr. Seward tried one or two skeleton keys, his mechanical dexterity as a

surgeon standing him in good stead. Presently he got one to suit; after a little play back and forward the bolt yielded, and, with a rusty clang, shot back. We pressed on the door, the rusty hinges creaked, and it slowly opened. It was startlingly like the image conveyed to me in Dr. Seward’s diary of the opening of

Miss Westenra’s tomb; I fancy that the same idea seemed to strike the others, for

with one accord they shrank back. The Professor was the first to move forward,

and stepped into the open door.

“*In manus tuas, Domine!* ” he said, crossing himself as he passed over the threshold. We closed the door behind us, lest when we should have lit our lamps

we should possibly attract attention from the road. The Professor carefully tried

the lock, lest we might not be able to open it from within should we be in a hurry

making our exit. Then we all lit our lamps and proceeded on our search.

The light from the tiny lamps fell in all sorts of odd forms, as the rays crossed

each other, or the opacity of our bodies threw great shadows. I could not for my

life get away from the feeling that there was some one else amongst us. I suppose it was the recollection, so powerfully brought home to me by the grim

surroundings, of that terrible experience in Transylvania. I think the feeling was

common to us all, for I noticed that the others kept looking over their shoulders

at every sound and every new shadow, just as I felt myself doing.

The whole place was thick with dust. The floor was seemingly inches deep,

except where there were recent footsteps, in which on holding down my lamp I

could see marks of hobnails where the dust was cracked. The walls were fluffy

and heavy with dust, and in the corners were masses of spider’s webs, whereon

the dust had gathered till they looked like old tattered rags as the weight had torn

them partly down. On a table in the hall was a great bunch of keys, with a time-

yellowed label on each. They had been used several times, for on the table were

several similar rents in the blanket of dust, similar to that exposed when the Professor lifted them. He turned to me and said:—

“You know this place, Jonathan. You have copied maps of it, and you know it

at least more than we do. Which is the way to the chapel?” I had an idea of its

direction, though on my former visit I had not been able to get admission to it; so

I led the way, and after a few wrong turnings found myself opposite a low, arched oaken door, ribbed with iron bands. “This is the spot,” said the Professor

as he turned his lamp on a small map of the house, copied from the file of my

original correspondence regarding the purchase. With a little trouble we found the key on the bunch and opened the door. We were prepared for some

unpleasantness, for as we were opening the door a faint, malodorous air seemed

to exhale through the gaps, but none of us ever expected such an odour as we encountered. None of the others had met the Count at all at close quarters, and

when I had seen him he was either in the fasting stage of his existence in his rooms or, when he was gloated with fresh blood, in a ruined building open to the

air; but here the place was small and close, and the long disuse had made the air

stagnant and foul. There was an earthy smell, as of some dry miasma, which came through the fouler air. But as to the odour itself, how shall I describe it? It

was not alone that it was composed of all the ills of mortality and with the pungent, acrid smell of blood, but it seemed as though corruption had become itself corrupt. Faugh! it sickens me to think of it. Every breath exhaled by that monster seemed to have clung to the place and intensified its loathsomeness.

Under ordinary circumstances such a stench would have brought our

enterprise to an end; but this was no ordinary case, and the high and terrible purpose in which we were involved gave us a strength which rose above merely

physical considerations. After the involuntary shrinking consequent on the first nauseous whiff, we one and all set about our work as though that loathsome place were a garden of roses.

We made an accurate examination of the place, the Professor saying as we

began:—

“The first thing is to see how many of the boxes are left; we must then

examine every hole and corner and cranny and see if we cannot get some clue as

to what has become of the rest.” A glance was sufficient to show how many remained, for the great earth chests were bulky, and there was no mistaking them.

There were only twenty-nine left out of the fifty! Once I got a fright, for, seeing Lord Godalming suddenly turn and look out of the vaulted door into the

dark passage beyond, I looked too, and for an instant my heart stood still.

Somewhere, looking out from the shadow, I seemed to see the high lights of the

Count’s evil face, the ridge of the nose, the red eyes, the red lips, the awful pallor. It was only for a moment, for, as Lord Godalming said, “I thought I saw a

face, but it was only the shadows,” and resumed his inquiry, I turned my lamp in

the direction, and stepped into the passage. There was no sign of any one; and as

there were no corners, no doors, no aperture of any kind, but only the solid walls

of the passage, there could be no hiding-place even for *him*. I took it that fear had helped imagination, and said nothing.

A few minutes later I saw Morris step suddenly back from a corner, which he

was examining. We all followed his movements with our eyes, for undoubtedly

some nervousness was growing on us, and we saw a whole mass of

phosphorescence, which twinkled like stars. We all instinctively drew back. The

whole place was becoming alive with rats.

For a moment or two we stood appalled, all save Lord Godalming, who was

seemingly prepared for such an emergency. Rushing over to the great iron-bound

oaken door, which Dr. Seward had described from the outside, and which I had

seen myself, he turned the key in the lock, drew the huge bolts, and swung the

door open. Then, taking his little silver whistle from his pocket, he blew a low,

shrill call. It was answered from behind Dr. Seward’s house by the yelping of dogs, and after about a minute three terriers came dashing round the corner of the house. Unconsciously we had all moved towards the door, and as we moved I

noticed that the dust had been much disturbed: the boxes which had been taken

out had been brought this way. But even in the minute that had elapsed the

number of the rats had vastly increased. They seemed to swarm over the place all at once, till the lamplight, shining on their moving dark bodies and glittering,

baleful eyes, made the place look like a bank of earth set with fireflies. The dogs

dashed on, but at the threshold suddenly stopped and snarled, and then,

simultaneously lifting their noses, began to howl in most lugubrious fashion. The

rats were multiplying in thousands, and we moved out.

Lord Godalming lifted one of the dogs, and carrying him in, placed him on

the floor. The instant his feet touched the ground he seemed to recover his courage, and rushed at his natural enemies. They fled before him so fast that before he had shaken the life out of a score, the other dogs, who had by now been lifted in the same manner, had but small prey ere the whole mass had vanished.

With their going it seemed as if some evil presence had departed, for the dogs

frisked about and barked merrily as they made sudden darts at their prostrate foes, and turned them over and over and tossed them in the air with vicious shakes. We all seemed to find our spirits rise. Whether it was the purifying of the

deadly atmosphere by the opening of the chapel door, or the relief which we experienced by finding ourselves in the open I know not; but most certainly the

shadow of dread seemed to slip from us like a robe, and the occasion of our coming lost something of its grim significance, though we did not slacken a whit

in our resolution. We closed the outer door and barred and locked it, and

bringing the dogs with us, began our search of the house. We found nothing throughout except dust in extraordinary proportions, and all untouched save for

my own footsteps when I had made my first visit. Never once did the dogs

exhibit any symptom of uneasiness, and even when we returned to the chapel

they frisked about as though they had been rabbit-hunting in a summer wood.

The morning was quickening in the east when we emerged from the front. Dr.

Van Helsing had taken the key of the hall-door from the bunch, and locked the

door in orthodox fashion, putting the key into his pocket when he had done.

“So far,” he said, “our night has been eminently successful. No harm has

come to us such as I feared might be and yet we have ascertained how many boxes are missing. More than all do I rejoice that this, our first—and perhaps our

most difficult and dangerous—step has been accomplished without the bringing

thereinto our most sweet Madam Mina or troubling her waking or sleeping

thoughts with sights and sounds and smells of horror which she might never

forget. One lesson, too, we have learned, if it be allowable to argue *a particulari*: that the brute beasts which are to the Count's command are yet themselves not

amenable to his spiritual power; for look, these rats that would come to his call,

just as from his castle top he summon the wolves to your going and to that poor mother's cry, though they come to him, they run pell-mell from the so little dogs

of my friend Arthur. We have other matters before us, other dangers, other fears;

and that monster—he has not used his power over the brute world for the only or

the last time to-night. So be it that he has gone elsewhere. Good! It has given us

opportunity to cry 'check' in some ways in this chess game, which we play for

the stake of human souls. And now let us go home. The dawn is close at hand,

and we have reason to be content with our first night's work. It may be ordained

that we have many nights and days to follow, if full of peril; but we must go on,

and from no danger shall we shrink."

The house was silent when we got back, save for some poor creature who

was screaming away in one of the distant wards, and a low, moaning sound from

Renfield’s room. The poor wretch was doubtless torturing himself, after the

manner of the insane, with needless thoughts of pain.

I came tiptoe into our own room, and found Mina asleep, breathing so softly

that I had to put my ear down to hear it. She looks paler than usual. I hope the

meeting to-night has not upset her. I am truly thankful that she is to be left out of

our future work, and even of our deliberations. It is too great a strain for a woman to bear. I did not think so at first, but I know better now. Therefore I am

glad that it is settled. There may be things which would frighten her to hear; and

yet to conceal them from her might be worse than to tell her if once she suspected that there was any concealment. Henceforth our work is to be a sealed

book to her, till at least such time as we can tell her that all is finished, and the

earth free from a monster of the nether world. I daresay it will be difficult to begin to keep silence after such confidence as ours; but I must be resolute, and

to-morrow I shall keep dark over to-night’s doings, and shall refuse to speak of

anything that has happened. I rest on the sofa, so as not to disturb her.

1 October, later. —I suppose it was natural that we should have all overslept

ourselves, for the day was a busy one, and the night had no rest at all. Even Mina

must have felt its exhaustion, for though I slept till the sun was high, I was awake before her, and had to call two or three times before she awoke. Indeed,

she was so sound asleep that for a few seconds she did not recognize me, but looked at me with a sort of blank terror, as one looks who has been waked out of

a bad dream. She complained a little of being tired, and I let her rest till later in

the day. We now know of twenty-one boxes having been removed, and if it be that several were taken in any of these removals we may be able to trace them

all. Such will, of course, immensely simplify our labour, and the sooner the

matter is attended to the better. I shall look up Thomas Snelling to-day.

Dr. Seward's Diary.

1 October. —It was towards noon when I was awakened by the Professor walking into my room. He was more jolly and cheerful than usual, and it is quite

evident that last night’s work has helped to take some of the brooding weight off

his mind. After going over the adventure of the night he suddenly said:—

“Your patient interests me much. May it be that with you I visit him this morning? Or if that you are too occupy, I can go alone if it may be. It is a new

experience to me to find a lunatic who talk philosophy, and reason so sound.” I

had some work to do which pressed, so I told him that if he would go alone I would be glad, as then I should not have to keep him waiting; so I called an attendant and gave him the necessary instructions. Before the Professor left the

room I cautioned him against getting any false impression from my patient.

“But,” he answered, “I want him to talk of himself and of his delusion as to consuming live things. He said to Madam Mina, as I see in your diary of

yesterday, that he had once had such a belief. Why do you smile, friend John?”

“Excuse me,” I said, “but the answer is here.” I laid my hand on the typewritten matter. “When our sane and learned lunatic made that very statement of

how he *used* to consume life, his mouth was actually nauseous with the flies and spiders which he had eaten just before Mrs. Harker entered the room.” Van

Helsing smiled in turn. “Good!” he said. “Your memory is true, friend John. I should have remembered. And yet it is this very obliquity of thought and

memory which makes mental disease such a fascinating study. Perhaps I may

gain more knowledge out of the folly of this madman than I shall from the teaching of the most wise. Who knows?” I went on with my work, and before long was through that in hand. It seemed that the time had been very short indeed, but there was Van Helsing back in the study. “Do I interrupt?” he asked

politely as he stood at the door.

“Not at all,” I answered. “Come in. My work is finished, and I am free. I can

go with you now, if you like.

“It is needless; I have seen him!”

“Well?”

“I fear that he does not appraise me at much. Our interview was short. When

I entered his room he was sitting on a stool in the centre, with his elbows on his

knees, and his face was the picture of sullen discontent. I spoke to him as cheerfully as I could, and with such a measure of respect as I could assume. He

made no reply whatever. “Don’t you know me?” I asked. His answer was not

reassuring: “I know you well enough; you are the old fool Van Helsing. I wish you would take yourself and your idiotic brain theories somewhere else. Damn

all thick-headed Dutchmen!” Not a word more would he say, but sat in his

implacable sullenness as indifferent to me as though I had not been in the room

at all. Thus departed for this time my chance of much learning from this so clever lunatic; so I shall go, if I may, and cheer myself with a few happy words

with that sweet soul Madam Mina. Friend John, it does rejoice me unspeakable

that she is no more to be pained, no more to be worried with our terrible things.

Though we shall much miss her help, it is better so.”

“I agree with you with all my heart,” I answered earnestly, for I did not want

him to weaken in this matter. “Mrs. Harker is better out of it. Things are quite bad enough for us, all men of the world, and who have been in many tight places

in our time; but it is no place for a woman, and if she had remained in touch with

the affair, it would in time infallibly have wrecked her.”

So Van Helsing has gone to confer with Mrs. Harker and Harker; Quincey

and Art are all out following up the clues as to the earth-boxes. I shall finish my

round of work and we shall meet to-night.

Mina Harker's Journal.

1 October. —It is strange to me to be kept in the dark as I am to-day; after Jonathan's full confidence for so many years, to see him manifestly avoid certain

matters, and those the most vital of all. This morning I slept late after the fatigues of yesterday, and though Jonathan was late too, he was the earlier. He spoke to me before he went out, never more sweetly or tenderly, but he never mentioned a word of what had happened in the visit to the Count's house. And

yet he must have known how terribly anxious I was. Poor dear fellow! I suppose

it must have distressed him even more than it did me. They all agreed that it was

best that I should not be drawn further into this awful work, and I acquiesced.

But to think that he keeps anything from me! And now I am crying like a silly

fool, when I *know* it comes from my husband's great love and from the good, good wishes of those other strong men.

That has done me good. Well, some day Jonathan will tell me all; and lest it

should ever be that he should think for a moment that I kept anything from him,

I still keep my journal as usual. Then if he has feared of my trust I shall show it

to him, with every thought of my heart put down for his dear eyes to read. I feel

strangely sad and low-spirited to-day. I suppose it is the reaction from the terrible excitement.

Last night I went to bed when the men had gone, simply because they told me

to. I didn’t feel sleepy, and I did feel full of devouring anxiety. I kept thinking over everything that has been ever since Jonathan came to see me in London, and it all seems like a horrible tragedy, with fate pressing on relentlessly to some

destined end. Everything that one does seems, no matter how right it may be, to

bring on the very thing which is most to be deplored. If I hadn’t gone to Whitby,

perhaps poor dear Lucy would be with us now. She hadn’t taken to visiting the

churchyard till I came, and if she hadn’t come there in the day-time with me she

wouldn’t have walked there in her sleep; and if she hadn’t gone there at night and asleep, that monster couldn’t have destroyed her as he did. Oh, why did I ever go to Whitby? There now, crying again! I wonder what has come over me

to-day. I must hide it from Jonathan, for if he knew that I had been crying twice

in one morning—I, who never cried on my own account, and whom he has never

caused to shed a tear—the dear fellow would fret his heart out. I shall put a bold

face on, and if I do feel weepy, he shall never see it. I suppose it is one of the lessons that we poor women have to learn....

I can’t quite remember how I fell asleep last night. I remember hearing the sudden barking of the dogs and a lot of queer sounds, like praying on a very tumultuous scale, from Mr. Renfield’s room, which is somewhere under this.

And then there was silence over everything, silence so profound that it startled me, and I got up and looked out of the window. All was dark and silent, the black shadows thrown by the moonlight seeming full of a silent mystery of their

own. Not a thing seemed to be stirring, but all to be grim and fixed as death or

fate; so that a thin streak of white mist, that crept with almost imperceptible slowness across the grass towards the house, seemed to have a sentience and a

vitality of its own. I think that the digression of my thoughts must have done me

good, for when I got back to bed I found a lethargy creeping over me. I lay a while, but could not quite sleep, so I got out and looked out of the window again.

The mist was spreading, and was now close up to the house, so that I could see it

lying thick against the wall, as though it were stealing up to the windows. The

poor man was more loud than ever, and though I could not distinguish a word he

said, I could in some way recognise in his tones some passionate entreaty on his

part. Then there was the sound of a struggle, and I knew that the attendants were

dealing with him. I was so frightened that I crept into bed, and pulled the clothes

over my head, putting my fingers in my ears. I was not then a bit sleepy, at least

so I thought; but I must have fallen asleep, for, except dreams, I do not remember anything until the morning, when Jonathan woke me. I think that it took me an effort and a little time to realise where I was, and that it was Jonathan

who was bending over me. My dream was very peculiar, and was almost typical

of the way that waking thoughts become merged in, or continued in, dreams.

I thought that I was asleep, and waiting for Jonathan to come back. I was very

anxious about him, and I was powerless to act; my feet, and my hands, and my

brain were weighted, so that nothing could proceed at the usual pace. And so I

slept uneasily and thought. Then it began to dawn upon me that the air was heavy, and dank, and cold. I put back the clothes from my face, and found, to my

surprise, that all was dim around. The gaslight which I had left lit for Jonathan,

but turned down, came only like a tiny red spark through the fog, which had evidently grown thicker and poured into the room. Then it occurred to me that I

had shut the window before I had come to bed. I would have got out to make certain on the point, but some leaden lethargy seemed to chain my limbs and even my will. I lay still and endured; that was all. I closed my eyes, but could still see through my eyelids. (It is wonderful what tricks our dreams play us, and

how conveniently we can imagine.) The mist grew thicker and thicker and I

could see now how it came in, for I could see it like smoke—or with the white

energy of boiling water—pouring in, not through the window, but through the

joinings of the door. It got thicker and thicker, till it seemed as if it became concentrated into a sort of pillar of cloud in the room, through the top of which I

could see the light of the gas shining like a red eye. Things began to whirl through my brain just as the cloudy column was now whirling in the room, and

through it all came the scriptural words “a pillar of cloud by day and of fire by

night.” Was it indeed some such spiritual guidance that was coming to me in my

sleep? But the pillar was composed of both the day and the night-guiding, for the

fire was in the red eye, which at the thought got a new fascination for me; till, as

I looked, the fire divided, and seemed to shine on me through the fog like two

red eyes, such as Lucy told me of in her momentary mental wandering when, on

the cliff, the dying sunlight struck the windows of St. Mary’s Church. Suddenly

the horror burst upon me that it was thus that Jonathan had seen those awful women growing into reality through the whirling mist in the moonlight, and in my dream I must have fainted, for all became black darkness. The last conscious

effort which imagination made was to show me a livid white face bending over

me out of the mist. I must be careful of such dreams, for they would unseat one’s

reason if there were too much of them. I would get Dr. Van Helsing or Dr.

Seward to prescribe something for me which would make me sleep, only that I

fear to alarm them. Such a dream at the present time would become woven into

their fears for me. To-night I shall strive hard to sleep naturally. If I do not, I shall to-morrow night get them to give me a dose of chloral; that cannot hurt me

for once, and it will give me a good night’s sleep. Last night tired me more than

if I had not slept at all.

2 October 10 p. m. —Last night I slept, but did not dream. I must have slept

soundly, for I was not waked by Jonathan coming to bed; but the sleep has not

refreshed me, for to-day I feel terribly weak and spiritless. I spent all yesterday

trying to read, or lying down dozing. In the afternoon Mr. Renfield asked if he

might see me. Poor man, he was very gentle, and when I came away he kissed

my hand and bade God bless me. Some way it affected me much; I am crying when I think of him. This is a new weakness, of which I must be careful.

Jonathan would be miserable if he knew I had been crying. He and the others were out till dinner-time, and they all came in tired. I did what I could to brighten them up, and I suppose that the effort did me good, for I forgot how tired I was. After dinner they sent me to bed, and all went off to smoke together,

as they said, but I knew that they wanted to tell each other of what had occurred

to each during the day; I could see from Jonathan’s manner that he had

something important to communicate. I was not so sleepy as I should have been;

so before they went I asked Dr. Seward to give me a little opiate of some kind, as

I had not slept well the night before. He very kindly made me up a sleeping draught, which he gave to me, telling me that it would do me no harm, as it was

very mild.... I have taken it, and am waiting for sleep, which still keeps aloof. I

hope I have not done wrong, for as sleep begins to flirt with me, a new fear comes: that I may have been foolish in thus depriving myself of the power of waking. I might want it. Here comes sleep. Good-night.

CHAPTER XX

JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL

1 October, evening. —I found Thomas Snelling in his house at Bethnal Green,

but unhappily he was not in a condition to remember anything. The very

prospect of beer which my expected coming had opened to him had proved too

much, and he had begun too early on his expected debauch. I learned, however,

from his wife, who seemed a decent, poor soul, that he was only the assistant to

Smollet, who of the two mates was the responsible person. So off I drove to Walworth, and found Mr. Joseph Smollet at home and in his shirtsleeves, taking

a late tea out of a saucer. He is a decent, intelligent fellow, distinctly a good, reliable type of workman, and with a headpiece of his own. He remembered all

about the incident of the boxes, and from a wonderful dog’s-eared notebook,

which he produced from some mysterious receptacle about the seat of his

trousers, and which had hieroglyphical entries in thick, half-obliterated pencil, he gave me the destinations of the boxes. There were, he said, six in the cartload

which he took from Carfax and left at 197, Chicksand Street, Mile End New

Town, and another six which he deposited at Jamaica Lane, Bermondsey. If then

the Count meant to scatter these ghastly refuges of his over London, these places

were chosen as the first of delivery, so that later he might distribute more fully.

The systematic manner in which this was done made me think that he could not

mean to confine himself to two sides of London. He was now fixed on the far east of the northern shore, on the east of the southern shore, and on the south.

The north and west were surely never meant to be left out of his diabolical scheme—let alone the City itself and the very heart of fashionable London in the

south-west and west. I went back to Smollet, and asked him if he could tell us if

any other boxes had been taken from Carfax.

He replied:—

“Well, guv’nor, you’ve treated me wery ’an’some”—I had given him half a

sovereign—“an’ I’ll tell yer all I know. I heard a man by the name of Bloxam say

four nights ago in the ’Are an’ ’Ounds, in Pincher’s Alley, as ’ow he an’ his mate

’ad ’ad a rare dusty job in a old ’ouse at Purfect. There ain’t a-many such jobs as

this ’ere, an’ I’m thinkin’ that maybe Sam Bloxam could tell ye summut.” I asked if he could tell me where to find him. I told him that if he could get me the

address it would be worth another half-sovereign to him. So he gulped down the

rest of his tea and stood up, saying that he was going to begin the search then and there. At the door he stopped, and said:—

“Look ’ere, guv’nor, there ain’t no sense in me a-keepin’ you ’ere. I may find

Sam soon, or I mayn’t; but anyhow he ain’t like to be in a way to tell ye much

to-night. Sam is a rare one when he starts on the booze. If you can give me a envelope with a stamp on it, and put yer address on it, I’ll find out where Sam is

to be found and post it ye to-night. But ye’d better be up arter ’im soon in the mornin’, or maybe ye won’t ketch ’im; for Sam gets off main early, never mind

the booze the night afore.”

This was all practical, so one of the children went off with a penny to buy an

envelope and a sheet of paper, and to keep the change. When she came back, I

addressed the envelope and stamped it, and when Smollet had again faithfully promised to post the address when found, I took my way to home. We’re on the

track anyhow. I am tired to-night, and want sleep. Mina is fast asleep, and looks

a little too pale; her eyes look as though she had been crying. Poor dear, I’ve no

doubt it frets her to be kept in the dark, and it may make her doubly anxious about me and the others. But it is best as it is. It is better to be disappointed and

worried in such a way now than to have her nerve broken. The doctors were quite right to insist on her being kept out of this dreadful business. I must be firm, for on me this particular burden of silence must rest. I shall not ever enter

on the subject with her under any circumstances. Indeed, it may not be a hard task, after all, for she herself has become reticent on the subject, and has not spoken of the Count or his doings ever since we told her of our decision.

2 October, evening. —A long and trying and exciting day. By the first post I

got my directed envelope with a dirty scrap of paper enclosed, on which was written with a carpenter's pencil in a sprawling hand:—

"Sam Bloxam, Korkrans, 4, Poters Cort, Bartel Street, Walworth. Arsk for the

depite."

I got the letter in bed, and rose without waking Mina. She looked heavy and

sleepy and pale, and far from well. I determined not to wake her, but that, when I

should return from this new search, I would arrange for her going back to Exeter.

I think she would be happier in our own home, with her daily tasks to interest her, than in being here amongst us and in

ignorance. I only saw Dr. Seward for a

moment, and told him where I was off to, promising to come back and tell the

rest so soon as I should have found out anything. I drove to Walworth and found,

with some difficulty, Potter’s Court. Mr. Smollet’s spelling misled me, as I asked

for Poter’s Court instead of Potter’s Court. However, when I had found the court,

I had no difficulty in discovering Corcoran’s lodging-house. When I asked the man who came to the door for the “depite,” he shook his head, and said: “I dunno ’im. There ain’t no such a person ’ere; I never ’eard of ’im in all my bloomin’ days. Don’t believe there ain’t nobody of that kind livin’ ere or

anywheres.” I took out Smollet’s letter, and as I read it it seemed to me that the

lesson of the spelling of the name of the court might guide me. “What are you?”

I asked.

“I’m the depity,” he answered. I saw at once that I was on the right track; phonetic spelling had again misled me. A half-crown tip put the deputy’s

knowledge at my disposal, and I learned that Mr. Bloxam, who had slept off the

remains of his beer on the previous night at Corcoran’s, had left for his work at

Poplar at five o’clock that morning. He could not tell me where the place of work was situated, but he had a vague idea that it was some kind of a “new-fangled ware’us”; and with this slender clue I had to start for Poplar. It was twelve o’clock before I got any satisfactory hint of such a building, and this I got

at a coffee-shop, where some workmen were having their dinner. One of these suggested that there was being erected at Cross Angel Street a new “cold

storage” building; and as this suited the condition of a “new-fangled ware’us,” I

at once drove to it. An interview with a surly gatekeeper and a surlier foreman,

both of whom were appeased with the coin of the realm, put me on the track of

Bloxam; he was sent for on my suggesting that I was willing to pay his day’s wages to his foreman for the privilege of asking him a few questions on a private

matter. He was a smart enough fellow, though rough of speech and bearing.

When I had promised to pay for his information and given him an earnest, he told me that he had made two journeys between Carfax and a house in Piccadilly,

and had taken from this house to the latter nine great boxes —“main heavy

ones”—with a horse and cart hired by him for this purpose. I asked him if he could tell me the number of the house in Piccadilly, to which he replied:—

“Well, guv’nor, I forgits the number, but it was only a few doors from a big

white church or somethink of the kind, not long built. It was a dusty old ’ouse,

too, though nothin’ to the dustiness of the ’ouse we tooked the bloomin’ boxes from.”

“How did you get into the houses if they were both empty?”

“There was the old party what engaged me a-waitin’ in the ’ouse at Purfleet.

He ’elped me to lift the boxes and put them in the dray. Curse me, but he was the

strongest chap I ever struck, an’ him a old feller, with a white moustache, one that thin you would think he couldn’t throw a shadder.”

How this phrase thrilled through me!

“Why, ’e took up ’is end o’ the boxes like they was pounds of tea, and me a-puffin’ an’ a-blowin’ afore I could up-end mine anyhow—an’ I’m no chicken,

neither.”

“How did you get into the house in Piccadilly?” I asked.

“He was there too. He must ’a’ started off and got there afore me, for when I

rung of the bell he kem an’ opened the door ’isself an’ ’elped me to carry the boxes into the ’all.”

“The whole nine?” I asked.

“Yus; there was five in the first load an’ four in the second. It was main dry

work, an’ I don’t so well remember ’ow I got ’ome.” I interrupted him:—

“Were the boxes left in the hall?”

“Yus; it was a big ’all, an’ there was nothin’ else in it.” I made one more attempt to further matters:—

“You didn’t have any key?”

“Never used no key nor nothink. The old gent, he opened the door ’isself an’

shut it again when I druv off. I don’t remember the last time —but that was the

beer.”

“And you can’t remember the number of the house?”

“No, sir. But ye needn’t have no difficulty about that. It’s a ’igh ’un with a stone front with a bow on it, an’ ’igh steps up to the door. I know them steps,

’avin’ ’ad to carry the boxes up with three loafers what come round to earn a copper. The old gent give them shillin’s, an’ they seein’ they got so much, they

wanted more; but ’e took one of them by the shoulder and was like to throw ’im

down the steps, till the lot of them went away cussin’.” I thought that with this

description I could find the house, so, having paid my friend for his information,

I started off for Piccadilly. I had gained a new painful experience; the Count could, it was evident, handle the earth-boxes himself. If so, time was precious;

for, now that he had achieved a certain amount of distribution, he could, by choosing his own time, complete the task unobserved. At Piccadilly Circus I

discharged my cab, and walked westward; beyond the Junior Constitutional I

came across the house described, and was satisfied that this was the next of the

lairs arranged by Dracula. The house looked as though it had been long

untenanted. The windows were encrusted with dust, and the shutters were up.

All the framework was black with time, and from the iron the paint had mostly

scaled away. It was evident that up to lately there had been a large notice-board

in front of the balcony; it had, however, been roughly torn away, the uprights which had supported it still remaining. Behind the rails of the balcony I saw

there were some loose boards, whose raw edges looked white. I would have given a good deal to have been able to see the notice-board intact, as it would,

perhaps, have given some clue to the ownership of the house. I remembered my

experience of the investigation and purchase of Carfax, and I could not but feel

that if I could find the former owner there might be some means discovered of

gaining access to the house.

There was at present nothing to be learned from the Piccadilly side, and

nothing could be done; so I went round to the back to see if anything could be

gathered from this quarter. The mews were active, the Piccadilly houses being mostly in occupation. I asked one or two of the grooms and helpers whom I saw

around if they could tell me anything about the empty house. One of them said

that he heard it had lately been taken, but he couldn’t say from whom. He told

me, however, that up to very lately there had been a notice-board of “For Sale”

up, and that perhaps Mitchell, Sons, & Candy, the house agents, could tell me something, as he thought he remembered seeing the name of that firm on the board. I did

not wish to seem too eager, or to let my informant know or guess too

much, so, thanking him in the usual manner, I strolled away. It was now growing

dusk, and the autumn night was closing in, so I did not lose any time. Having learned the address of Mitchell, Sons, & Candy from a directory at the Berkeley,

I was soon at their office in Sackville Street.

The gentleman who saw me was particularly suave in manner, but

uncommunicative in equal proportion. Having once told me that the Piccadilly

house—which throughout our interview he called a “mansion”—was sold, he

considered my business as concluded. When I asked who had purchased it, he

opened his eyes a thought wider, and paused a few seconds before replying:—

“It is sold, sir.”

“Pardon me,” I said, with equal politeness, “but I have a special reason for wishing to know who purchased it.”

Again he paused longer, and raised his eyebrows still more. “It is sold, sir,”

was again his laconic reply.

“Surely,” I said, “you do not mind letting me know so much.”

“But I do mind,” he answered. “The affairs of their clients are absolutely safe

in the hands of Mitchell, Sons, & Candy.” This was manifestly a prig of the first

water, and there was no use arguing with him. I thought I had best meet him on

his own ground, so I said:—

“Your clients, sir, are happy in having so resolute a guardian of their

confidence. I am myself a professional man.” Here I handed him my card. “In

this instance I am not prompted by curiosity; I act on the part of Lord Godalming, who wishes to know something of the property which was, he

understood, lately for sale.” These words put a different complexion on affairs.

He said:—

“I would like to oblige you if I could, Mr. Harker, and especially would I like

to oblige his lordship. We once carried out a small matter of renting some chambers for him when he was the Honourable Arthur Holmwood. If you will

let me have his lordship’s address I will consult the House on the subject, and will, in any case, communicate with his lordship by to-night’s post. It will be a

pleasure if we can so far deviate from our rules as to give the required

information to his lordship.”

I wanted to secure a friend, and not to make an enemy, so I thanked him, gave

the address at Dr. Seward’s and came away. It was now dark, and I was tired and

hungry. I got a cup of tea at the Aërated Bread Company and came down to Purfleet by the next train.

I found all the others at home. Mina was looking tired and pale, but she made

a gallant effort to be bright and cheerful, it wrung my heart to think that I had had to keep anything from her and so caused her inquietude. Thank God, this will be the last night of her looking on at our conferences, and feeling the sting

of our not showing our confidence. It took all my courage to hold to the wise resolution of keeping her out of our grim task. She seems somehow more

reconciled; or else the very subject seems to have become repugnant to her, for

when any accidental allusion is made she actually shudders. I am glad we made

our resolution in time, as with such a feeling as this, our growing knowledge would be torture to her.

I could not tell the others of the day’s discovery till we were alone; so after

dinner—followed by a little music to save appearances even amongst ourselves

—I took Mina to her room and left her to go to bed. The dear girl was more affectionate with me than ever, and clung to me as though she would detain me;

but there was much to be talked of and I came away. Thank God, the ceasing of

telling things has made no difference between us.

When I came down again I found the others all gathered round the fire in the

study. In the train I had written my diary so far, and simply read it off to them as

the best means of letting them get abreast of my own information; when I had finished Van Helsing said:—

“This has been a great day’s work, friend Jonathan. Doubtless we are on the

track of the missing boxes. If we find them all in that house, then our work is near the end. But if there be some missing, we must search until we find them.

Then shall we make our final *coup*, and hunt the wretch to his real death.” We all sat silent awhile and all at once Mr. Morris spoke:—

“Say! how are we going to get into that house?”

“We got into the other,” answered Lord Godalming quickly.

“But, Art, this is different. We broke house at Carfax, but we had night and a

walled park to protect us. It will be a mighty different thing to commit burglary

in Piccadilly, either by day or night. I confess I don’t see how we are going to get

in unless that agency duck can find us a key of some sort; perhaps we shall know

when you get his letter in the morning.” Lord Godalming’s brows contracted,

and he stood up and walked about the room. By-and-by he stopped and said,

turning from one to another of us:—

“Quincey’s head is level. This burglary business is getting serious; we got off

once all right; but we have now a rare job on hand—unless we can find the Count’s key basket.”

As nothing could well be done before morning, and as it would be at least advisable to wait till Lord Godalming should hear from Mitchell’s, we decided

not to take any active step before breakfast time. For a good while we sat and smoked, discussing the matter in its various lights and bearings; I took the opportunity of bringing this diary right up to the moment. I am very sleepy and

shall go to bed....

Just a line. Mina sleeps soundly and her breathing is regular. Her forehead is

puckered up into little wrinkles, as though she thinks even in her sleep. She is still too pale, but does not look so haggard as she did this morning. To-morrow

will, I hope, mend all this; she will be herself at home in Exeter. Oh, but I am sleepy!

Dr. Seward's Diary.

1 October. —I am puzzled afresh about Renfield. His moods change so

rapidly that I find it difficult to keep touch of them, and as they always mean something more than his own well-being, they form a more than interesting

study. This morning, when I went to see him after his repulse of Van Helsing, his

manner was that of a man commanding destiny. He was, in fact, commanding

destiny—subjectively. He did not really care for any of the things of mere earth;

he was in the clouds and looked down on all the weaknesses and wants of us poor mortals. I thought I would improve the occasion and learn something, so I

asked him:—

"What about the flies these times?" He smiled on me in quite a superior sort

of way—such a smile as would have become the face of Malvolio—as he

answered me:—

“The fly, my dear sir, has one striking feature; its wings are typical of the aërial powers of the psychic faculties. The ancients did well when they typified

the soul as a butterfly!”

I thought I would push his analogy to its utmost logically, so I said quickly:—

“Oh, it is a soul you are after now, is it?” His madness foiled his reason, and a

puzzled look spread over his face as, shaking his head with a decision which I had but seldom seen in him, he said:—

“Oh, no, oh no! I want no souls. Life is all I want.” Here he brightened up; “I

am pretty indifferent about it at present. Life is all right; I have all I want. You

must get a new patient, doctor, if you wish to study zoöphagy!”

This puzzled me a little, so I drew him on:—

“Then you command life; you are a god, I suppose?” He smiled with an

ineffably benign superiority.

“Oh no! Far be it from me to arrogate to myself the attributes of the Deity. I

am not even concerned in His especially spiritual doings. If I may state my intellectual position I am, so far as concerns things purely terrestrial, somewhat

in the position which Enoch occupied spiritually!” This was a poser to me. I could not at the moment recall Enoch’s appositeness; so I had to ask a simple question, though I felt that by so doing I was lowering myself in the eyes of the

lunatic:—

“And why with Enoch?”

“Because he walked with God.” I could not see the analogy, but did not like

to admit it; so I harked back to what he had denied:—

“So you don’t care about life and you don’t want souls. Why not?” I put my

question quickly and somewhat sternly, on purpose to disconcert him. The effort

succeeded; for an instant he unconsciously relapsed into his old servile manner,

bent low before me, and actually fawned upon me as he replied:—

“I don’t want any souls, indeed, indeed! I don’t. I couldn’t use them if I had

them; they would be no manner of use to me. I couldn’t eat them or——” He suddenly stopped and the old cunning look spread over his face, like a wind-sweep on the surface of the water. “And doctor, as to life, what is it after all?

When you’ve got all you require, and you know that you will never want, that is

all. I have friends—good friends—like you, Dr. Seward”; this was said with a leer of inexpressible cunning. “I know that I shall never lack the means of life!”

I think that through the cloudiness of his insanity he saw some antagonism in

me, for he at once fell back on the last refuge of such as he—a dogged silence.

After a short time I saw that for the present it was useless to speak to him. He was sulky, and so I came away.

Later in the day he sent for me. Ordinarily I would not have come without special reason, but just at present I am so interested in him that I would gladly

make an effort. Besides, I am glad to have anything to help to pass the time.

Harker is out, following up clues; and so are Lord Godalming and Quincey. Van

Helsing sits in my study poring over the record prepared by the Harkers; he seems to think that by accurate knowledge of all details he will light upon some

clue. He does not wish to be disturbed in the work, without cause. I would have

taken him with me to see the patient, only I thought that after his last repulse he

might not care to go again. There was also another reason: Renfield might not speak so freely before a third person as when he and I were alone.

I found him sitting out in the middle of the floor on his stool, a pose which is

generally indicative of some mental energy on his part. When I came in, he said

at once, as though the question had been waiting on his lips:—

“What about souls?” It was evident then that my surmise had been correct.

Unconscious cerebration was doing its work, even with the lunatic. I determined

to have the matter out. “What about them yourself?” I asked. He did not reply for a moment but looked all round him, and up and down, as though he expected

to find some inspiration for an answer.

“I don’t want any souls!” he said in a feeble, apologetic way. The matter

seemed preying on his mind, and so I determined to use it—to “be cruel only to

be kind.” So I said:—

“You like life, and you want life?”

“Oh yes! but that is all right; you needn’t worry about that!”

“But,” I asked, “how are we to get the life without getting the soul also?”

This seemed to puzzle him, so I followed it up:—

“A nice time you’ll have some time when you’re flying out there, with the

souls of thousands of flies and spiders and birds and cats buzzing and twittering

and miauing all round you. You’ve got their lives, you know, and you must put

up with their souls!” Something seemed to affect his imagination, for he put his

fingers to his ears and shut his eyes, screwing them up tightly just as a small boy

does when his face is being soaped. There was something pathetic in it that touched me; it also gave me a lesson, for it seemed that before me was a child—

only a child, though the features were worn, and the stubble on the jaws was white. It was evident that he was undergoing some process of mental

disturbance, and, knowing how his past moods had interpreted things seemingly

foreign to himself, I thought I would enter into his mind as well as I could and go with him. The first step was to restore confidence, so I asked him, speaking

pretty loud so that he would hear me through his closed ears:—

“Would you like some sugar to get your flies round again?” He seemed to

wake up all at once, and shook his head. With a laugh he replied:—

“Not much! flies are poor things, after all!” After a pause he added, “But I don’t want their souls buzzing round me, all the same.”

“Or spiders?” I went on.

“Blow spiders! What’s the use of spiders? There isn’t anything in them to eat

or”—he stopped suddenly, as though reminded of a forbidden topic.

“So, so!” I thought to myself, “this is the second time he has suddenly

stopped at the word ‘drink’; what does it mean?” Renfield seemed himself aware

of having made a lapse, for he hurried on, as though to distract my attention from it:—

“I don’t take any stock at all in such matters. ‘Rats and mice and such small

deer,’ as Shakespeare has it, ‘chicken-feed of the larder’ they might be called.

I’m past all that sort of nonsense. You might as well ask a man to eat molecules

with a pair of chop-sticks, as to try to interest me about the lesser carnivora, when I know of what is before me.”

“I see,” I said. “You want big things that you can make your teeth meet in?

How would you like to breakfast on elephant?”

“What ridiculous nonsense you are talking!” He was getting too wide awake,

so I thought I would press him hard. “I wonder,” I said reflectively, “what an elephant’s soul is like!”

The effect I desired was obtained, for he at once fell from his high-horse and

became a child again.

“I don’t want an elephant’s soul, or any soul at all!” he said. For a few moments he sat despondently. Suddenly he jumped to his feet, with his eyes

blazing and all the signs of intense cerebral excitement. “To hell with you and your souls!” he shouted. “Why do you plague me about souls? Haven’t I got

enough to worry, and pain, and distract me already, without thinking of souls!”

He looked so hostile that I thought he was in for another homicidal fit, so I blew

my whistle. The instant, however, that I did so he became calm, and said

apologetically:—

“Forgive me, Doctor; I forgot myself. You do not need any help. I am so

worried in my mind that I am apt to be irritable. If you only knew the problem I

have to face, and that I am working out, you would pity, and tolerate, and pardon

me. Pray do not put me in a strait-waistcoat. I want to think and I cannot think freely when my body is confined. I am sure you will understand!” He had

evidently self-control; so when the attendants came I told them not to mind, and

they withdrew. Renfield watched them go; when the door was closed he said,

with considerable dignity and sweetness:—

“Dr. Seward, you have been very considerate towards me. Believe me that I

am very, very grateful to you!” I thought it well to leave him in this mood, and

so I came away. There is certainly something to ponder over in this man’s state.

Several points seem to make what the American interviewer calls “a story,” if one could only get them in proper order. Here they are:—

Will not mention “drinking.”

Fears the thought of being burdened with the “soul” of anything.

Has no dread of wanting “life” in the future.

Despises the meaner forms of life altogether, though he dreads being haunted

by their souls.

Logically all these things point one way! he has assurance of some kind that

he will acquire some higher life. He dreads the consequence —the burden of a soul. Then it is a human life he looks to!

And the assurance—?

Merciful God! the Count has been to him, and there is some new scheme of

terror afoot!

Later. —I went after my round to Van Helsing and told him my suspicion. He

grew very grave; and, after thinking the matter over for a while asked me to take

him to Renfield. I did so. As we came to the door we heard the lunatic within singing gaily, as he used to do in the time which now seems so long ago. When

we entered we saw with amazement that he had spread out his sugar as of old;

the flies, lethargic with the autumn, were beginning to buzz into the room. We tried to make him talk of the subject of our previous conversation, but he would

not attend. He went on with his singing, just as though we had not been present.

He had got a scrap of paper and was folding it into a note-book. We had to come

away as ignorant as we went in.

His is a curious case indeed; we must watch him to-night.

Letter, Mitchell, Sons and Candy to Lord Godalming.

“1 October.

“My Lord,

“We are at all times only too happy to meet your wishes. We beg, with regard to the desire of your Lordship, expressed by Mr. Harker on your behalf, to supply the following information concerning the sale and purchase of No. 347,

Piccadilly. The original vendors are the executors of the late Mr. Archibald Winter-Suffield. The purchaser is a foreign nobleman, Count de Ville, who

effected the purchase himself paying the purchase money in notes ‘over the

counter,’ if your Lordship will pardon us using so vulgar an expression. Beyond

this we know nothing whatever of him.

“We are, my Lord,

“Your Lordship’s humble servants,

“MITCHELL, SONS & CANDY.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

2 October. —I placed a man in the corridor last night, and told him to make an

accurate note of any sound he might hear from Renfield’s room, and gave him instructions that if there should be anything strange he was to call me. After dinner, when we had all gathered round the fire in the study—Mrs. Harker

having gone to bed—we discussed the attempts and discoveries of the day.

Harker was the only one who had any result, and we are in great hopes that his

clue may be an important one.

Before going to bed I went round to the patient’s room and looked in through

the observation trap. He was sleeping soundly, and his heart rose and fell with regular respiration.

This morning the man on duty reported to me that a little after midnight he was restless and kept saying his prayers somewhat loudly. I asked him if that was all; he replied that it was all he heard. There was something about his manner so suspicious that I asked him point blank if he had been asleep. He denied sleep, but admitted to having “dozed” for a while. It is too bad that men

cannot be trusted unless they are watched.

To-day Harker is out following up his clue, and Art and Quincey are looking

after horses. Godalming thinks that it will be well to have horses always in readiness, for when we get the information which we seek there will be no time

to lose. We must sterilise all the imported earth between sunrise and sunset; we

shall thus catch the Count at his weakest, and without a refuge to fly to. Van Helsing is off to the British Museum looking up some authorities on ancient medicine. The old physicians took account of things which their followers do not

accept, and the Professor is searching for witch and demon cures which may be

useful to us later.

I sometimes think we must be all mad and that we shall wake to sanity in strait-waistcoats.

Later. —We have met again. We seem at last to be on the track, and our work

of to-morrow may be the beginning of the end. I wonder if Renfield’s quiet has

anything to do with this. His moods have so followed the doings of the Count,

that the coming destruction of the monster may be carried to him in some subtle

way. If we could only get some hint as to what passed in his mind, between the

time of my argument with him to-day and his resumption of fly-catching, it

might afford us a valuable clue. He is now seemingly quiet for a spell.... Is he?

—— That wild yell seemed to come from his room....

The attendant came bursting into my room and told me that Renfield had

somehow met with some accident. He had heard him yell; and when he went to

him found him lying on his face on the floor, all covered with blood. I must go at

once....

CHAPTER XXI

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY

3 October. —Let me put down with exactness all that happened, as well as I

can remember it, since last I made an entry. Not a detail that I can recall must be

forgotten; in all calmness I must proceed.

When I came to Renfield’s room I found him lying on the floor on his left side in a glittering pool of blood. When I went to move him, it became at once

apparent that he had received some terrible injuries; there seemed none of that unity of purpose between the parts of the body which marks even lethargic

sanity. As the face was exposed I could see that it was horribly bruised, as though it had been beaten against the floor—indeed it was from the face wounds

that the pool of blood originated. The attendant who was kneeling beside the body said to me as we turned him over: —

“I think, sir, his back is broken. See, both his right arm and leg and the whole

side of his face are paralysed.” How such a thing could have happened puzzled

the attendant beyond measure. He seemed quite bewildered, and his brows were

gathered in as he said:—

“I can’t understand the two things. He could mark his face like that by

beating his own head on the floor. I saw a young woman do it once at the Eversfield Asylum before anyone could lay hands on her. And I suppose he

might have broke his neck by falling out of bed, if he got in an awkward kink.

But for the life of me I can’t imagine how the two things occurred. If his back

was broke, he couldn’t beat his head; and if his face was like that before the fall

out of bed, there would be marks of it.” I said to him:—

“Go to Dr. Van Helsing, and ask him to kindly come here at once. I want him

without an instant’s delay.” The man ran off, and within a few minutes the Professor, in his dressing gown and slippers,

appeared. When he saw Renfield on

the ground, he looked keenly at him a moment, and then turned to me. I think he

recognised my thought in my eyes, for he said very quietly, manifestly for the ears of the attendant:—

“Ah, a sad accident! He will need very careful watching, and much attention.

I shall stay with you myself; but I shall first dress myself. If you will remain I

shall in a few minutes join you.”

The patient was now breathing stertorously and it was easy to see that he had suffered some terrible injury. Van Helsing returned with extraordinary celerity, bearing with him a surgical case. He had evidently been thinking and had his mind made up; for, almost before he looked at the patient, he whispered to me:—

“Send the attendant away. We must be alone with him when he becomes

conscious, after the operation.” So I said:—

“I think that will do now, Simmons. We have done all that we can at present.

You had better go your round, and Dr. Van Helsing will operate. Let me know instantly if there be anything unusual anywhere.”

The man withdrew, and we went into a strict examination of the patient. The

wounds of the face was superficial; the real injury was a depressed fracture of the skull, extending right up through the motor area. The Professor thought a moment and said:—

“We must reduce the pressure and get back to normal conditions, as far as can

be; the rapidity of the suffusion shows the terrible nature of his injury. The whole

motor area seems affected. The suffusion of the brain will increase quickly, so we must trephine at once or it may be too late.” As he was speaking there was a

soft tapping at the door. I went over and opened it and found in the corridor without, Arthur and Quincey in pajamas and slippers: the former spoke:—

“I heard your man call up Dr. Van Helsing and tell him of an accident. So I

woke Quincey or rather called for him as he was not asleep. Things are moving

too quickly and too strangely for sound sleep for any of us these times. I’ve been

thinking that to-morrow night will not see things as they have been. We’ll have

to look back—and forward a little more than we have done. May we come in?” I

nodded, and held the door open till they had entered; then I closed it again.

When Quincey saw the attitude and state of the patient, and noted the horrible pool on the floor, he said softly:—

“My God! what has happened to him? Poor, poor devil!” I told him briefly,

and added that we expected he would recover consciousness after the operation

—for a short time, at all events. He went at once and sat down on the edge of the

bed, with Godalming beside him; we all watched in patience.

“We shall wait,” said Van Helsing, “just long enough to fix the best spot for

trephining, so that we may most quickly and perfectly remove the blood clot; for

it is evident that the hæmorrhage is increasing.”

The minutes during which we waited passed with fearful slowness. I had a

horrible sinking in my heart, and from Van Helsing’s face I gathered that he felt

some fear or apprehension as to what was to come. I dreaded the words that

Renfield might speak. I was positively afraid to think; but the conviction of what was coming was on me, as I have read of men who have heard the death-watch.

The poor man’s breathing came in uncertain gasps. Each instant he seemed as though he would open his eyes and

speak; but then would follow a prolonged stertorous breath, and he would relapse into a more fixed insensibility. Inured as

I was to sick beds and death, this suspense grew, and grew upon me. I could almost hear the beating of my own heart; and the blood surging through my

temples sounded like blows from a hammer. The silence finally became

agonising. I looked at my companions, one after another, and saw from their flushed faces and damp brows that they were enduring equal torture. There was a

nervous suspense over us all, as though overhead some dread bell would peal out

powerfully when we should least expect it.

At last there came a time when it was evident that the patient was sinking fast; he might die at any moment. I looked up at the Professor and caught his eyes fixed on mine. His face was sternly set as he spoke:—

“There is no time to lose. His words may be worth many lives; I have been

thinking so, as I stood here. It may be there is a soul at stake! We shall operate

just above the ear.”

Without another word he made the operation. For a few moments the

breathing continued to be stertorous. Then there came a breath so prolonged that

it seemed as though it would tear open his chest. Suddenly his eyes opened, and

became fixed in a wild, helpless stare. This was continued for a few moments; then it softened into a glad surprise, and from the lips came a sigh of relief. He

moved convulsively, and as he did so, said:—

“I’ll be quiet, Doctor. Tell them to take off the strait-waistcoat. I have had a

terrible dream, and it has left me so weak that I cannot move. What’s wrong with

my face? it feels all swollen, and it smarts dreadfully.” He tried to turn his head;

but even with the effort his eyes seemed to grow glassy again so I gently put it

back. Then Van Helsing said in a quiet grave tone:—

“Tell us your dream, Mr. Renfield.” As he heard the voice his face

brightened, through its mutilation, and he said:—

“That is Dr. Van Helsing. How good it is of you to be here. Give me some water, my lips are dry; and I shall try to tell you. I dreamed”—he stopped and seemed fainting, I called quietly to Quincey—“The brandy—it is in my study—

quick!” He flew and returned with a glass, the decanter of brandy and a carafe of

water. We moistened the parched lips, and the patient quickly revived. It seemed,

however, that his poor injured brain had been working in the interval, for, when

he was quite conscious, he looked at me piercingly with an agonised confusion

which I shall never forget, and said:—

“I must not deceive myself; it was no dream, but all a grim reality.” Then his

eyes roved round the room; as they caught sight of the two figures sitting patiently on the edge of the bed he went on:—

“If I were not sure already, I would know from them.” For an instant his eyes

closed—not with pain or sleep but voluntarily, as though he were bringing all his

faculties to bear; when he opened them he said, hurriedly, and with more energy

than he had yet displayed:—

“Quick, Doctor, quick. I am dying! I feel that I have but a few minutes; and

then I must go back to death—or worse! Wet my lips with brandy again. I have

something that I must say before I die; or before my poor crushed brain dies anyhow. Thank you! It was that night after you left me, when I implored you to

let me go away. I couldn’t speak then, for I felt my tongue was tied; but I was as

sane then, except in that way, as I am now. I was in an agony of despair for a long time after you left me; it seemed hours. Then there came a sudden peace to

me. My brain seemed to become cool again, and I realised where I was. I heard

the dogs bark behind our house, but not where He was!” As he spoke, Van

Helsing’s eyes never blinked, but his hand came out and met mine and gripped it

hard. He did not, however, betray himself; he nodded slightly and said: “Go on,”

in a low voice. Renfield proceeded:—

“He came up to the window in the mist, as I had seen him often before; but

he was solid then—not a ghost, and his eyes were fierce like a man’s when angry. He was laughing with his red mouth; the sharp white teeth glinted in the

moonlight when he turned to look back over the belt of trees, to where the dogs

were barking. I wouldn’t ask him to come in at first, though I knew he wanted to

—just as he had wanted all along. Then he began promising me things—not in

words but by doing them.” He was interrupted by a word from the Professor:—

“How?”

“By making them happen; just as he used to send in the flies when the sun was shining. Great big fat ones with steel and sapphire on their wings; and big

moths, in the night, with skull and cross-bones on their backs.” Van Helsing nodded to him as he whispered to me unconsciously:—

“The *Acherontia Aitetropos of the Sphinges*—what you call the ‘Death’s-head

Moth’?” The patient went on without stopping.

“Then he began to whisper: ‘Rats, rats, rats! Hundreds, thousands, millions of

them, and every one a life; and dogs to eat them, and cats too. All lives! all red

blood, with years of life in it; and not merely buzzing flies!’ I laughed at him, for

I wanted to see what he could do. Then the dogs howled, away beyond the dark trees in His house. He beckoned me to the window. I got up and looked out, and

He raised his hands, and seemed to call out without using any words. A dark mass spread over the grass, coming on like the shape of a flame of fire; and then

He moved the mist to the right and left, and I could see that there were thousands

of rats with their eyes blazing red—like His, only smaller. He held up his hand,

and they all stopped; and I thought he seemed to be saying: ‘All these lives will I

give you, ay, and many more and greater, through countless ages, if you will fall

down and worship me!’ And then a red cloud, like the colour of blood, seemed to

close over my eyes; and before I knew what I was doing, I found myself opening

the sash and saying to Him: ‘Come in, Lord and Master!’ The rats were all gone,

but He slid into the room through the sash, though it was only open an inch wide

—just as the Moon herself has often come in through the tiniest crack and has stood before me in all her size and splendour.”

His voice was weaker, so I moistened his lips with the brandy again, and he continued; but it seemed as though his memory had gone on working in the

interval for his story was further advanced. I was about to call him back to the

point, but Van Helsing whispered to me: “Let him go on. Do not interrupt him;

he cannot go back, and maybe could not proceed at all if once he lost the thread

of his thought.” He proceeded:—

“All day I waited to hear from him, but he did not send me anything, not even

a blow-fly, and when the moon got up I was pretty angry with him. When he slid

in through the window, though it was shut, and did not even knock, I got mad with him. He sneered at me, and his white face looked out of the mist with his

red eyes gleaming, and he went on as though he owned the whole place, and I

was no one. He didn’t even smell the same as he went by me. I couldn’t hold him. I thought that, somehow, Mrs. Harker had come into the room.”

The two men sitting on the bed stood up and came over, standing behind him

so that he could not see them, but where they could hear better. They were both

silent, but the Professor started and quivered; his face, however, grew grimmer

and sterner still. Renfield went on without noticing:—

“When Mrs. Harker came in to see me this afternoon she wasn’t the same; it

was like tea after the teapot had been watered.” Here we all moved, but no one

said a word; he went on:—

“I didn’t know that she was here till she spoke; and she didn’t look the same.

I don’t care for the pale people; I like them with lots of blood in them, and hers

had all seemed to have run out. I didn’t think of it at the time; but when she went

away I began to think, and it made me mad to know that He had been taking the

life out of her.” I could feel that the rest quivered, as I did, but we remained otherwise still. “So when He came to-night I was ready for Him. I saw the mist

stealing in, and I grabbed it tight. I had heard that madmen have unnatural strength; and as I knew I was a madman—at times anyhow—I resolved to use

my power. Ay, and He felt it too, for He had to come out of the mist to struggle

with me. I held tight; and I thought I was going to win, for I didn’t mean Him to

take any more of her life, till I saw His eyes. They burned into me, and my strength became like water. He slipped through it, and when I tried to cling to Him, He raised me up and flung me down. There was a red cloud before me, and

a noise like thunder, and the mist seemed to steal away under the door.” His voice was becoming fainter and his breath more stertorous. Van Helsing stood up

instinctively.

“We know the worst now,” he said. “He is here, and we know his purpose. It

may not be too late. Let us be armed—the same as we were the other night, but

lose no time; there is not an instant to spare.” There was no need to put our fear, nay our conviction, into words—we shared them in common. We all hurried and

took from our rooms the same things that we had when we entered the Count’s

house. The Professor had his ready, and as we met in the corridor he pointed to

them significantly as he said:—

“They never leave me; and they shall not till this unhappy business is over.

Be wise also, my friends. It is no common enemy that we deal with. Alas! alas!

that that dear Madam Mina should suffer!” He stopped; his voice was breaking,

and I do not know if rage or terror predominated in my own heart.

Outside the Harkers’ door we paused. Art and Quincey held back, and the

latter said:—

“Should we disturb her?”

“We must,” said Van Helsing grimly. “If the door be locked, I shall break it

in.”

“May it not frighten her terribly? It is unusual to break into a lady’s room!”

Van Helsing said solemnly, “You are always right; but this is life and death.

All chambers are alike to the doctor; and even were they not they are all as one

to me to-night. Friend John, when I turn the handle, if the door does not open, do

you put your shoulder down and shove; and you too, my friends. Now!”

He turned the handle as he spoke, but the door did not yield. We threw

ourselves against it; with a crash it burst open, and we almost fell headlong into

the room. The Professor did actually fall, and I saw across him as he gathered himself up from hands and knees. What I saw appalled me. I felt my hair rise like bristles on the back of my neck, and my heart seemed to stand still.

The moonlight was so bright that through the thick yellow blind the room

was light enough to see. On the bed beside the window lay Jonathan Harker, his

face flushed and breathing heavily as though in a stupor. Kneeling on the near edge of the bed facing outwards was the white-clad figure of his wife. By her side stood a tall, thin man, clad in black. His face was turned from us, but the instant we saw we all recognised the Count—in every way, even to the scar on

his forehead. With his left hand he held both Mrs. Harker’s hands, keeping them

away with her arms at full tension; his right hand gripped her by the back of the

neck, forcing her face down on his bosom. Her white nightdress was smeared

with blood, and a thin stream trickled down the man’s bare breast which was shown by his torn-open dress. The attitude of the two had a terrible resemblance

to a child forcing a kitten’s nose into a saucer of milk to compel it to drink. As

we burst into the room, the Count turned his face, and the hellish look that I had

heard described seemed to leap into it. His eyes flamed red with devilish passion; the great nostrils of the white aquiline nose opened wide and quivered

at the edge; and the white sharp teeth, behind the full lips of the blood-dripping

mouth, champed together like those of a wild beast. With a wrench, which threw

his victim back upon the bed as though hurled from a height, he turned and sprang at us. But by this time the Professor had gained his feet, and was holding

towards him the envelope which contained the Sacred Wafer. The Count

suddenly stopped, just as poor Lucy had done outside the tomb, and cowered

back. Further and further back he cowered, as we, lifting our crucifixes,

advanced. The moonlight suddenly failed, as a great black cloud sailed across the sky; and when the gaslight sprang up under Quincey's match, we saw

nothing but a faint vapour. This, as we looked, trailed under the door, which with

the recoil from its bursting open, had swung back to its old position. Van Helsing, Art, and I moved forward to Mrs. Harker, who by this time had drawn

her breath and with it had given a scream so wild, so ear-piercing, so despairing

that it seems to me now that it will ring in my ears till my dying day. For a few

seconds she lay in her helpless attitude and disarray. Her face was ghastly, with a

pallor which was accentuated by the blood which smeared her lips and cheeks and chin; from her throat trickled a thin stream of blood; her eyes were mad with

terror. Then she put before her face her poor crushed hands, which bore on their

whiteness the red mark of the Count’s terrible grip, and from behind them came

a low desolate wail which made the terrible scream seem only the quick

expression of an endless grief. Van Helsing stepped forward and drew the

coverlet gently over her body, whilst Art, after looking at her face for an instant

despairingly, ran out of the room. Van Helsing whispered to me:—

“Jonathan is in a stupor such as we know the Vampire can produce. We can

do nothing with poor Madam Mina for a few moments till she recovers herself; I

must wake him!” He dipped the end of a towel in cold water and with it began to

flick him on the face, his wife all the while holding her face between her hands

and sobbing in a way that was heart-breaking to hear. I raised the blind, and looked out of the window. There was much moonshine; and as I looked I could

see Quincey Morris run across the lawn and hide himself in the shadow of a great yew-tree. It puzzled me to think why he was doing this; but at the instant I

heard Harker’s quick exclamation as he woke to partial consciousness, and

turned to the bed. On his face, as there might well be, was a look of wild amazement. He seemed dazed for a few seconds, and then full consciousness

seemed to burst upon him all at once, and he started up. His wife was aroused by

the quick movement, and turned to him with her arms stretched out, as though to

embrace him; instantly, however, she drew them in again, and putting her elbows together, held her hands before her face, and shuddered till the bed beneath her

shook.

“In God’s name what does this mean?” Harker cried out. “Dr. Seward, Dr.

Van Helsing, what is it? What has happened? What is wrong? Mina, dear, what

is it? What does that blood mean? My God, my God! has it come to this!” and,

raising himself to his knees, he beat his hands wildly together. “Good God help

us! help her! oh, help her!” With a quick movement he jumped from bed, and began to pull on his clothes,—all the man in him awake at the need for instant

exertion. “What has happened? Tell me all about it!” he cried without pausing.

“Dr. Van Helsing, you love Mina, I know. Oh, do something to save her. It cannot have gone too far yet. Guard her while I look for *him*!” His wife, through her terror and horror and distress, saw some sure danger to him: instantly

forgetting her own grief, she seized hold of him and cried out:—

“No! no! Jonathan, you must not leave me. I have suffered enough to-night,

God knows, without the dread of his harming you. You must stay with me. Stay

with these friends who will watch over you!” Her expression became frantic as

she spoke; and, he yielding to her, she pulled him down sitting on the bed side,

and clung to him fiercely.

Van Helsing and I tried to calm them both. The Professor held up his little golden crucifix, and said with wonderful calmness:—

“Do not fear, my dear. We are here; and whilst this is close to you no foul thing can approach. You are safe for to-night; and we must be calm and take counsel together.” She shuddered and was silent, holding down her head on her

husband’s breast. When she raised it, his white night-robe was stained with

blood where her lips had touched, and where the thin open wound in her neck had sent forth drops. The instant she saw it she drew back, with a low wail, and

whispered, amidst choking sobs:—

“Unclean, unclean! I must touch him or kiss him no more. Oh, that it should

be that it is I who am now his worst enemy, and whom he may have most cause

to fear.” To this he spoke out resolutely:—

“Nonsense, Mina. It is a shame to me to hear such a word. I would not hear it

of you; and I shall not hear it from you. May God judge me by my deserts, and

punish me with more bitter suffering than even this hour, if by any act or will of

mine anything ever come between us!” He put out his arms and folded her to his

breast; and for a while she lay there sobbing. He looked at us over her bowed head, with eyes that blinked damply above his quivering nostrils; his mouth was

set as steel. After a while her sobs became less frequent and more faint, and then

he said to me, speaking with a studied calmness which I felt tried his nervous power to the utmost:—

“And now, Dr. Seward, tell me all about it. Too well I know the broad fact;

tell me all that has been.” I told him exactly what had happened, and he listened

with seeming impassiveness; but his nostrils twitched and his eyes blazed as I told how the ruthless hands of the Count had held his wife in that terrible and horrid position, with her mouth to the open wound in his breast. It interested me,

even at that moment, to see, that, whilst the face of white set passion worked convulsively over the bowed head, the hands tenderly and lovingly stroked the ruffled hair. Just as I had finished, Quincey and Godalming knocked at the door.

They entered in obedience to our summons. Van Helsing looked at me

questioningly. I understood him to mean if we were to take advantage of their coming to divert if possible the thoughts of the unhappy husband and wife from

each other and from themselves; so on nodding acquiescence to him he asked

them what they had seen or done. To which Lord Godalming answered:—

“I could not see him anywhere in the passage, or in any of our rooms. I

looked in the study but, though he had been there, he had gone. He had, however

——” He stopped suddenly, looking at the poor drooping figure on the bed. Van

Helsing said gravely:—

“Go on, friend Arthur. We want here no more concealments. Our hope now is

in knowing all. Tell freely!” So Art went on:—

“He had been there, and though it could only have been for a few seconds, he

made rare hay of the place. All the manuscript had been burned, and the blue flames were flickering amongst the white ashes; the cylinders of your

phonograph too were thrown on the fire, and the wax had helped the flames.”

Here I interrupted. “Thank God there is the other copy in the safe!” His face lit

for a moment, but fell again as he went on: “I ran downstairs then, but could see

no sign of him. I looked into Renfield’s room; but there was no trace there except——!” Again he paused. “Go on,” said Harker hoarsely; so he bowed his

head and moistening his lips with his tongue, added: “except that the poor fellow

is dead.” Mrs. Harker raised her head, looking from one to the other of us she said solemnly:—

“God’s will be done!” I could not but feel that Art was keeping back

something; but, as I took it that it was with a purpose, I said nothing. Van Helsing turned to Morris and asked:—

“And you, friend Quincey, have you any to tell?”

“A little,” he answered. “It may be much eventually, but at present I can’t say.

I thought it well to know if possible where the Count would go when he left the house. I did not see him; but I saw a bat rise from Renfield’s window, and flap

westward. I expected to see him in some shape go back to Carfax; but he

evidently sought some other lair. He will not be back to-night; for the sky is reddening in the east, and the dawn is close. We must work to-morrow!”

He said the latter words through his shut teeth. For a space of perhaps a couple of minutes there was silence, and I could fancy that I could hear the sound of our hearts beating; then Van Helsing said, placing his hand very

tenderly on Mrs. Harker’s head:—

“And now, Madam Mina—poor, dear, dear Madam Mina—tell us exactly

what happened. God knows that I do not want that you be pained; but it is need

that we know all. For now more than ever has all work to be done quick and sharp, and in deadly earnest. The day is close to us that must end all, if it may be

so; and now is the chance that we may live and learn.”

The poor, dear lady shivered, and I could see the tension of her nerves as she

clasped her husband closer to her and bent her head lower and lower still on his

breast. Then she raised her head proudly, and held out one hand to Van Helsing

who took it in his, and, after stooping and kissing it reverently, held it fast. The

other hand was locked in that of her husband, who held his other arm thrown round her protectingly. After a pause in which she was evidently ordering her thoughts, she began: —

“I took the sleeping draught which you had so kindly given me, but for a long

time it did not act. I seemed to become more wakeful, and myriads of horrible

fancies began to crowd in upon my mind—all of them connected with death, and

vampires; with blood, and pain, and trouble.” Her husband involuntarily groaned

as she turned to him and said lovingly: “Do not fret, dear. You must be brave and

strong, and help me through the horrible task. If you only knew what an effort it

is to me to tell of this fearful thing at all, you would understand how much I need

your help. Well, I saw I must try to help the medicine to its work with my will, if

it was to do me any good, so I resolutely set myself to sleep. Sure enough sleep

must soon have come to me, for I remember no more. Jonathan coming in had

not waked me, for he lay by my side when next I remember. There was in the room the same thin white mist that I had before noticed. But I forget now if you

know of this; you will find it in my diary which I shall show you later. I felt the

same vague terror which had come to me before and the same sense of some

presence. I turned to wake Jonathan, but found that he slept so soundly that it seemed as if it was he who had taken the sleeping draught, and not I. I tried, but

I could not wake him. This caused me a great fear, and I looked around terrified.

Then indeed, my heart sank within me: beside the bed, as if he had stepped out of the mist—or rather as if the mist had turned into his figure, for it had entirely

disappeared—stood a tall, thin man, all in black. I knew him at once from the description of the others. The waxen face; the high aquiline nose, on which the

light fell in a thin white line; the parted red lips, with the sharp white teeth showing between; and the red eyes that I had seemed to see in the sunset on the

windows of St. Mary’s Church at Whitby. I knew, too, the red scar on his

forehead where Jonathan had struck him. For an instant my heart stood still, and

I would have screamed out, only that I was paralysed. In the pause he spoke in a

sort of keen, cutting whisper, pointing as he spoke to Jonathan:—

“ ‘Silence! If you make a sound I shall take him and dash his brains out before your very eyes.’ I was appalled and was too bewildered to do or say anything. With a mocking smile, he placed one hand upon my shoulder and,

holding me tight, bared my throat with the other, saying as he did so, ‘First, a little refreshment to reward my exertions. You may as well be quiet; it is not the

first time, or the second, that your veins have appeased my thirst!’ I was bewildered, and, strangely enough, I did not want to hinder him. I suppose it is a

part of the horrible curse that such is, when his touch is on his victim. And oh,

my God, my God, pity me! He placed his reeking lips upon my throat!” Her

husband groaned again. She clasped his hand harder, and looked at him

pityingly, as if he were the injured one, and went on:—

“I felt my strength fading away, and I was in a half swoon. How long this horrible thing lasted I know not; but it seemed that a long time must have passed

before he took his foul, awful, sneering mouth away. I saw it drip with the fresh

blood!” The remembrance seemed for a while to overpower her, and she drooped

and would have sunk down but for her husband’s sustaining arm. With a great effort she recovered herself and went on:—

“Then he spoke to me mockingly, ‘And so you, like the others, would play

your brains against mine. You would help these men to hunt me and frustrate me

in my designs! You know now, and they know in part already, and will know in

full before long, what it is to cross my path. They should have kept their energies

for use closer to home. Whilst they played wits against me—against me who

commanded nations, and intrigued for them, and fought for them, hundreds of

years before they were born—I was countermining them. And you, their best

beloved one, are now to me, flesh of my flesh; blood of my blood; kin of my kin;

my bountiful wine-press for a while; and shall be later on my companion and my

helper. You shall be avenged in turn; for not one of them but shall minister to your needs. But as yet you are to be punished for what you have done. You have

aided in thwarting me; now you shall come to my call. When my brain says

“Come!” to you, you shall cross land or sea to do my bidding; and to that end this!’ With that he pulled open his shirt, and with his long sharp nails opened a

vein in his breast. When the blood began to spurt out, he took my hands in one

of his, holding them tight, and with the other seized my neck and pressed my mouth to the wound, so that I must either suffocate or swallow some of the——

Oh my God! my God! what have I done? What have I done to deserve such a fate, I who have tried to walk in meekness and righteousness all my days. God

pity me! Look down on a poor soul in worse than mortal peril; and in mercy pity

those to whom she is dear!” Then she began to rub her lips as though to cleanse

them from pollution.

As she was telling her terrible story, the eastern sky began to quicken, and everything became more and more clear. Harker was still and quiet; but over his

face, as the awful narrative went on, came a grey look which deepened and

deepened in the morning light, till when the first red streak of the coming dawn

shot up, the flesh stood darkly out against the whitening hair.

We have arranged that one of us is to stay within call of the unhappy pair till

we can meet together and arrange about taking action.

Of this I am sure: the sun rises to-day on no more miserable house in all the

great round of its daily course.

CHAPTER XXII

JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL

3 October. —As I must do something or go mad, I write this diary. It is now

six o’clock, and we are to meet in the study in half an hour and take something

to eat; for Dr. Van Helsing and Dr. Seward are agreed that if we do not eat we

cannot work our best. Our best will be, God knows, required to-day. I must keep

writing at every chance, for I dare not stop to think. All, big and little, must go

down; perhaps at the end the little things may teach us most. The teaching, big or

little, could not have landed Mina or me anywhere worse than we are to-day.

However, we must trust and hope. Poor Mina told me just now, with the tears running down her dear cheeks, that it is in trouble and trial that our faith is tested

—that we must keep on trusting; and that God will aid us up to the end. The end!

oh my God! what end?... To work! To work!

When Dr. Van Helsing and Dr. Seward had come back from seeing poor

Renfield, we went gravely into what was to be done. First, Dr. Seward told us that when he and Dr. Van Helsing had gone down to the room below they had found Renfield lying on the floor, all in a heap. His face was all bruised and crushed in, and the bones of the neck were broken.

Dr. Seward asked the attendant who was on duty in the passage if he had

heard anything. He said that he had been sitting down—he confessed to half

dozing—when he heard loud voices in the room, and then Renfield had called

out loudly several times, “God! God! God!” after that there was a sound of falling, and when he entered the room he found him lying on the floor, face down, just as the doctors had seen him. Van Helsing asked if he had heard

“voices” or “a voice,” and he said he could not say; that at first it had seemed to

him as if there were two, but as there was no one in the room it could have been

only one. He could swear to it, if required, that the word “God” was spoken by

the patient. Dr. Seward said to us, when we were alone, that he did not wish to

go into the matter; the question of an inquest had to be considered, and it would

never do to put forward the truth, as no one would believe it. As it was, he thought that on the attendant’s evidence he could give a certificate of death by misadventure in falling from bed. In case the coroner should demand it, there would be a formal inquest, necessarily to the same result.

When the question began to be discussed as to what should be our next step,

the very first thing we decided was that Mina should be in full confidence; that nothing of any sort—no matter how painful—should be kept from her. She

herself agreed as to its wisdom, and it was pitiful to see her so brave and yet so

sorrowful, and in such a depth of despair. “There must be no concealment,” she

said, “Alas! we have had too much already. And besides there is nothing in all

the world that can give me more pain than I have already endured—than I suffer

now! Whatever may happen, it must be of new hope or of new courage to me!”

Van Helsing was looking at her fixedly as she spoke, and said, suddenly but quietly:—

“But dear Madam Mina, are you not afraid; not for yourself, but for others from yourself, after what has happened?” Her face grew set in its lines, but her

eyes shone with the devotion of a martyr as she answered:—

“Ah no! for my mind is made up!”

“To what?” he asked gently, whilst we were all very still; for each in our own

way we had a sort of vague idea of what she meant. Her answer came with direct

simplicity, as though she were simply stating a fact:—

“Because if I find in myself—and I shall watch keenly for it—a sign of harm

to any that I love, I shall die!”

“You would not kill yourself?” he asked, hoarsely.

“I would; if there were no friend who loved me, who would save me such a

pain, and so desperate an effort!” She looked at him meaningly as she spoke. He

was sitting down; but now he rose and came close to her and put his hand on her

head as he said solemnly:

“My child, there is such an one if it were for your good. For myself I could

hold it in my account with God to find such an euthanasia for you, even at this

moment if it were best. Nay, were it safe! But my child——” For a moment he

seemed choked, and a great sob rose in his throat; he gulped it down and went

on:—

“There are here some who would stand between you and death. You must not

die. You must not die by any hand; but least of all by your own. Until the other,

who has fouled your sweet life, is true dead you must not die; for if he is still with the quick Un-Dead, your death would make you even as he is. No, you

must live! You must struggle and strive to live, though death would seem a boon

unspeakable. You must fight Death himself, though he come to you in pain or in

joy; by the day, or the night; in safety or in peril! On your living soul I charge

you that you do not die—nay, nor think of death—till this great evil be past.”

The poor dear grew white as death, and shock and shivered, as I have seen a

quicksand shake and shiver at the incoming of the tide. We were all silent; we could do nothing. At length she grew more calm and turning to him said,

sweetly, but oh! so sorrowfully, as she held out her hand:—

“I promise you, my dear friend, that if God will let me live, I shall strive to

do so; till, if it may be in His good time, this horror may have passed away from

me.” She was so good and brave that we all felt that our hearts were

strengthened to work and endure for her, and we began to discuss what we were

to do. I told her that she was to have all the papers in the safe, and all the papers

or diaries and phonographs we might hereafter use; and was to keep the record

as she had done before. She was pleased with the prospect of anything to do—if

“pleased” could be used in connection with so grim an interest.

As usual Van Helsing had thought ahead of everyone else, and was prepared

with an exact ordering of our work.

“It is perhaps well,” he said, “that at our meeting after our visit to Carfax we

decided not to do anything with the earth-boxes that lay there. Had we done so,

the Count must have guessed our purpose, and would doubtless have taken

measures in advance to frustrate such an effort with regard to the others; but now

he does not know our intentions. Nay, more, in all probability, he does not know

that such a power exists to us as can sterilise his lairs, so that he cannot use them

as of old. We are now so much further advanced in our knowledge as to their disposition that, when we have examined the house in Piccadilly, we may track

the very last of them. To-day, then, is ours; and in it rests our hope. The sun that

rose on our sorrow this morning guards us in its course. Until it sets to-night, that monster must retain whatever form he now has. He is confined within the limitations of his earthly envelope. He cannot melt into thin air nor disappear through cracks or chinks or crannies. If he go through a doorway, he must open

the door like a mortal. And so we have this day to hunt out all his lairs and sterilise them. So we shall, if we have not yet catch him and destroy him, drive

him to bay in some place where the catching and the destroying shall be, in time,

sure.” Here I started up for I could not contain myself at the thought that the minutes and seconds so preciously laden with Mina’s life and happiness were

flying from us, since whilst we talked action was impossible. But Van Helsing held up his hand warningly. “Nay, friend Jonathan,” he said, “in this, the

quickest way home is the longest way, so your proverb say. We shall all act and

act with desperate quick, when the time has come. But think, in all probable the

key of the situation is in that house in Piccadilly. The Count may have many houses which he has bought. Of them he will have deeds of purchase, keys and

other things. He will have paper that he write on; he will have his book of

cheques. There are many belongings that he must have somewhere; why not in this place so central, so quiet, where he come and go by the front or the back at

all hour, when in the very vast of the traffic there is none to notice. We shall go

there and search that house; and when we learn what it holds, then we do what

our friend Arthur call, in his phrases of hunt ‘stop the earths’ and so we run down our old fox—so? is it not?”

“Then let us come at once,” I cried, “we are wasting the precious, precious time!” The Professor did not move, but simply said:—

“And how are we to get into that house in Piccadilly?”

“Any way!” I cried. “We shall break in if need be.”

“And your police; where will they be, and what will they say?”

I was staggered; but I knew that if he wished to delay he had a good reason

for it. So I said, as quietly as I could:—

“Don’t wait more than need be; you know, I am sure, what torture I am in.”

“Ah, my child, that I do; and indeed there is no wish of me to add to your anguish. But just think, what can we do, until all the world be at movement.

Then will come our time. I have thought and thought, and it seems to me that the

simplest way is the best of all. Now we wish to get into the house, but we have

no key; is it not so?” I nodded.

“Now suppose that you were, in truth, the owner of that house, and could not

still get it; and think there was to you no conscience of the housebreaker, what

would you do?”

“I should get a respectable locksmith, and set him to work to pick the lock for

me.”

“And your police, they would interfere, would they not?”

“Oh, no! not if they knew the man was properly employed.”

“Then,” he looked at me as keenly as he spoke, “all that is in doubt is the conscience of the employer, and the belief of your policemen as to whether or no

that employer has a good conscience or a bad one. Your police must indeed be

zealous men and clever—oh, so clever!—in reading the heart, that they trouble

themselves in such matter. No, no, my friend Jonathan, you go take the lock off a

hundred empty house in this your London, or of any city in the world; and if you

do it as such things are rightly done, and at the time such things are rightly done,

no one will interfere. I have read of a gentleman who owned a so fine house in

London, and when he went for months of summer to Switzerland and lock up his

house, some burglar came and broke window at back and got in. Then he went

and made open the shutters in front and walk out and in through the door, before

the very eyes of the police. Then he have an auction in that house, and advertise it, and put up big notice; and when the day come he sell off by a great auctioneer

all the goods of that other man who own them. Then he go to a builder, and he

sell him that house, making an agreement that he pull it down and take all away

within a certain time. And your police and other authority help him all they can.

And when that owner come back from his holiday in Switzerland he find only an

empty hole where his house had been. This was all done *en règle*; and in our work we shall be *en règle* too. We shall not go so early that the policemen who

have then little to think of, shall deem it strange; but we shall go after ten o'clock, when there are many about, and such things would be done were we

indeed owners of the house."

I could not but see how right he was and the terrible despair of Mina's face

became relaxed a thought; there was hope in such good counsel. Van Helsing

went on:—

"When once within that house we may find more clues; at any rate some of

us can remain there whilst the rest find the other places where there be more earth-boxes—at Bermondsey and Mile End.”

Lord Godalming stood up. “I can be of some use here,” he said. “I shall wire

to my people to have horses and carriages where they will be most convenient.”

“Look here, old fellow,” said Morris, “it is a capital idea to have all ready in

case we want to go horsebacking; but don’t you think that one of your snappy carriages with its heraldic adornments in a byway of Walworth or Mile End

would attract too much attention for our purposes? It seems to me that we ought

to take cabs when we go south or east; and even leave them somewhere near the

neighbourhood we are going to."

"Friend Quincey is right!" said the Professor. "His head is what you call in plane with the horizon. It is a difficult thing that we go to do, and we do not want

no peoples to watch us if so it may."

Mina took a growing interest in everything and I was rejoiced to see that the

exigency of affairs was helping her to forget for a time the terrible experience of

the night. She was very, very pale—almost ghastly, and so thin that her lips were

drawn away, showing her teeth in somewhat of prominence. I did not mention

this last, lest it should give her needless pain; but it made my blood run cold in

my veins to think of what had occurred with poor Lucy when the Count had

sucked her blood. As yet there was no sign of the teeth growing sharper; but the

time as yet was short, and there was time for fear.

When we came to the discussion of the sequence of our efforts and of the

disposition of our forces, there were new sources of doubt. It was finally agreed that before starting for Piccadilly we should destroy the Count’s lair close at hand. In case he should find it out too soon, we should thus be still ahead of him

in our work of destruction; and his presence in his purely material shape, and at

his weakest, might give us some new clue.

As to the disposal of forces, it was suggested by the Professor that, after our

visit to Carfax, we should all enter the house in Piccadilly; that the two doctors

and I should remain there, whilst Lord Godalming and Quincey found the lairs at

Walworth and Mile End and destroyed them. It was possible, if not likely, the Professor urged, that the Count might appear in Piccadilly during the day, and that if so we might be able to cope with him then and there. At any rate, we might be able to follow him in force. To this plan I strenuously objected, and so

far as my going was concerned, for I said that I intended to stay and protect Mina, I thought that my mind was made up on the subject; but Mina would not

listen to my objection. She said that there might be some law matter in which I

could be useful; that amongst the Count’s papers might be some clue which I could understand out of my experience in

Transylvania; and that, as it was, all the strength we could muster was required to cope with the Count’s

extraordinary power. I had to give in, for Mina’s resolution was fixed; she said

that it was the last hope for *her* that we should all work together. “As for me,”

she said, “I have no fear. Things have been as bad as they can be; and whatever

may happen must have in it some element of hope or comfort. Go, my husband!

God can, if He wishes it, guard me as well alone as with any one present.” So I

started up crying out: “Then in God’s name let us come at once, for we are losing time. The Count may come to Piccadilly earlier than we think.”

“Not so!” said Van Helsing, holding up his hand.

“But why?” I asked.

“Do you forget,” he said, with actually a smile, “that last night he banqueted

heavily, and will sleep late?”

Did I forget! shall I ever—can I ever! Can any of us ever forget that terrible

scene! Mina struggled hard to keep her brave countenance; but the pain

overmastered her and she put her hands before her face, and shuddered whilst she moaned. Van Helsing had not intended to recall her frightful experience. He

had simply lost sight of her and her part in the affair in his intellectual effort.

When it struck him what he said, he was horrified at his thoughtlessness and tried to comfort her. “Oh, Madam Mina,” he said, “dear, dear Madam Mina, alas!

that I of all who so reverence you should have said anything so forgetful. These

stupid old lips of mine and this stupid old head do not deserve so; but you will

forget it, will you not?” He bent low beside her as he spoke; she took his hand, and looking at him through her tears, said hoarsely:—

“No, I shall not forget, for it is well that I remember; and with it I have so much in memory of you that is sweet, that I take it all together. Now, you must

all be going soon. Breakfast is ready, and we must all eat that we may be strong.”

Breakfast was a strange meal to us all. We tried to be cheerful and encourage

each other, and Mina was the brightest and most cheerful of us. When it was over, Van Helsing stood up and said:—

“Now, my dear friends, we go forth to our terrible enterprise. Are we all

armed, as we were on that night when first we visited our enemy’s lair; armed against ghostly as well as carnal attack?” We all assured him. “Then it is well.

Now, Madam Mina, you are in any case *quite* safe here until the sunset; and before then we shall return—if—— We shall return! But before we go let me see

you armed against personal attack. I have myself, since you came down,

prepared your chamber by the placing of things of which we know, so that He may not enter. Now let me guard yourself. On your forehead I touch this piece of

Sacred Wafer in the name of the Father, the Son, and——”

There was a fearful scream which almost froze our hearts to hear. As he had

placed the Wafer on Mina’s forehead, it had seared it—had burned into the flesh

as though it had been a piece of white-hot metal. My poor darling’s brain had told her the significance of the fact as quickly as her nerves received the pain of

it; and the two so overwhelmed her that her overwrought nature had its voice in

that dreadful scream. But the words to her thought came quickly; the echo of the

scream had not ceased to ring on the air when there came the reaction, and she

sank on her knees on the floor in an agony of abasement. Pulling her beautiful

hair over her face, as the leper of old his mantle, she wailed out:—

“Unclean! Unclean! Even the Almighty shuns my polluted flesh! I must bear

this mark of shame upon my forehead until the Judgment Day.” They all paused.

I had thrown myself beside her in an agony of helpless grief, and putting my arms around held her tight. For a few minutes our sorrowful hearts beat together,

whilst the friends around us turned away their eyes that ran tears silently. Then

Van Helsing turned and said gravely; so gravely that I could not help feeling that

he was in some way inspired, and was stating things outside himself:—

“It may be that you may have to bear that mark till God himself see fit, as He

most surely shall, on the Judgment Day, to redress all wrongs of the earth and of

His children that He has placed thereon. And oh, Madam Mina, my dear, my

dear, may we who love you be there to see, when that red scar, the sign of God’s

knowledge of what has been, shall pass away, and leave your forehead as pure as

the heart we know. For so surely as we live, that scar shall pass away when God sees right to lift the burden that is hard upon us. Till then we bear our Cross, as

His Son did in obedience to His Will. It may be that we are chosen instruments

of His good pleasure, and that we ascend to His bidding as that other through stripes and shame; through tears and blood; through doubts and fears, and all that

makes the difference between God and man."

There was hope in his words, and comfort; and they made for resignation.

Mina and I both felt so, and simultaneously we each took one of the old man's

hands and bent over and kissed it. Then without a word we all knelt down

together, and, all holding hands, swore to be true to each other. We men pledged

ourselves to raise the veil of sorrow from the head of her whom, each in his own

way, we loved; and we prayed for help and guidance in the terrible task which

lay before us.

It was then time to start. So I said farewell to Mina, a parting which neither of

us shall forget to our dying day; and we set out.

To one thing I have made up my mind: if we find out that Mina must be a vampire in the end, then she shall not go into that unknown and terrible land alone. I suppose it is thus that in old times one vampire meant many; just as their

hideous bodies could only rest in sacred earth, so the holiest love was the recruiting sergeant for their ghastly ranks.

We entered Carfax without trouble and found all things the same as on the

first occasion. It was hard to believe that amongst so prosaic surroundings of neglect and dust and decay there was any ground for such fear as already we knew. Had not our minds been made up, and had there not been terrible

memories to spur us on, we could hardly have proceeded with our task. We

found no papers, or any sign of use in the house; and in the old chapel the great

boxes looked just as we had seen them last. Dr. Van Helsing said to us solemnly

as we stood before them:—

“And now, my friends, we have a duty here to do. We must sterilise this earth,

so sacred of holy memories, that he has brought from a far distant land for such

fell use. He has chosen this earth because it has been holy. Thus we defeat him

with his own weapon, for we make it more holy still. It was sanctified to such use of man, now we sanctify it to God.” As he spoke he took from his bag a screwdriver and a wrench, and very soon the top of one of the cases was thrown

open. The earth smelled musty and close; but we did not somehow seem to

mind, for our attention was concentrated on the Professor. Taking from his box a

piece of the Sacred Wafer he laid it reverently on the earth, and then shutting down the lid began to screw it home, we aiding him as he worked.

One by one we treated in the same way each of the great boxes, and left them as we had found them to all appearance; but in each was a portion of the Host.

When we closed the door behind us, the Professor said solemnly:—

“So much is already done. If it may be that with all the others we can be so

successful, then the sunset of this evening may shine on Madam Mina’s forehead

all white as ivory and with no stain!”

As we passed across the lawn on our way to the station to catch our train we

could see the front of the asylum. I looked eagerly, and in the window of my own room saw Mina. I waved my hand to her, and nodded to tell that our work

there was successfully accomplished. She nodded in reply to show that she

understood. The last I saw, she was waving her hand in farewell. It was with a

heavy heart that we sought the station and just caught the train, which was steaming in as we reached the platform.

I have written this in the train.

Piccadilly, 12:30 o'clock. —Just before we reached Fenchurch Street Lord Godalming said to me:—

"Quincey and I will find a locksmith. You had better not come with us in case

there should be any difficulty; for under the circumstances it wouldn't seem so

bad for us to break into an empty house. But you are a solicitor and the Incorporated Law Society might tell you that you should have known better." I

demurred as to my not sharing any danger even of odium, but he went on:

"Besides, it will attract less attention if there are not too many of us. My title will make it all right with the locksmith, and with any policeman that may come along. You had better go with Jack and the Professor and stay in the Green Park,

somewhere in sight of the house; and when you see the door opened and the smith has gone away, do you all come across. We shall be on the lookout for you, and shall let you in."

“The advice is good!” said Van Helsing, so we said no more. Godalming and

Morris hurried off in a cab, we following in another. At the corner of Arlington

Street our contingent got out and strolled into the Green Park. My heart beat as I

saw the house on which so much of our hope was centred, looming up grim and

silent in its deserted condition amongst its more lively and spruce-looking

neighbours. We sat down on a bench within good view, and began to smoke

cigars so as to attract as little attention as possible. The minutes seemed to pass

with leaden feet as we waited for the coming of the others.

At length we saw a four-wheeler drive up. Out of it, in leisurely fashion, got

Lord Godalming and Morris; and down from the box descended a thick-set working man with his rush-woven basket of tools. Morris paid the cabman, who

touched his hat and drove away. Together the two ascended the steps, and Lord

Godalming pointed out what he wanted done. The workman took off his coat

leisurely and hung it on one of the spikes of the rail, saying something to a policeman who just then sauntered along.

The policeman nodded acquiescence,

and the man kneeling down placed his bag beside him. After searching through

it, he took out a selection of tools which he produced to lay beside him in orderly

fashion. Then he stood up, looked into the keyhole, blew into it, and turning to

his employers, made some remark. Lord Godalming smiled, and the man lifted a

good-sized bunch of keys; selecting one of them, he began to probe the lock, as

if feeling his way with it. After fumbling about for a bit he tried a second, and

then a third. All at once the door opened under a slight push from him, and he

and the two others entered the hall. We sat still; my own cigar burnt furiously, but Van Helsing’s went cold altogether. We waited patiently as we saw the

workman come out and bring in his bag. Then he held the door partly open, steadying it with his knees, whilst he fitted a key to the lock. This he finally handed to Lord Godalming, who took out his purse and gave him something.

The man touched his hat, took his bag, put on his coat and departed; not a soul

took the slightest notice of the whole transaction.

When the man had fairly gone, we three crossed the street and knocked at the

door. It was immediately opened by Quincey Morris, beside whom stood Lord

Godalming lighting a cigar.

“The place smells so vilely,” said the latter as we came in. It did indeed smell

vilely—like the old chapel at Carfax—and with our previous experience it was

plain to us that the Count had been using the place pretty freely. We moved to explore the house, all keeping together in case of attack; for we knew we had a

strong and wily enemy to deal with, and as yet we did not know whether the Count might not be in the house. In the dining-room, which lay at the back of the

hall, we found eight boxes of earth. Eight boxes only out of the nine, which we

sought! Our work was not over, and would never be until we should have found

the missing box. First we opened the shutters of the window which looked out across a narrow stone-flagged yard at the blank face of a stable, pointed to look

like the front of a miniature house. There were no windows in it, so we were not

afraid of being over-looked. We did not lose any time in examining the chests.

With the tools which we had brought with us we opened them, one by one, and

treated them as we had treated those others in the old chapel. It was evident to us

that the Count was not at present in the house, and we proceeded to search for

any of his effects.

After a cursory glance at the rest of the rooms, from basement to attic, we came to the conclusion that the dining-room contained any effects which might

belong to the Count; and so we proceeded to minutely examine them. They lay

in a sort of orderly disorder on the great dining-room table. There were title deeds of the Piccadilly house in a great bundle; deeds of the purchase of the houses at Mile End and Bermondsey; note-paper, envelopes, and pens and ink.

All were covered up in thin wrapping paper to keep them from the dust. There

were also a clothes brush, a brush and comb, and a jug and basin—the latter containing dirty water which was reddened as if with blood. Last of all was a little heap of keys of all sorts and sizes, probably those belonging to the other houses. When we had examined this last find, Lord Godalming and Quincey

Morris taking accurate notes of the various addresses of the houses in the East and the South, took with them the keys in a great bunch, and set out to destroy

the boxes in these places. The rest of us are, with what patience we can, waiting

their return—or the coming of the Count.

CHAPTER XXIII

DR. SEWARD'S DIARY

3 October. —The time seemed terrible long whilst we were waiting for the coming of Godalming and Quincey Morris. The Professor tried to keep our

minds active by using them all the time. I could see his beneficent purpose, by

the side glances which he threw from time to time at Harker. The poor fellow is

overwhelmed in a misery that is appalling to see. Last night he was a frank, happy-looking man, with strong, youthful face, full of energy, and with dark brown hair. To-day he is a drawn, haggard old man, whose white hair matches well with the hollow burning eyes and grief-written lines of his face. His energy

is still intact; in fact, he is like a living flame. This may yet be his salvation, for, if all go well, it will tide him over the despairing period; he will then, in a kind

of way, wake again to the realities of life. Poor fellow, I thought my own trouble

was bad enough, but his——! The Professor knows this well enough, and is

doing his best to keep his mind active. What he has been saying was, under the

circumstances, of absorbing interest. So well as I can remember, here it is:—

“I have studied, over and over again since they came into my hands, all the

papers relating to this monster; and the more I have studied, the greater seems the necessity to utterly stamp him out. All through there are signs of his advance;

not only of his power, but of his knowledge of it. As I learned from the researches of my friend Arminus of Buda-Pesth, he was in life a most wonderful

man. Soldier, statesman, and alchemist—which latter was the highest

development of the science-knowledge of his time. He had a mighty brain, a

learning beyond compare, and a heart that knew no fear and no remorse. He

dared even to attend the Scholomance, and there was no branch of knowledge of

his time that he did not essay. Well, in him the brain powers survived the physical death; though it would seem that memory was not all complete. In some

faculties of mind he has been, and is, only a child; but he is growing, and some

things that were childish at the first are now of man’s stature. He is

experimenting, and doing it well; and if it had not been that we have crossed his

path he would be yet—he may be yet if we fail—the father or furtherer of a new

order of beings, whose road must lead through Death, not Life.”

Harker groaned and said, “And this is all arrayed against my darling! But

how is he experimenting? The knowledge may help us to defeat him!”

“He has all along, since his coming, been trying his power, slowly but surely; that big child-brain of his is working. Well for us, it is, as yet, a child-brain; for

had he dared, at the first, to attempt certain things he would long ago have been

beyond our power. However, he means to succeed, and a man who has centuries

before him can afford to wait and to go slow. *Festina lente* may well be his motto.”

“I fail to understand,” said Harker wearily. “Oh, do be more plain to me!

Perhaps grief and trouble are dulling my brain.”

The Professor laid his hand tenderly on his shoulder as he spoke:—

“Ah, my child, I will be plain. Do you not see how, of late, this monster has

been creeping into knowledge experimentally. How he has been making use of

the zoöphagous patient to effect his entry into friend John’s home; for your Vampire, though in all afterwards he can come when and how he will, must at the first make entry only when asked thereto by an inmate. But these are not his

most important experiments. Do we not see how at the first all these so great boxes were moved by others. He knew not then but that must be so. But all the

time that so great child-brain of his was growing, and he began to consider whether he might not himself move the box. So he began to help; and then, when

he found that this be all-right, he try to move them all alone. And so he progress,

and he scatter these graves of him; and none but he know where they are hidden.

He may have intend to bury them deep in the ground. So that he only use them in

the night, or at such time as he can change his form, they do him equal well; and

none may know these are his hiding-place! But, my child, do not despair; this knowledge come to him just too late! Already all of his lairs but one be sterilise

as for him; and before the sunset this shall be so. Then he have no place where

he can move and hide. I delayed this morning that so we might be sure. Is there

not more at stake for us than for him? Then why we not be even more careful than him? By my clock it is one hour and already, if all be well, friend Arthur and Quincey are on their way to us. To-day is our day, and we must go sure, if

slow, and lose no chance. See! there are five of us when those absent ones return."

Whilst he was speaking we were startled by a knock at the hall door, the

double postman's knock of the telegraph boy. We all moved out to the hall with

one impulse, and Van Helsing, holding up his hand to us to keep silence, stepped

to the door and opened it. The boy handed in a despatch. The Professor closed

the door again, and, after looking at the direction, opened it and read aloud.

"Look out for D. He has just now, 12:45, come from Carfax hurriedly and

hastened towards the South. He seems to be going the round and may want to

see you: Mina."

There was a pause, broken by Jonathan Harker's voice:—

"Now, God be thanked, we shall soon meet!" Van Helsing turned to him

quickly and said:—

“God will act in His own way and time. Do not fear, and do not rejoice as yet;

for what we wish for at the moment may be our undoings.”

“I care for nothing now,” he answered hotly, “except to wipe out this brute from the face of creation. I would sell my soul to do it!”

“Oh, hush, hush, my child!” said Van Helsing. “God does not purchase souls

in this wise; and the Devil, though he may purchase, does not keep faith. But God is merciful and just, and knows your pain and your devotion to that dear Madam Mina. Think you, how her pain would be doubled, did she but hear your

wild words. Do not fear any of us, we are all devoted to this cause, and to-day

shall see the end. The time is coming for action; to-day this Vampire is limit to

the powers of man, and till sunset he may not change. It will take him time to arrive here—see, it is twenty minutes past one—and there are yet some times before he can hither come, be he never so quick. What we must hope for is that

my Lord Arthur and Quincey arrive first.”

About half an hour after we had received Mrs. Harker’s telegram, there came

a quiet, resolute knock at the hall door. It was just an ordinary knock, such as is

given hourly by thousands of gentlemen, but it made the Professor’s heart and mine beat loudly. We looked at each other, and together moved out into the hall;

we each held ready to use our various armaments—the spiritual in the left hand,

the mortal in the right. Van Helsing pulled back the latch, and, holding the door

half open, stood back, having both hands ready for action. The gladness of our

hearts must have shown upon our faces when on the step, close to the door, we

saw Lord Godalming and Quincey Morris. They came quickly in and closed the

door behind them, the former saying, as they moved along the hall:—

“It is all right. We found both places; six boxes in each and we destroyed them all!”

“Destroyed?” asked the Professor.

“For him!” We were silent for a minute, and then Quincey said:—

“There’s nothing to do but to wait here. If, however, he doesn’t turn up by five o’clock, we must start off; for it won’t do to leave Mrs. Harker alone after

sunset.”

“He will be here before long now,” said Van Helsing, who had been

consulting his pocket-book. “*Nota bene*, in Madam’s telegram he went south

from Carfax, that means he went to cross the river, and he could only do so at slack of tide, which should be something before one o’clock. That he went south

has a meaning for us. He is as yet only suspicious; and he went from Carfax first

to the place where he would suspect interference least. You must have been at Bermondsey only a short time before him. That he is not here already shows that

he went to Mile End next. This took him some time; for he would then have to

be carried over the river in some way. Believe me, my friends, we shall not have

long to wait now. We should have ready some plan of attack, so that we may throw away no chance. Hush, there is no time now. Have all your arms! Be

ready!” He held up a warning hand as he spoke, for we all could hear a key softly inserted in the lock of the hall door.

I could not but admire, even at such a moment, the way in which a dominant

spirit asserted itself. In all our hunting parties and adventures in different parts of the world, Quincey Morris had always been the one to arrange the plan of action,

and Arthur and I had been accustomed to obey him implicitly. Now, the old habit

seemed to be renewed instinctively. With a swift glance around the room, he at

once laid out our plan of attack, and, without speaking a word, with a gesture, placed us each in position. Van Helsing, Harker, and I were just behind the door,

so that when it was opened the Professor could guard it whilst we two stepped

between the incomer and the door. Godalming behind and Quincey in front stood

just out of sight ready to move in front of the window. We waited in a suspense

that made the seconds pass with nightmare slowness. The slow, careful steps

came along the hall; the Count was evidently prepared for some surprise—at

least he feared it.

Suddenly with a single bound he leaped into the room, winning a way past us

before any of us could raise a hand to stay him. There was something so panther-

like in the movement—something so unhuman, that it seemed to sober us all

from the shock of his coming. The first to act was Harker, who, with a quick movement, threw himself before the door leading into the room in the front of the house. As the Count saw us, a horrible sort of snarl passed over his face, showing

the eye-teeth long and pointed; but the evil smile as quickly passed into

a cold stare of lion-like disdain. His expression again changed as, with a single

impulse, we all advanced upon him. It was a pity that we had not some better organised plan of attack, for even at the moment I wondered what we were to do.

I did not myself know whether our lethal weapons would avail us anything.

Harker evidently meant to try the matter, for he had ready his great Kukri knife

and made a fierce and sudden cut at him. The blow was a powerful one; only the

diabolical quickness of the Count’s leap back saved him. A second less and the

trenchant blade had shorne through his heart. As it was, the point just cut the cloth of his coat, making a wide gap whence a bundle of bank-notes and a stream

of gold fell out. The expression of the Count’s face was so hellish, that for a moment I feared for Harker, though I saw him throw the terrible knife aloft again

for another stroke. Instinctively I moved forward with a protective impulse,

holding the Crucifix and Wafer in my left hand. I felt a mighty power fly along

my arm; and it was without surprise that I saw the monster cower back before a

similar movement made spontaneously by each one of us. It would be

impossible to describe the expression of hate and baffled malignity—of anger

and hellish rage—which came over the Count’s face. His waxen hue became

greenish-yellow by the contrast of his burning eyes, and the red scar on the forehead showed on the pallid skin like a palpitating wound. The next instant, with a sinuous dive he swept under Harker’s arm, ere his blow could fall, and,

grasping a handful of the money from the floor, dashed across the room, threw

himself at the window. Amid the crash and glitter of the falling glass, he tumbled

into the flagged area below. Through the sound of the shivering glass I could hear the “ting” of the gold, as some of the sovereigns fell on the flagging.

We ran over and saw him spring unhurt from the ground. He, rushing up the

steps, crossed the flagged yard, and pushed open the stable door. There he turned

and spoke to us:—

“You think to baffle me, you—with your pale faces all in a row, like sheep in

a butcher’s. You shall be sorry yet, each one of you! You think you have left me

without a place to rest; but I have more. My revenge is just begun! I spread it over centuries, and time is on my side. Your girls that you all love are mine already; and through them you and others shall yet be mine—my creatures, to do

my bidding and to be my jackals when I want to feed. Bah!” With a

contemptuous sneer, he passed quickly through the door, and we heard the rusty

bolt creak as he fastened it behind him. A door beyond opened and shut. The first of us to speak was the Professor, as, realising the difficulty of following him

through the stable, we moved toward the hall.

“We have learnt something—much! Notwithstanding his brave words, he

fears us; he fear time, he fear want! For if not, why he hurry so? His very tone

betray him, or my ears deceive. Why take that money? You follow quick. You are hunters of wild beast, and understand it so. For me, I make sure that nothing

here may be of use to him, if so that he return.” As he spoke he put the money

remaining into his pocket; took the title-deeds in the bundle as Harker had left them, and swept the remaining things into the open fireplace, where he set fire to

them with a match.

Godalming and Morris had rushed out into the yard, and Harker had lowered himself from the window to follow the Count. He had, however, bolted the stable

door; and by the time they had forced it open there was no sign of him. Van Helsing and I tried to make inquiry at the back of the house; but the mews was

deserted and no one had seen him depart.

It was now late in the afternoon, and sunset was not far off. We had to

recognise that our game was up; with heavy hearts we agreed with the Professor

when he said:—

“Let us go back to Madam Mina—poor, poor dear Madam Mina. All we can

do just now is done; and we can there, at least, protect her. But we need not despair. There is but one more earth-box, and we must try to find it; when that is

done all may yet be well.” I could see that he spoke as bravely as he could to comfort Harker. The poor fellow was quite broken down; now and again he gave

a low groan which he could not suppress—he was thinking of his wife.

With sad hearts we came back to my house, where we found Mrs. Harker

waiting us, with an appearance of cheerfulness which did honour to her bravery

and unselfishness. When she saw our faces, her own became as pale as death: for

a second or two her eyes were closed as if she were in secret prayer; and then she said cheerfully:—

“I can never thank you all enough. Oh, my poor darling!” As she spoke, she

took her husband’s grey head in her hands and kissed it —“Lay your poor head

here and rest it. All will yet be well, dear! God will protect us if He so will it in

His good intent.” The poor fellow groaned. There was no place for words in his

sublime misery.

We had a sort of perfunctory supper together, and I think it cheered us all up

somewhat. It was, perhaps, the mere animal heat of food to hungry people—for

none of us had eaten anything since breakfast—or the sense of companionship

may have helped us; but anyhow we were all less miserable, and saw the

morrow as not altogether without hope. True to our promise, we told Mrs.

Harker everything which had passed; and although she grew snowy white at

times when danger had seemed to threaten her husband, and red at others when

his devotion to her was manifested, she listened bravely and with calmness.

When we came to the part where Harker had rushed at the Count so recklessly,

she clung to her husband’s arm, and held it tight as though her clinging could protect him from any harm that might come. She said nothing, however, till the

narration was all done, and matters had been brought right up to the present time.

Then without letting go her husband’s hand she stood up amongst us and spoke.

Oh, that I could give any idea of the scene; of that sweet, sweet, good, good

woman in all the radiant beauty of her youth and animation, with the red scar on her forehead, of which she was conscious, and which we saw with grinding of our teeth—remembering whence and how it came; her loving kindness against

our grim hate; her tender faith against all our fears and doubting; and we, knowing that so far as symbols went, she with all her goodness and purity and

faith, was outcast from God.

“Jonathan,” she said, and the word sounded like music on her lips it was so

full of love and tenderness, “Jonathan dear, and you all my true, true friends, I

want you to bear something in mind through all this dreadful time. I know that

you must fight—that you must destroy even as you destroyed the false Lucy so

that the true Lucy might live hereafter; but it is not a work of hate. That poor soul who has wrought all this misery is the saddest case of all. Just think what

will be his joy when he, too, is destroyed in his worser part that his better part

may have spiritual immortality. You must be pitiful to him, too, though it may not hold your hands from his destruction.”

As she spoke I could see her husband’s face darken and draw together, as

though the passion in him were shrivelling his being to its core. Instinctively the

clasp on his wife’s hand grew closer, till his knuckles looked white. She did not

flinch from the pain which I knew she must have suffered, but looked at him with eyes that were more appealing than ever. As she stopped speaking he leaped

to his feet, almost tearing his hand from hers as he spoke:—

“May God give him into my hand just for long enough to destroy that earthly

life of him which we are aiming at. If beyond it I could send his soul for ever and ever to burning hell I would do it!”

“Oh, hush! oh, hush! in the name of the good God. Don’t say such things,

Jonathan, my husband; or you will crush me with fear and horror. Just think, my

dear—I have been thinking all this long, long day of it—that ... perhaps ... some

day ... I, too, may need such pity; and that some other like you—and with equal

cause for anger—may deny it to me! Oh, my husband! my husband, indeed I

would have spared you such a thought had there been another way; but I pray that God may not have treasured your wild words, except as the heart-broken wail of a very loving and sorely stricken man. Oh, God, let these poor white hairs go in evidence of what he has suffered, who all his life has done no wrong,

and on whom so many sorrows have come.”

We men were all in tears now. There was no resisting them, and we wept

openly. She wept, too, to see that her sweeter counsels had prevailed. Her

husband flung himself on his knees beside her, and putting his arms round her,

hid his face in the folds of her dress. Van Helsing beckoned to us and we stole

out of the room, leaving the two loving hearts alone with their God.

Before they retired the Professor fixed up the room against any coming of the

Vampire, and assured Mrs. Harker that she might rest in peace. She tried to school herself to the belief, and, manifestly for her husband’s sake, tried to seem

content. It was a brave struggle; and was, I think and believe, not without its reward. Van Helsing had placed at hand a bell which either of them was to sound

in case of any emergency. When they had retired, Quincey, Godalming, and I

arranged that we should sit up, dividing the night between us, and watch over the

safety of the poor stricken lady. The first watch falls to Quincey, so the rest of us

shall be off to bed as soon as we can. Godalming has already turned in, for his is

the second watch. Now that my work is done I, too, shall go to bed.

Jonathan Harker’s Journal.

3-4 October, close to midnight. —I thought yesterday would never end. There

was over me a yearning for sleep, in some sort of blind belief that to wake would

be to find things changed, and that any change must now be for the better.

Before we parted, we discussed what our next step was to be, but we could arrive at no result. All we knew was that one earth-box remained, and that the Count alone knew where it was. If he chooses to lie hidden, he may baffle us for

years; and in the meantime!—the thought is too horrible, I dare not think of it even now. This I know: that if ever there was a woman who was all perfection,

that one is my poor wronged darling. I love her a thousand times more for her sweet pity of last night, a pity that made my own hate of the monster seem despicable. Surely God will not permit the world to be the poorer by the loss of

such a creature. This is hope to me. We are all drifting reefwards now, and faith

is our only anchor. Thank God! Mina is sleeping, and sleeping without dreams. I

fear what her dreams might be like, with such terrible memories to ground them

in. She has not been so calm, within my seeing, since the sunset. Then, for a while, there came over her face a repose which was like spring after the blasts of

March. I thought at the time that it was the softness of the red sunset on her face,

but somehow now I think it has a deeper meaning. I am not sleepy myself,

though I am weary—weary to death. However, I must try to sleep; for there is to-

morrow to think of, and there is no rest for me until....

Later. —I must have fallen asleep, for I was awaked by Mina, who was sitting

up in bed, with a startled look on her face. I could see easily, for we did not leave

the room in darkness; she had placed a warning hand over my mouth, and now

she whispered in my ear:—

“Hush! there is someone in the corridor!” I got up softly, and crossing the room, gently opened the door.

Just outside, stretched on a mattress, lay Mr. Morris, wide awake. He raised a

warning hand for silence as he whispered to me:—

“Hush! go back to bed; it is all right. One of us will be here all night. We don’t mean to take any chances!”

His look and gesture forbade discussion, so I came back and told Mina. She

sighed and positively a shadow of a smile stole over her poor, pale face as she

put her arms round me and said softly:—

“Oh, thank God for good brave men!” With a sigh she sank back again to

sleep. I write this now as I am not sleepy, though I must try again.

4 October, morning. —Once again during the night I was wakened by Mina.

This time we had all had a good sleep, for the grey of the coming dawn was making the windows into sharp oblongs, and the gas flame was like a speck

rather than a disc of light. She said to me hurriedly:—

“Go, call the Professor. I want to see him at once.”

“Why?” I asked.

“I have an idea. I suppose it must have come in the night, and matured

without my knowing it. He must hypnotise me before the dawn, and then I shall

be able to speak. Go quick, dearest; the time is getting close.” I went to the door.

Dr. Seward was resting on the mattress, and, seeing me, he sprang to his feet.

“Is anything wrong?” he asked, in alarm.

“No,” I replied; “but Mina wants to see Dr. Van Helsing at once.”

“I will go,” he said, and hurried into the Professor’s room.

In two or three minutes later Van Helsing was in the room in his dressing-gown, and Mr. Morris and Lord Godalming were with Dr. Seward at the door

asking questions. When the Professor saw Mina a smile—a positive smile ousted

the anxiety of his face; he rubbed his hands as he said:—

“Oh, my dear Madam Mina, this is indeed a change. See! friend Jonathan, we

have got our dear Madam Mina, as of old, back to us to-day!” Then turning to

her, he said, cheerfully: “And what am I do for you? For at this hour you do not

want me for nothings.”

“I want you to hypnotise me!” she said. “Do it before the dawn, for I feel that then I can speak, and speak freely. Be quick, for the time is short!” Without a word he motioned her to sit up in bed.

Looking fixedly at her, he commenced to make passes in front of her, from

over the top of her head downward, with each hand in turn. Mina gazed at him

fixedly for a few minutes, during which my own heart beat like a trip hammer,

for I felt that some crisis was at hand. Gradually her eyes closed, and she sat, stock still; only by the gentle heaving of

her bosom could one know that she was

alive. The Professor made a few more passes and then stopped, and I could see

that his forehead was covered with great beads of perspiration. Mina opened her

eyes; but she did not seem the same woman. There was a far-away look in her

eyes, and her voice had a sad dreaminess which was new to me. Raising his hand

to impose silence, the Professor motioned to me to bring the others in. They came on tip-toe, closing the door behind them, and stood at the foot of the bed,

looking on. Mina appeared not to see them. The stillness was broken by Van Helsing’s voice speaking in a low level tone which would not break the current

of her thoughts:—

“Where are you?” The answer came in a neutral way:—

“I do not know. Sleep has no place it can call its own.” For several minutes

there was silence. Mina sat rigid, and the Professor stood staring at her fixedly;

the rest of us hardly dared to breathe. The room was growing lighter; without taking his eyes from Mina’s face, Dr. Van Helsing motioned me to pull up the blind. I did so, and the day seemed just upon us. A red streak shot up, and a rosy

light seemed to diffuse itself through the room. On the instant the Professor spoke again:—

“Where are you now?” The answer came dreamily, but with intention; it were

as though she were interpreting something. I have heard her use the same tone when reading her shorthand notes.

“I do not know. It is all strange to me!”

“What do you see?”

“I can see nothing; it is all dark.”

“What do you hear?” I could detect the strain in the Professor’s patient voice.

“The lapping of water. It is gurgling by, and little waves leap. I can hear them

on the outside.”

“Then you are on a ship?” We all looked at each other, trying to glean

something each from the other. We were afraid to think. The answer came quick:

—

“Oh, yes!”

“What else do you hear?”

“The sound of men stamping overhead as they run about. There is the

creaking of a chain, and the loud tinkle as the check of the capstan falls into the

rachet.”

“What are you doing?”

“I am still—oh, so still. It is like death!” The voice faded away into a deep breath as of one sleeping, and the open eyes closed again.

By this time the sun had risen, and we were all in the full light of day. Dr. Van

Helsing placed his hands on Mina’s shoulders, and laid her head down softly on

her pillow. She lay like a sleeping child for a few moments, and then, with a long

sigh, awoke and stared in wonder to see us all around her. “Have I been talking

in my sleep?” was all she said. She seemed, however, to know the situation without telling, though she was eager to know what she had told. The Professor

repeated the conversation, and she said:—

“Then there is not a moment to lose: it may not be yet too late!” Mr. Morris

and Lord Godalming started for the door but the Professor’s calm voice called them back:—

“Stay, my friends. That ship, wherever it was, was weighing anchor whilst

she spoke. There are many ships weighing anchor at the moment in your so great

Port of London. Which of them is it that you seek? God be thanked that we have

once again a clue, though whither it may lead us we know not. We have been blind somewhat; blind after the manner of men, since when we can look back we

see what we might have seen looking forward if we had been able to see what

we might have seen! Alas, but that sentence is a puddle; is it not? We can know

now what was in the Count’s mind, when he seize that money, though Jonathan’s

so fierce knife put him in the danger that even he dread. He meant escape. Hear

me, ESCAPE! He saw that with but one earth-box left, and a pack of men

following like dogs after a fox, this London was no place for him. He have take

his last earth-box on board a ship, and he leave the land. He think to escape, but

no! we follow him. Tally Ho! as friend Arthur would say when he put on his red

frock! Our old fox is wily; oh! so wily, and we must follow with wile. I, too, am

wily and I think his mind in a little while. In meantime we may rest and in peace,

for there are waters between us which he do not want to pass, and which he could not if he would—unless the ship were to touch the land, and then only at

full or slack tide. See, and the sun is just rose, and all day to sunset is to us. Let

us take bath, and dress, and have breakfast which we all need, and which we can

eat comfortably since he be not in the same land with us." Mina looked at him appealingly as she asked:—

"But why need we seek him further, when he is gone away from us?" He took

her hand and patted it as he replied:—

"Ask me nothings as yet. When we have breakfast, then I answer all

questions." He would say no more, and we separated to dress.

After breakfast Mina repeated her question. He looked at her gravely for a

minute and then said sorrowfully:—

"Because my dear, dear Madam Mina, now more than ever must we find him

even if we have to follow him to the jaws of Hell!" She grew paler as she asked

faintly:—

“Why?”

“Because,” he answered solemnly, “he can live for centuries, and you are but

mortal woman. Time is now to be dreaded—since once he put that mark upon

your throat.”

I was just in time to catch her as she fell forward in a faint.

CHAPTER XXIV

DR. SEWARD’S PHONOGRAPH DIARY, SPOKEN BY VAN HELSING

THIS to Jonathan Harker.

You are to stay with your dear Madam Mina. We shall go to make our search

—if I can call it so, for it is not search but knowing, and we seek confirmation

only. But do you stay and take care of her to-day. This is your best and most holiest office. This day nothing can find him here. Let me tell you that so you will know what we four know already, for I have tell them. He, our enemy, have

gone away; he have gone back to his Castle in Transylvania. I know it so well, as

if a great hand of fire wrote it on the wall. He have prepare for this in some way,

and that last earth-box was ready to ship somewheres. For this he took the money; for this he hurry at the last, lest we catch him before the sun go down. It

was his last hope, save that he might hide in the tomb that he think poor Miss Lucy, being as he thought like him, keep open to him. But there was not of time.

When that fail he make straight for his last resource—his last earth-work I might

say did I wish *double entente*. He is clever, oh, so clever! he know that his game here was finish; and so he decide he go back home. He find ship going by the route he came, and he go in it. We go off now to find what ship, and whither bound; when we have discover that, we come back and tell you all. Then we will

comfort you and poor dear Madam Mina with new hope. For it will be hope

when you think it over: that all is not lost. This very creature that we pursue, he

take hundreds of years to get so far as London; and yet in one day, when we know of the disposal of him we drive him out. He is finite, though he is powerful

to do much harm and suffers not as we do. But we are strong, each in our purpose; and we are all more strong together. Take heart afresh, dear husband of

Madam Mina. This battle is but begun, and in the end we shall win—so sure as

that God sits on high to watch over His children. Therefore be of much comfort

till we return.

VAN HELSING.

Jonathan Harker's Journal.

4 October. —When I read to Mina, Van Helsing's message in the phonograph,

the poor girl brightened up considerably. Already the certainty that the Count is

out of the country has given her comfort; and comfort is strength to her. For my

own part, now that his horrible danger is not face to face with us, it seems almost impossible to believe in it. Even my own terrible experiences in Castle Dracula

seem like a long-forgotten dream. Here in the crisp autumn air in the bright sunlight——

Alas! how can I disbelieve! In the midst of my thought my eye fell on the red

scar on my poor darling's white forehead. Whilst that lasts, there can be no disbelief. And afterwards the very memory of it will keep faith crystal clear.

Mina and I fear to be idle, so we have been over all the diaries again and again.

Somehow, although the reality seems greater each time, the pain and the fear seem less. There is something of a guiding purpose manifest throughout, which

is comforting. Mina says that perhaps we are the instruments of ultimate good. It

may be! I shall try to think as she does. We have never spoken to each other yet

of the future. It is better to wait till we see the Professor and the others after their investigations.

The day is running by more quickly than I ever thought a day could run for

me again. It is now three o’clock.

Mina Harker’s Journal.

5 October, 5 p. m. —Our meeting for report. Present: Professor Van Helsing,

Lord Godalming, Dr. Seward, Mr. Quincey Morris, Jonathan Harker, Mina

Harker.

Dr. Van Helsing described what steps were taken during the day to discover

on what boat and whither bound Count Dracula made his escape:—

“As I knew that he wanted to get back to Transylvania, I felt sure that he must

go by the Danube mouth; or by somewhere in the Black Sea, since by that way

he come. It was a dreary blank that was before us. *Omne ignotum pro magnifico*;

and so with heavy hearts we start to find what ships leave for the Black Sea last

night. He was in sailing ship, since Madam Mina tell of sails being set. These not

so important as to go in your list of the shipping in the *Times*, and so we go, by suggestion of Lord Godalming, to your Lloyd's, where are note of all ships that

sail, however so small. There we find that only one Black-Sea-bound ship go out

with the tide. She is the *Czarina Catherine*, and she sail from Doolittle's Wharf for Varna, and thence on to other parts and up the Danube. 'Soh!' said I, 'this is

the ship whereon is the Count.' So off we go to Doolittle's Wharf, and there we

find a man in an office of wood so small that the man look bigger than the office.

From him we inquire of the goings of the *Czarina Catherine*. He swear much, and he red face and loud of voice, but he good fellow all the same; and when Quincey give him something from his pocket which crackle as he roll it up, and

put it in a so small bag which he have hid deep in his clothing, he still better fellow and humble servant to us. He come with us, and ask many men who are

rough and hot; these be better fellows too when they have been no more thirsty.

They say much of blood and bloom, and of others which I comprehend not,

though I guess what they mean; but nevertheless they tell us all things which we

want to know.

“They make known to us among them, how last afternoon at about five

o’clock comes a man so hurry. A tall man, thin and pale, with high nose and teeth so white, and eyes that seem to be burning. That he be all in black, except

that he have a hat of straw which suit not him or the time. That he scatter his money in making quick inquiry as to what ship sails for the Black Sea and for

where. Some took him to the office and then to the ship, where he will not go aboard but halt at shore end of gang-plank, and ask that the captain come to him.

The captain come, when told that he will be pay well; and though he swear much

at the first he agree to term. Then the thin man go and some one tell him where

horse and cart can be hired. He go there and soon he come again, himself driving

cart on which a great box; this he himself lift down, though it take several to put

it on truck for the ship. He give much talk to captain as to how and where his box is to be place; but the captain like it not and swear at him in many tongues,

and tell him that if he like he can come and see where it shall be. But he say

‘no’; that he come not yet, for that he have much to do. Whereupon the captain

tell him that he had better be quick—with blood—for that his ship will leave the

place—of blood—before the turn of the tide—with blood. Then the thin man

smile and say that of course he must go when he think fit; but he will be surprise

if he go quite so soon. The captain swear again, polyglot, and the thin man make

him bow, and thank him, and say that he will so far intrude on his kindness as to

come aboard before the sailing. Final the captain, more red than ever, and in more tongues tell him that he doesn’t want no Frenchmen—with bloom upon

them and also with blood—in his ship—with blood on her also. And so, after asking where there might be close at hand a ship where he might purchase ship

forms, he departed.

“No one knew where he went ‘or bloomin’ well cared,’ as they said, for they

had something else to think of—well with blood again; for it soon became

apparent to all that the *Czarina Catherine* would not sail as was expected. A thin mist began to creep up from the river,

and it grew, and grew; till soon a dense fog enveloped the ship and all around her. The captain swore polyglot—very

polyglot—polyglot with bloom and blood; but he could do nothing. The water

rose and rose; and he began to fear that he would lose the tide altogether. He was

in no friendly mood, when just at full tide, the thin man came up the gang-plank again and asked to see where his box had been stowed. Then the captain replied

that he wished that he and his box—old and with much bloom and blood—were

in hell. But the thin man did not be offend, and went down with the mate and saw where it was place, and came up and stood awhile on deck in fog. He must

have come off by himself, for none notice him. Indeed they thought not of him;

for soon the fog begin to melt away, and all was clear again. My friends of the

thirst and the language that was of bloom and blood laughed, as they told how

the captain’s swears exceeded even his usual polyglot, and was more than ever

full of picturesque, when on questioning other mariners who were on movement

up and down on the river that hour, he found that few of them had seen any of

fog at all, except where it lay round the wharf. However, the ship went out on the

ebb tide; and was doubtless by morning far down the river mouth. She was by then, when they told us, well out to sea.

“And so, my dear Madam Mina, it is that we have to rest for a time, for our

enemy is on the sea, with the fog at his command, on his way to the Danube mouth. To sail a ship takes time, go she never so quick; and when we start we go

on land more quick, and we meet him there. Our best hope is to come on him when in the box between sunrise and sunset; for then he can make no struggle,

and we may deal with him as we should. There are days for us, in which we can

make ready our plan. We know all about where he go; for we have seen the owner of the ship, who have shown us invoices and all papers that can be. The

box we seek is to be landed in Varna, and to be given to an agent, one Ristics who will there present his credentials; and so our merchant friend will have done

his part. When he ask if there be any wrong, for that so, he can telegraph and have inquiry made at Varna, we say ‘no’; for what is to be done is not for police

or of the customs. It must be done by us alone and in our own way.”

When Dr. Van Helsing had done speaking, I asked him if he were certain that

the Count had remained on board the ship. He replied: “We have the best proof

of that: your own evidence, when in the hypnotic trance this morning.” I asked

him again if it were really necessary that they should pursue the Count, for oh! I

dread Jonathan leaving me, and I know that he would surely go if the others went. He answered in growing passion, at first quietly. As he went on, however,

he grew more angry and more forceful, till in the end we could not but see wherein was at least some of that personal dominance which made him so long a

master amongst men:—

“Yes, it is necessary—necessary—necessary! For your sake in the first, and

then for the sake of humanity. This monster has done much harm already, in the

narrow scope where he find himself, and in the short time when as yet he was only as a body groping his so small measure in darkness and not knowing. All

this have I told these others; you, my dear Madam Mina, will learn it in the phonograph of my friend John, or in that of your husband. I have told them how

the measure of leaving his own barren land—barren of peoples—and coming to

a new land where life of man teems till they are like the multitude of standing corn, was the work of centuries. Were another of the Un-Dead, like him, to try to

do what he has done, perhaps not all the centuries of the world that have been, or

that will be, could aid him. With this one, all the forces of nature that are occult

and deep and strong must have worked together in some wondrous way. The

very place, where he have been alive, Un-Dead for all these centuries, is full of

strangeness of the geologic and chemical world. There are deep caverns and

fissures that reach none know whither. There have been volcanoes, some of

whose openings still send out waters of strange properties, and gases that kill or

make to vivify. Doubtless, there is something magnetic or electric in some of these combinations of occult forces which work for physical life in strange way;

and in himself were from the first some great qualities. In a hard and warlike time he was celebrate that he have more iron nerve, more subtle brain, more braver heart, than any man. In him some vital principle have in strange way found their utmost; and as his body keep strong and grow and thrive, so his brain

grow too. All this without that diabolic aid which is surely to him; for it have to

yield to the powers that come from, and are, symbolic of good. And now this is

what he is to us. He have infect you—oh, forgive me, my dear, that I must say

such; but it is for good of you that I speak. He infect you in such wise, that even

if he do no more, you have only to live—to live in your own old, sweet way; and

so in time, death, which is of man's common lot and with God's sanction, shall

make you like to him. This must not be! We have sworn together that it must not.

Thus are we ministers of God's own wish: that the world, and men for whom His

Son die, will not be given over to monsters, whose very existence would defame

Him. He have allowed us to redeem one soul already, and we go out as the old

knights of the Cross to redeem more. Like them we shall travel towards the sunrise; and like them, if we fall, we fall in good cause." He paused and I said:—

"But will not the Count take his rebuff wisely? Since he has been driven from

England, will he not avoid it, as a tiger does the village from which he has been

hunted?”

“Aha!” he said, “your simile of the tiger good, for me, and I shall adopt him.

Your man-eater, as they of India call the tiger who has once tasted blood of the

human, care no more for the other prey, but prowl unceasing till he get him. This

that we hunt from our village is a tiger, too, a man-eater, and he never cease to prowl. Nay, in himself he is not one to retire and stay afar. In his life, his living

life, he go over the Turkey frontier and attack his enemy on his own ground; he

be beaten back, but did he stay? No! He come again, and again, and again. Look

at his persistence and endurance. With the child-brain that was to him he have long since conceive the idea of coming to a great city. What does he do? He find

out the place of all the world most of promise for him. Then he deliberately set

himself down to prepare for the task. He find in patience just how is his strength,

and what are his powers. He study new tongues. He learn new social life; new

environment of old ways, the politic, the law, the finance, the science, the habit

of a new land and a new people who have come to be since he was. His glimpse

that he have had, whet his appetite only and enkeen his desire. Nay, it help him

to grow as to his brain; for it all prove to him how right he was at the first in his

surmises. He have done this alone; all alone! from a ruin tomb in a forgotten land. What more may he not do when the greater world of thought is open to him. He that can smile at death, as we know him; who can flourish in the midst

of diseases that kill off whole peoples. Oh, if such an one was to come from God, and not the Devil, what a force for good might he not be in this old world

of ours. But we are pledged to set the world free. Our toil must be in silence, and

our efforts all in secret; for in this enlightened age, when men believe not even

what they see, the doubting of wise men would be his greatest strength. It would

be at once his sheath and his armour, and his weapons to destroy us, his enemies,

who are willing to peril even our own souls for the safety of one we love—for

the good of mankind, and for the honour and glory of God.”

After a general discussion it was determined that for to-night nothing be

definitely settled; that we should all sleep on the facts, and try to think out the proper conclusions. To-morrow, at breakfast, we are to meet again, and, after making our conclusions known to one another, we shall decide on some definite

cause of action.

. . . . . .

I feel a wonderful peace and rest to-night. It is as if some haunting presence

were removed from me. Perhaps ...

My surmise was not finished, could not be; for I caught sight in the mirror of

the red mark upon my forehead; and I knew that I was still unclean.

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

5 October. —We all rose early, and I think that sleep did much for each and all of us. When we met at early breakfast there was more general cheerfulness than

any of us had ever expected to experience again.

It is really wonderful how much resilience there is in human nature. Let any

obstructing cause, no matter what, be removed in any way—even by death—and

we fly back to first principles of hope and enjoyment. More than once as we sat

around the table, my eyes opened in wonder whether the whole of the past days

had not been a dream. It was only when I caught sight of the red blotch on Mrs.

Harker's forehead that I was brought back to reality. Even now, when I am

gravely revolving the matter, it is almost impossible to realise that the cause of

all our trouble is still existent. Even Mrs. Harker seems to lose sight of her trouble for whole spells; it is only now and again, when something recalls it to

her mind, that she thinks of her terrible scar. We are to meet here in my study in

half an hour and decide on our course of action. I see only one immediate difficulty, I know it by instinct rather than reason: we shall all have to speak frankly; and yet I fear that in some mysterious way poor Mrs. Harker's tongue is

tied. I *know* that she forms conclusions of her own, and from all that has been I can guess how brilliant and how true they must be; but she will not, or cannot,

give them utterance. I have mentioned this to Van Helsing, and he and I are to

talk it over when we are alone. I suppose it is some of that horrid poison which

has got into her veins beginning to work. The Count had his own purposes when

he gave her what Van Helsing called “the Vampire’s baptism of blood.” Well, there may be a poison that distils itself out of good things; in an age when the existence of ptomaines is a mystery we should not wonder at anything! One

thing I know: that if my instinct be true regarding poor Mrs. Harker’s silences,

then there is a terrible difficulty—an unknown danger—in the work before us.

The same power that compels her silence may compel her speech. I dare not

think further; for so I should in my thoughts dishonour a noble woman!

Van Helsing is coming to my study a little before the others. I shall try to open the subject with him.

Later. —When the Professor came in, we talked over the state of things. I could see that he had something on his mind which he wanted to say, but felt some hesitancy about broaching the subject. After beating about the bush a little,

he said suddenly:—

“Friend John, there is something that you and I must talk of alone, just at the

first at any rate. Later, we may have to take the others into our confidence”; then

he stopped, so I waited; he went on:—

“Madam Mina, our poor, dear Madam Mina is changing.” A cold shiver ran

through me to find my worst fears thus endorsed. Van Helsing continued:—

“With the sad experience of Miss Lucy, we must this time be warned before things go too far. Our task is now in reality more difficult than ever, and this new

trouble makes every hour of the direst importance. I can see the characteristics of

the vampire coming in her face. It is now but very, very slight; but it is to be seen

if we have eyes to notice without to prejudge. Her teeth are some sharper, and at

times her eyes are more hard. But these are not all, there is to her the silence now

often; as so it was with Miss Lucy. She did not speak, even when she wrote that

which she wished to be known later. Now my fear is this. If it be that she can, by

our hypnotic trance, tell what the Count see and hear, is it not more true that he

who have hypnotise her first, and who have drink of her very blood and make her drink of his, should, if he will, compel

her mind to disclose to him that which

she know?” I nodded acquiescence; he went on:—

“Then, what we must do is to prevent this; we must keep her ignorant of our

intent, and so she cannot tell what she know not. This is a painful task! Oh, so

painful that it heart-break me to think of; but it must be. When to-day we meet, I

must tell her that for reason which we will not to speak she must not more be of

our council, but be simply guarded by us.” He wiped his forehead, which had broken out in profuse perspiration at the thought of the pain which he might have

to inflict upon the poor soul already so tortured. I knew that it would be some sort of comfort to him if I told him that I also had come to the same conclusion;

for at any rate it would take away the pain of doubt. I told him, and the effect was as I expected.

It is now close to the time of our general gathering. Van Helsing has gone away to prepare for the meeting, and his painful part of it. I really believe his purpose is to be able to pray alone.

Later. —At the very outset of our meeting a great personal relief was experienced by both Van Helsing and myself. Mrs. Harker had sent a message by

her husband to say that she would not join us at present, as she thought it better

that we should be free to discuss our movements without her presence to

embarrass us. The Professor and I looked at each other for an instant, and somehow we both seemed relieved. For my own part, I thought that if Mrs.

Harker realised the danger herself, it was much pain as well as much danger averted. Under the circumstances we agreed, by a questioning look and answer,

with finger on lip, to preserve silence in our suspicions, until we should have been able to confer alone again. We went at once into our Plan of Campaign. Van

Helsing roughly put the facts before us first:—

“The *Czarina Catherine* left the Thames yesterday morning. It will take her

at the quickest speed she has ever made at least three weeks to reach Varna; but we can travel overland to the same place in three days. Now, if we allow for two

days less for the ship’s voyage, owing to such weather influences as we know that the Count can bring to bear; and if we allow a whole day and night for any

delays which may occur to us, then we have a margin of nearly two weeks. Thus,

in order to be quite safe, we must leave here on 17th at latest. Then we shall at

any rate be in Varna a day before the ship arrives, and able to make such preparations as may be necessary. Of course we shall all go armed—armed

against evil things, spiritual as well as physical." Here Quincey Morris added:—

"I understand that the Count comes from a wolf country, and it may be that he

shall get there before us. I propose that we add Winchesters to our armament. I

have a kind of belief in a Winchester when there is any trouble of that sort around. Do you remember, Art, when we had the pack after us at Tobolsk? What

wouldn't we have given then for a repeater apiece!"

"Good!" said Van Helsing, "Winchesters it shall be. Quincey's head is level

at all times, but most so when there is to hunt, metaphor be more dishonour to

science than wolves be of danger to man. In the meantime we can do nothing here; and as I think that Varna is not familiar to any of us, why not go there more

soon? It is as long to wait here as there. To-night and to-morrow we can get ready, and then, if all be well, we four can set out on our journey."

"We four?" said Harker interrogatively, looking from one to another of us.

“Of course!” answered the Professor quickly, “you must remain to take care

of your so sweet wife!” Harker was silent for awhile and then said in a hollow

voice:—

“Let us talk of that part of it in the morning. I want to consult with Mina.” I

thought that now was the time for Van Helsing to warn him not to disclose our

plans to her; but he took no notice. I looked at him significantly and coughed.

For answer he put his finger on his lips and turned away.

Jonathan Harker’s Journal.

5 October, afternoon. —For some time after our meeting this morning I could

not think. The new phases of things leave my mind in a state of wonder which

allows no room for active thought. Mina’s determination not to take any part in

the discussion set me thinking; and as I could not argue the matter with her, I could only guess. I am as far as ever from a solution now. The way the others received it, too, puzzled me; the last time we talked of the subject we agreed that

there was to be no more concealment of anything amongst us. Mina is sleeping

now, calmly and sweetly like a little child. Her lips are curved and her face

beams with happiness. Thank God, there are such moments still for her.

Later. —How strange it all is. I sat watching Mina’s happy sleep, and came as

near to being happy myself as I suppose I shall ever be. As the evening drew on,

and the earth took its shadows from the sun sinking lower, the silence of the room grew more and more solemn to me. All at once Mina opened her eyes, and

looking at me tenderly, said:—

“Jonathan, I want you to promise me something on your word of honour. A

promise made to me, but made holily in God’s hearing, and not to be broken though I should go down on my knees and implore you with bitter tears. Quick,

you must make it to me at once.”

“Mina,” I said, “a promise like that, I cannot make at once. I may have no right to make it.”

“But, dear one,” she said, with such spiritual intensity that her eyes were like

pole stars, “it is I who wish it; and it is not for myself. You can ask Dr. Van Helsing if I am not right; if he disagrees you may do as you will. Nay, more, if

you all agree, later, you are absolved from the promise.”

“I promise!” I said, and for a moment she looked supremely happy; though to

me all happiness for her was denied by the red scar on her forehead. She said:—

“Promise me that you will not tell me anything of the plans formed for the campaign against the Count. Not by word, or inference, or implication; not at any time whilst this remains to me!” and she solemnly pointed to the scar. I saw

that she was in earnest, and said solemnly:—

“I promise!” and as I said it I felt that from that instant a door had been shut

between us.

Later, midnight. —Mina has been bright and cheerful all the evening. So much so that all the rest seemed to take courage, as if infected somewhat with her gaiety; as a result even I myself felt as if the pall of gloom which weighs us

down were somewhat lifted. We all retired early. Mina is now sleeping like a little child; it is a wonderful thing that her faculty of sleep remains to her in the

midst of her terrible trouble. Thank God for it, for then at least she can forget her

care. Perhaps her example may affect me as her gaiety did to-night. I shall try it.

Oh! for a dreamless sleep.

6 October, morning. —Another surprise. Mina woke me early, about the same

time as yesterday, and asked me to bring Dr. Van Helsing. I thought that it was

another occasion for hypnotism, and without question went for the Professor. He had evidently expected some such call, for I found him dressed in his room. His

door was ajar, so that he could hear the opening of the door of our room. He came at once; as he passed into the room, he asked Mina if the others might come, too.

“No,” she said quite simply, “it will not be necessary. You can tell them just

as well. I must go with you on your journey.”

Dr. Van Helsing was as startled as I was. After a moment’s pause he asked:—

“But why?”

“You must take me with you. I am safer with you, and you shall be safer, too.”

“But why, dear Madam Mina? You know that your safety is our solemnest

duty. We go into danger, to which you are, or may be, more liable than any of us

from—from circumstances—things that have been.” He paused, embarrassed.

As she replied, she raised her finger and pointed to her forehead:—

“I know. That is why I must go. I can tell you now, whilst the sun is coming

up; I may not be able again. I know that when the Count wills me I must go. I

know that if he tells me to come in secret, I must come by wile; by any device to

hoodwink—even Jonathan.” God saw the look that she turned on me as she

spoke, and if there be indeed a Recording Angel that look is noted to her everlasting honour. I could only clasp her hand. I could not speak; my emotion

was too great for even the relief of tears. She went on:—

“You men are brave and strong. You are strong in your numbers, for you can

defy that which would break down the human endurance of one who had to

guard alone. Besides, I may be of service, since you can hypnotise me and so learn that which even I myself do not know.” Dr. Van Helsing said very gravely:

—

“Madam Mina, you are, as always, most wise. You shall with us come; and

together we shall do that which we go forth to achieve.” When he had spoken,

Mina’s long spell of silence made me look at her. She had fallen back on her pillow asleep; she did not even wake when I had pulled up the blind and let in

the sunlight which flooded the room. Van Helsing motioned to me to come with

him quietly. We went to his room, and within a minute Lord Godalming, Dr.

Seward, and Mr. Morris were with us also. He told them what Mina had said, and went on:—

“In the morning we shall leave for Varna. We have now to deal with a new

factor: Madam Mina. Oh, but her soul is true. It is to her an agony to tell us so

much as she has done; but it is most right, and we are warned in time. There must be no chance lost, and in Varna we must be ready to act the instant when

that ship arrives.”

“What shall we do exactly?” asked Mr. Morris laconically. The Professor

paused before replying:—

“We shall at the first board that ship; then, when we have identified the box,

we shall place a branch of the wild rose on it. This we shall fasten, for when it is

there none can emerge; so at least says the superstition. And to superstition must

we trust at the first; it was man’s faith in the early, and it have its root in faith still. Then, when we get the opportunity that we seek, when none are near to see,

we shall open the box, and—and all will be well."

"I shall not wait for any opportunity," said Morris. "When I see the box I shall open it and destroy the monster, though there were a thousand men looking

on, and if I am to be wiped out for it the next moment!" I grasped his hand instinctively and found it as firm as a piece of steel. I think he understood my look; I hope he did.

"Good boy," said Dr. Van Helsing. "Brave boy. Quincey is all man. God bless

him for it. My child, believe me none of us shall lag behind or pause from any

fear. I do but say what we may do—what we must do. But, indeed, indeed we cannot say what we shall do. There are so many things which may happen, and

their ways and their ends are so various that until the moment we may not say.

We shall all be armed, in all ways; and when the time for the end has come, our

effort shall not be lack. Now let us to-day put all our affairs in order. Let all things which touch on others dear to us, and who on us depend, be complete; for

none of us can tell what, or when, or how, the end may be. As for me, my own

affairs are regulate; and as I have nothing else to do, I shall go make

arrangements for the travel. I shall have all tickets and so forth for our journey.”

There was nothing further to be said, and we parted. I shall now settle up all

my affairs of earth, and be ready for whatever may come....

Later. —It is all done; my will is made, and all complete. Mina if she survive

is my sole heir. If it should not be so, then the others who have been so good to

us shall have remainder.

It is now drawing towards the sunset; Mina’s uneasiness calls my attention to

it. I am sure that there is something on her mind which the time of exact sunset

will reveal. These occasions are becoming harrowing times for us all, for each sunrise and sunset opens up some new danger—some new pain, which, however,

may in God’s will be means to a good end. I write all these things in the diary since my darling must not hear them now; but if it may be that she can see them

again, they shall be ready.

She is calling to me.

CHAPTER XXV

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY

11 October, Evening. —Jonathan Harker has asked me to note this, as he says

he is hardly equal to the task, and he wants an exact record kept.

I think that none of us were surprised when we were asked to see Mrs. Harker

a little before the time of sunset. We have of late come to understand that sunrise

and sunset are to her times of peculiar freedom; when her old self can be manifest without any controlling force subduing or restraining her, or inciting her to action. This mood or condition begins some half hour or more before actual sunrise or sunset, and lasts till either the sun is high, or whilst the clouds

are still aglow with the rays streaming above the horizon. At first there is a sort

of negative condition, as if some tie were loosened, and then the absolute

freedom quickly follows; when, however, the freedom ceases the change-back or

relapse comes quickly, preceded only by a spell of warning silence.

To-night, when we met, she was somewhat constrained, and bore all the signs

of an internal struggle. I put it down myself to her making a violent effort at the

earliest instant she could do so. A very few minutes, however, gave her complete

control of herself; then, motioning her husband to sit beside her on the sofa where she was half reclining, she made the rest of us bring chairs up close.

Taking her husband’s hand in hers began:—

“We are all here together in freedom, for perhaps the last time! I know, dear; I

know that you will always be with me to the end.” This was to her husband whose hand had, as we could see, tightened upon hers. “In the morning we go out upon our task, and God alone knows what may be in store for any of us. You

are going to be so good to me as to take me with you. I know that all that brave

earnest men can do for a poor weak woman, whose soul perhaps is lost—no, no,

not yet, but is at any rate at stake—you will do. But you must remember that I

am not as you are. There is a poison in my blood, in my soul, which may destroy

me; which must destroy me, unless some relief comes to us. Oh, my friends, you

know as well as I do, that my soul is at stake; and though I know there is one way out for me, you must not and I must not take it!” She looked appealingly to

us all in turn, beginning and ending with her husband.

“What is that way?” asked Van Helsing in a hoarse voice. “What is that way,

which we must not—may not—take?”

“That I may die now, either by my own hand or that of another, before the greater evil is entirely wrought. I know, and you know, that were I once dead you

could and would set free my immortal spirit, even as you did my poor Lucy’s.

Were death, or the fear of death, the only thing that stood in the way I would not

shrink to die here, now, amidst the friends who love me. But death is not all. I

cannot believe that to die in such a case, when there is hope before us and a bitter task to be done, is God’s will. Therefore, I, on my part, give up here the

certainty of eternal rest, and go out into the dark where may be the blackest things that the world or the nether world holds!” We were all silent, for we knew

instinctively that this was only a prelude. The faces of the others were set and Harker’s grew ashen grey; perhaps he guessed better than any of us what was coming. She continued:—

“This is what I can give into the hotch-pot.” I could not but note the quaint

legal phrase which she used in such a place, and with all seriousness. “What will

each of you give? Your lives I know," she went on quickly, "that is easy for brave men. Your lives are God's, and you can give them back to Him; but what

will you give to me?" She looked again questioningly, but this time avoided her

husband's face. Quincey seemed to understand; he nodded, and her face lit up.

"Then I shall tell you plainly what I want, for there must be no doubtful matter

in this connection between us now. You must promise me, one and all—even

you, my beloved husband—that, should the time come, you will kill me."

"What is that time?" The voice was Quincey's, but it was low and strained.

"When you shall be convinced that I am so changed that it is better that I die

that I may live. When I am thus dead in the flesh, then you will, without a moment's delay, drive a stake through me and cut off my head; or do whatever

else may be wanting to give me rest!"

Quincey was the first to rise after the pause. He knelt down before her and taking her hand in his said solemnly:—

"I'm only a rough fellow, who hasn't, perhaps, lived as a man should to win

such a distinction, but I swear to you by all that I hold sacred and dear that, should the time ever come, I shall not flinch from the duty that you have set us.

And I promise you, too, that I shall make all certain, for if I am only doubtful I

shall take it that the time has come!”

“My true friend!” was all she could say amid her fast-falling tears, as,

bending over, she kissed his hand.

“I swear the same, my dear Madam Mina!” said Van Helsing.

“And I!” said Lord Godalming, each of them in turn kneeling to her to take

the oath. I followed, myself. Then her husband turned to her wan-eyed and with a greenish pallor which subdued the snowy whiteness of his hair, and asked:—

“And must I, too, make such a promise, oh, my wife?”

“You too, my dearest,” she said, with infinite yearning of pity in her voice and eyes. “You must not shrink. You are nearest and dearest and all the world to

me; our souls are knit into one, for all life and all time. Think, dear, that there have been times when brave men have killed their wives and their womenkind,

to keep them from falling into the hands of the enemy. Their hands did not falter

any the more because those that they loved implored them to slay them. It is men’s duty towards those whom they love,

in such times of sore trial! And oh,

my dear, if it is to be that I must meet death at any hand, let it be at the hand of

him that loves me best. Dr. Van Helsing, I have not forgotten your mercy in poor

Lucy’s case to him who loved”—she stopped with a flying blush, and changed

her phrase—“to him who had best right to give her peace. If that time shall come

again, I look to you to make it a happy memory of my husband’s life that it was

his loving hand which set me free from the awful thrall upon me.”

“Again I swear!” came the Professor’s resonant voice. Mrs. Harker smiled,

positively smiled, as with a sigh of relief she leaned back and said:—

“And now one word of warning, a warning which you must never forget: this

time, if it ever come, may come quickly and unexpectedly, and in such case you

must lose no time in using your opportunity. At such a time I myself might be—

nay! if the time ever comes, *shall be*—leagued with your enemy against you.”

“One more request;” she became very solemn as she said this, “it is not vital

and necessary like the other, but I want you to do one thing for me, if you will.”

We all acquiesced, but no one spoke; there was no need to speak:—

“I want you to read the Burial Service.” She was interrupted by a deep groan

from her husband; taking his hand in hers, she held it over her heart, and continued: “You must read it over me some day. Whatever may be the issue of

all this fearful state of things, it will be a sweet thought to all or some of us. You, my dearest, will I hope read it, for then it will be in your voice in my memory for

ever—come what may!”

“But oh, my dear one,” he pleaded, “death is afar off from you.”

“Nay,” she said, holding up a warning hand. “I am deeper in death at this moment than if the weight of an earthly grave lay heavy upon me!”

“Oh, my wife, must I read it?” he said, before he began.

“It would comfort me, my husband!” was all she said; and he began to read

when she had got the book ready.

“How can I—how could any one—tell of that strange scene, its solemnity, its gloom, its sadness, its horror; and, withal,

its sweetness. Even a sceptic, who can

see nothing but a travesty of bitter truth in anything holy or emotional, would have been melted to the heart had he seen that little group of loving and devoted

friends kneeling round that stricken and sorrowing lady; or heard the tender passion of her husband’s voice, as in tones so broken with emotion that often he

had to pause, he read the simple and beautiful service from the Burial of the Dead. I—I cannot go on—words—and—v-voice—f-fail m-me!”

She was right in her instinct. Strange as it all was, bizarre as it may hereafter

seem even to us who felt its potent influence at the time, it comforted us much;

and the silence, which showed Mrs. Harker’s coming relapse from her freedom

of soul, did not seem so full of despair to any of us as we had dreaded.

Jonathan Harker’s Journal.

15 October, Varna. —We left Charing Cross on the morning of the 12th, got to

Paris the same night, and took the places secured for us in the Orient Express.

We travelled night and day, arriving here at about five o’clock. Lord Godalming

went to the Consulate to see if any telegram had arrived for him, whilst the rest

of us came on to this hotel—“the Odessus.” The journey may have had

incidents; I was, however, too eager to get on, to care for them. Until the *Czarina Catherine* comes into port there will be no interest for me in anything in the wide world. Thank God! Mina is well, and looks to be getting stronger; her colour is coming back. She sleeps a great deal; throughout the journey she slept

nearly all the time. Before sunrise and sunset, however, she is very wakeful and

alert; and it has become a habit for Van Helsing to hypnotise her at such times.

At first, some effort was needed, and he had to make many passes; but now, she

seems to yield at once, as if by habit, and scarcely any action is needed. He seems to have power at these particular moments to simply will, and her

thoughts obey him. He always asks her what she can see and hear. She answers

to the first:—

“Nothing; all is dark.” And to the second:—

“I can hear the waves lapping against the ship, and the water rushing by.

Canvas and cordage strain and masts and yards creak. The wind is high—I can

hear it in the shrouds, and the bow throws back the foam.” It is evident that the

Czarina Catherine is still at sea, hastening on her way to Varna. Lord Godalming has just returned. He had four telegrams, one each day since we started, and all

to the same effect: that the *Czarina Catherine* had not been reported to Lloyd’s

from anywhere. He had arranged before leaving London that his agent should send him every day a telegram saying if the ship had been reported. He was to

have a message even if she were not reported, so that he might be sure that there

was a watch being kept at the other end of the wire.

We had dinner and went to bed early. To-morrow we are to see the Vice-

Consul, and to arrange, if we can, about getting on board the ship as soon as she

arrives. Van Helsing says that our chance will be to get on the boat between sunrise and sunset. The Count, even if he takes the form of a bat, cannot cross

the running water of his own volition, and so cannot leave the ship. As he dare

not change to man’s form without suspicion—which he evidently wishes to

avoid—he must remain in the box. If, then, we can come on board after sunrise,

he is at our mercy; for we can open the box and make sure of him, as we did of

poor Lucy, before he wakes. What mercy he shall get from us will not count for

much. We think that we shall not have much trouble with officials or the seamen.

Thank God! this is the country where bribery can do anything, and we are well

supplied with money. We have only to make sure that the ship cannot come into

port between sunset and sunrise without our being warned, and we shall be safe.

Judge Moneybag will settle this case, I think!

16 October. —Mina's report still the same: lapping waves and rushing water,

darkness and favouring winds. We are evidently in good time, and when we hear

of the *Czarina Catherine* we shall be ready. As she must pass the Dardanelles we are sure to have some report.

. . . . . .

17 October. —Everything is pretty well fixed now, I think, to welcome the Count on his return from his tour. Godalming told the shippers that he fancied that the box sent aboard might contain something stolen from a friend of his, and

got a half consent that he might open it at his own risk. The owner gave him a

paper telling the Captain to give him every facility in doing whatever he chose

on board the ship, and also a similar authorisation to his agent at Varna. We have

seen the agent, who was much impressed with Godalming’s kindly manner to

him, and we are all satisfied that whatever he can do to aid our wishes will be

done. We have already arranged what to do in case we get the box open. If the

Count is there, Van Helsing and Seward will cut off his head at once and drive a

stake through his heart. Morris and Godalming and I shall prevent interference,

even if we have to use the arms which we shall have ready. The Professor says

that if we can so treat the Count’s body, it will soon after fall into dust. In such

case there would be no evidence against us, in case any suspicion of murder

were aroused. But even if it were not, we should stand or fall by our act, and perhaps some day this very script may be evidence to come between some of us

and a rope. For myself, I should take the chance only too thankfully if it were to

come. We mean to leave no stone unturned to carry out our intent. We have arranged with certain officials that the instant the *Czarina Catherine* is seen, we are to be informed by a special messenger.

24 October. —A whole week of waiting. Daily telegrams to Godalming, but only the same story: "Not yet reported." Mina's morning and evening hypnotic

answer is unvaried: lapping waves, rushing water, and creaking masts.

Telegram, October 24th.

Rufus Smith, Lloyd's, London, to Lord Godalming, care of H. B. M.

Vice-Consul, Varna.

"*Czarina Catherine* reported this morning from Dardanelles."

Dr. Seward's Diary.

25 October. —How I miss my phonograph! To write diary with a pen is irksome to me; but Van Helsing says I must. We were all wild with excitement

yesterday when Godalming got his telegram from Lloyd's. I know now what

men feel in battle when the call to action is heard. Mrs. Harker, alone of our party, did not show any signs of emotion. After all, it is not strange that she did

not; for we took special care not to let her know anything about it, and we all tried not to show any excitement when we were in her presence. In old days she

would, I am sure, have noticed, no matter how we might have tried to conceal it;

but in this way she is greatly changed during the past three weeks. The lethargy

grows upon her, and though she seems strong and well, and is getting back some

of her colour, Van Helsing and I are not satisfied. We talk of her often; we have

not, however, said a word to the others. It would break poor Harker's heart—

certainly his nerve—if he knew that we had even a suspicion on the subject. Van

Helsing examines, he tells me, her teeth very carefully, whilst she is in the hypnotic condition, for he says that so long as they do not begin to sharpen there

is no active danger of a change in her. If this change should come, it would be

necessary to take steps!... We both know what those steps would have to be, though we do not mention our thoughts to each other. We should neither of us shrink from the task—awful though it be to contemplate. "Euthanasia" is an

excellent and a comforting word! I am grateful to whoever invented it.

It is only about 24 hours' sail from the Dardanelles to here, at the rate the *Czarina Catherine* has come from London. She should therefore arrive some time in the morning; but as she cannot possibly get in before then, we are all about to retire early. We shall get up at one o'clock, so as to be ready.

25 October, Noon.—No news yet of the ship's arrival. Mrs. Harker's hypnotic

report this morning was the same as usual, so it is possible that we may get news

at any moment. We men are all in a fever of excitement, except Harker, who is

calm; his hands are cold as ice, and an hour ago I found him whetting the edge of

the great Ghoorka knife which he now always carries with him. It will be a bad

lookout for the Count if the edge of that "Kukri" ever touches his throat, driven

by that stern, ice-cold hand!

Van Helsing and I were a little alarmed about Mrs. Harker to-day. About

noon she got into a sort of lethargy which we did not like; although we kept silence to the others, we were neither of us happy about it. She had been restless

all the morning, so that we were at first glad to know that she was sleeping.

When, however, her husband mentioned casually that she was sleeping so

soundly that he could not wake her, we went to her room to see for ourselves.

She was breathing naturally and looked so well and peaceful that we agreed that

the sleep was better for her than anything else. Poor girl, she has so much to forget that it is no wonder that sleep, if it brings oblivion to her, does her good.

Later. —Our opinion was justified, for when after a refreshing sleep of some

hours she woke up, she seemed brighter and better than she had been for days.

At sunset she made the usual hypnotic report. Wherever he may be in the Black

Sea, the Count is hurrying to his destination. To his doom, I trust!

26 October. —Another day and no tidings of the *Czarina Catherine*. She ought to be here by now. That she is still journeying *somewhere* is apparent, for Mrs. Harker's hypnotic report at sunrise was still the same. It is possible that the

vessel may be lying by, at times, for fog; some of the steamers which came in last evening reported patches of fog both to north and south of the port. We must

continue our watching, as the ship may now be signalled any moment.

27 October, Noon. —Most strange; no news yet of the ship we wait for. Mrs.

Harker reported last night and this morning as usual: “lapping waves and rushing

water,” though she added that “the waves were very faint.” The telegrams from

London have been the same: “no further report.” Van Helsing is terribly anxious,

and told me just now that he fears the Count is escaping us. He added

significantly:—

“I did not like that lethargy of Madam Mina’s. Souls and memories can do

strange things during trance.” I was about to ask him more, but Harker just then

came in, and he held up a warning hand. We must try to-night at sunset to make

her speak more fully when in her hypnotic state.

28 October. —Telegram. *Rufus Smith, London, to Lord Godalming, care H. B.*

M. Vice Consul, Varna.

“*Czarina Catherine* reported entering Galatz at one o’clock to-day.”

Dr. Seward’s Diary.

28 October. —When the telegram came announcing the arrival in Galatz I do

not think it was such a shock to any of us as might have been expected. True, we

did not know whence, or how, or when, the bolt would come; but I think we all

expected that something strange would happen. The delay of arrival at Varna

made us individually satisfied that things would not be just as we had expected;

we only waited to learn where the change would occur. None the less, however,

was it a surprise. I suppose that nature works on such a hopeful basis that we believe against ourselves that things will be as they ought to be, not as we should

know that they will be. Transcendentalism is a beacon to the angels, even if it be

a will-o’-the-wisp to man. It was an odd experience and we all took it differently.

Van Helsing raised his hand over his head for a moment, as though in

remonstrance with the Almighty; but he said not a word, and in a few seconds stood up with his face sternly set. Lord Godalming grew very pale, and sat breathing heavily. I was myself half stunned and looked in wonder at one after

another. Quincey Morris tightened his belt with that quick movement which I

knew so well; in our old wandering days it meant “action.” Mrs. Harker grew ghastly white, so that the scar on her forehead seemed to burn, but she folded her

hands meekly and looked up in prayer. Harker smiled—actually smiled—the

dark, bitter smile of one who is without hope; but at the same time his action belied his words, for his hands instinctively sought the hilt of the great Kukri knife and rested there. “When does the next train start for Galatz?” said Van Helsing to us generally.

“At 6:30 to-morrow morning!” We all started, for the answer came from Mrs.

Harker.

“How on earth do you know?” said Art.

“You forget—or perhaps you do not know, though Jonathan does and so does

Dr. Van Helsing—that I am the train fiend. At home in Exeter I always used to

make up the time-tables, so as to be helpful to my husband. I found it so useful

sometimes, that I always make a study of the time-tables now. I knew that if anything were to take us to Castle Dracula we should go by Galatz, or at any rate

through Bucharest, so I learned the times very carefully. Unhappily there are not

many to learn, as the only train to-morrow leaves as I say."

"Wonderful woman!" murmured the Professor.

"Can't we get a special?" asked Lord Godalming. Van Helsing shook his

head: "I fear not. This land is very different from yours or mine; even if we did

have a special, it would probably not arrive as soon as our regular train.

Moreover, we have something to prepare. We must think. Now let us organize.

You, friend Arthur, go to the train and get the tickets and arrange that all be ready for us to go in the morning. Do you, friend Jonathan, go to the agent of the

ship and get from him letters to the agent in Galatz, with authority to make search the ship just as it was here. Morris Quincey, you see the Vice-Consul, and

get his aid with his fellow in Galatz and all he can do to make our way smooth,

so that no times be lost when over the Danube. John will stay with Madam Mina

and me, and we shall consult. For so if time be long you may be delayed; and it

will not matter when the sun set, since I am here with Madam to make report."

“And I,” said Mrs. Harker brightly, and more like her old self than she had been for many a long day, “shall try to be of use in all ways, and shall think and

write for you as I used to do. Something is shifting from me in some strange way, and I feel freer than I have been of late!” The three younger men looked happier at the moment as they seemed to realise the significance of her words; but Van Helsing and I, turning to each other, met each a grave and troubled glance. We said nothing at the time, however.

When the three men had gone out to their tasks Van Helsing asked Mrs.

Harker to look up the copy of the diaries and find him the part of Harker’s journal at the Castle. She went away to get it; when the door was shut upon her

he said to me:—

“We mean the same! speak out!”

“There is some change. It is a hope that makes me sick, for it may deceive us.”

“Quite so. Do you know why I asked her to get the manuscript?”

“No!” said I, “unless it was to get an opportunity of seeing me alone.”

“You are in part right, friend John, but only in part. I want to tell you something. And oh, my friend, I am taking a great—a terrible—risk; but I

believe it is right. In the moment when Madam Mina said those words that arrest

both our understanding, an inspiration came to me. In the trance of three days ago the Count sent her his spirit to read her mind; or more like he took her to see

him in his earth-box in the ship with water rushing, just as it go free at rise and

set of sun. He learn then that we are here; for she have more to tell in her open

life with eyes to see and ears to hear than he, shut, as he is, in his coffin-box.

Now he make his most effort to escape us. At present he want her not.

“He is sure with his so great knowledge that she will come at his call; but he

cut her off—take her, as he can do, out of his own power, that so she come not to

him. Ah! there I have hope that our man-brains that have been of man so long and that have not lost the grace of God, will come higher than his child-brain that lie in his tomb for centuries, that grow not yet to our stature, and that do only work selfish and therefore small. Here comes Madam Mina; not a word to

her of her trance! She know it not; and it would overwhelm her and make

despair just when we want all her hope, all her courage; when most we want all

her great brain which is trained like man’s brain, but is of sweet woman and have

a special power which the Count give her, and which he may not take away

altogether—though he think not so. Hush! let me speak, and you shall learn. Oh,

John, my friend, we are in awful straits. I fear, as I never feared before. We can

only trust the good God. Silence! here she comes!”

I thought that the Professor was going to break down and have hysterics, just

as he had when Lucy died, but with a great effort he controlled himself and was

at perfect nervous poise when Mrs. Harker tripped into the room, bright and happy-looking and, in the doing of work, seemingly forgetful of her misery. As

she came in, she handed a number of sheets of typewriting to Van Helsing. He

looked over them gravely, his face brightening up as he read. Then holding the

pages between his finger and thumb he said:—

“Friend John, to you with so much of experience already—and you, too, dear

Madam Mina, that are young—here is a lesson: do not fear ever to think. A half-

thought has been buzzing often in my brain, but I fear to let him loose his wings.

Here now, with more knowledge, I go back to where that half-thought come

from and I find that he be no half-thought at all; that be a whole thought, though

so young that he is not yet strong to use his little wings. Nay, like the “Ugly Duck” of my friend Hans Andersen, he be no duck-thought at all, but a big swan-thought that sail nobly on big wings, when the time come for him to try them. See I read here what Jonathan have written:—

“That other of his race who, in a later age, again and again, brought his forces

over The Great River into Turkey Land; who, when he was beaten back, came

again, and again, and again, though he had to come alone from the bloody field

where his troops were being slaughtered, since he knew that he alone could

ultimately triumph.”

“What does this tell us? Not much? no! The Count’s child-thought see

nothing; therefore he speak so free. Your man-thought see nothing; my man-

thought see nothing, till just now. No! But there comes another word from some

one who speak without thought because she, too, know not what it mean—what

it *might* mean. Just as there are elements which rest, yet when in nature's course they move on their way and they touch—then pouf! and there comes a flash of

light, heaven wide, that blind and kill and destroy some; but that show up all earth below for leagues and leagues. Is it not so? Well, I shall explain. To begin,

have you ever study the philosophy of crime? 'Yes' and 'No.' You, John, yes; for

it is a study of insanity. You, no, Madam Mina; for crime touch you not—not but

once. Still, your mind works true, and argues not *a particulari ad universale*.

There is this peculiarity in criminals. It is so constant, in all countries and at all

times, that even police, who know not much from philosophy, come to know it

empirically, that *it is*. That is to be empiric. The criminal always work at one crime—that is the true criminal who seems predestinate to crime, and who will

of none other. This criminal has not full man-brain. He is clever and cunning and

resourceful; but he be not of man-stature as to brain. He be of child-brain in much. Now this criminal of ours is predestinate to crime also; he, too, have child-brain, and it is of the child to do what he have done. The little bird, the little fish, the little animal learn not by principle, but empirically; and when he

learn to do, then there is to him the ground to start from to do more. ‘ *Dos pou*

sto,’ said Archimedes. ‘Give me a fulcrum, and I shall move the world!’ To do

once, is the fulcrum whereby child-brain become man-brain; and until he have the purpose to do more, he continue to do the same again every time, just as he

have done before! Oh, my dear, I see that your eyes are opened, and that to you

the lightning flash show all the leagues,” for Mrs. Harker began to clap her hands and her eyes sparkled. He went on:—

“Now you shall speak. Tell us two dry men of science what you see with

those so bright eyes.” He took her hand and held it whilst she spoke. His finger

and thumb closed on her pulse, as I thought instinctively and unconsciously, as

she spoke:—

“The Count is a criminal and of criminal type. Nordau and Lombroso would

so classify him, and *quâ* criminal he is of imperfectly formed mind. Thus, in a

difficulty he has to seek resource in habit. His past is a clue, and the one page of

it that we know—and that from his own lips—tells that once before, when in what Mr. Morris would call a ‘tight place,’ he went back to his own country from

the land he had tried to invade, and thence, without losing purpose, prepared himself for a new effort. He came again better equipped for his work; and won.

So he came to London to invade a new land. He was beaten, and when all hope

of success was lost, and his existence in danger, he fled back over the sea to his

home; just as formerly he had fled back over the Danube from Turkey Land.”

“Good, good! oh, you so clever lady!” said Van Helsing, enthusiastically, as

he stooped and kissed her hand. A moment later he said to me, as calmly as though we had been having a sick-room consultation:—

“Seventy-two only; and in all this excitement. I have hope.” Turning to her again, he said with keen expectation:—

“But go on. Go on! there is more to tell if you will. Be not afraid; John and I

know. I do in any case, and shall tell you if you are right. Speak, without fear!”

“I will try to; but you will forgive me if I seem egotistical.”

“Nay! fear not, you must be egotist, for it is of you that we think.”

“Then, as he is criminal he is selfish; and as his intellect is small and his action is based on selfishness, he confines himself to one purpose. That purpose

is remorseless. As he fled back over the Danube, leaving his forces to be cut to

pieces, so now he is intent on being safe, careless of all. So his own selfishness

frees my soul somewhat from the terrible power which he acquired over me on

that dreadful night. I felt it! Oh, I felt it! Thank God, for His great mercy! My

soul is freer than it has been since that awful hour; and all that haunts me is a fear lest in some trance or dream he may have used my knowledge for his ends.”

The Professor stood up:—

“He has so used your mind; and by it he has left us here in Varna, whilst the

ship that carried him rushed through enveloping fog up to Galatz, where,

doubtless, he had made preparation for escaping from us. But his child-mind

only saw so far; and it may be that, as ever is in God’s Providence, the very thing

that the evil-doer most reckoned on for his selfish good, turns out to be his chiefest harm. The hunter is taken in his own snare, as the great Psalmist says.

For now that he think he is free from every trace of us all, and that he has escaped us with so many hours to him, then his selfish child-brain will whisper

him to sleep. He think, too, that as he cut himself off from knowing your mind,

there can be no knowledge of him to you; there is where he fail! That terrible baptism of blood which he give you makes you free to go to him in spirit, as you

have as yet done in your times of freedom, when the sun rise and set. At such times you go by my volition and not by his; and this power to good of you and

others, as you have won from your suffering at his hands. This is now all the more precious that he know it not, and to guard himself have even cut himself off from his knowledge of our where. We, however, are not selfish, and we

believe that God is with us through all this blackness, and these many dark hours. We shall follow him; and we shall not flinch; even if we peril ourselves

that we become like him. Friend John, this has been a great hour; and it have done much to advance us on our way. You must be scribe and write him all down, so that when the others return from their work you can give it to them; then they shall know as we do."

And so I have written it whilst we wait their return, and Mrs. Harker has

written with her typewriter all since she brought the MS. to us.

CHAPTER XXVI

DR. SEWARD’S DIARY

29 October. —This is written in the train from Varna to Galatz. Last night we

all assembled a little before the time of sunset. Each of us had done his work as

well as he could; so far as thought, and endeavour, and opportunity go, we are prepared for the whole of our journey, and for our work when we get to Galatz.

When the usual time came round Mrs. Harker prepared herself for her hypnotic

effort; and after a longer and more serious effort on the part of Van Helsing than

has been usually necessary, she sank into the trance. Usually she speaks on a hint; but this time the Professor had to ask her questions, and to ask them pretty

resolutely, before we could learn anything; at last her answer came:—

“I can see nothing; we are still; there are no waves lapping, but only a steady

swirl of water softly running against the hawser. I can hear men’s voices calling,

near and far, and the roll and creak of oars in the rowlocks. A gun is fired somewhere; the echo of it seems far away. There is tramping of feet overhead, and ropes and chains are dragged along. What is this? There is a gleam of light; I

can feel the air blowing upon me."

Here she stopped. She had risen, as if impulsively, from where she lay on the

sofa, and raised both her hands, palms upwards, as if lifting a weight. Van Helsing and I looked at each other with understanding. Quincey raised his

eyebrows slightly and looked at her intently, whilst Harker's hand instinctively closed round the hilt of his Kukri. There was a long pause. We all knew that the

time when she could speak was passing; but we felt that it was useless to say anything. Suddenly she sat up, and, as she opened her eyes, said sweetly:—

"Would none of you like a cup of tea? You must all be so tired!" We could

only make her happy, and so acquiesced. She bustled off to get tea; when she had

gone Van Helsing said:—

"You see, my friends. *He* is close to land: he has left his earth-chest. But he

has yet to get on shore. In the night he may lie hidden somewhere; but if he be

not carried on shore, or if the ship do not touch it, he cannot achieve the land. In

such case he can, if it be in the night, change his form and can jump or fly on shore, as he did at Whitby. But if the day come before he get on shore, then, unless he be carried he cannot escape. And if he be carried, then the customs men may discover what the box contain. Thus, in fine, if he escape not on shore

to-night, or before dawn, there will be the whole day lost to him. We may then arrive in time; for if he escape not at night we shall come on him in daytime, boxed up and at our mercy; for he dare not be his true self, awake and visible,

lest he be discovered."

There was no more to be said, so we waited in patience until the dawn; at which time we might learn more from Mrs. Harker.

Early this morning we listened, with breathless anxiety, for her response in her trance. The hypnotic stage was even longer in coming than before; and when

it came the time remaining until full sunrise was so short that we began to despair. Van Helsing seemed to throw his whole soul into the effort; at last, in obedience to his will she made reply:—

"All is dark. I hear lapping water, level with me, and some creaking as of wood on wood." She paused, and the red sun shot up. We must wait till to-night.

And so it is that we are travelling towards Galatz in an agony of expectation.

We are due to arrive between two and three in the morning; but already, at Bucharest, we are three hours late, so we cannot possibly get in till well after sun-up. Thus we shall have two more hypnotic messages from Mrs. Harker;

either or both may possibly throw more light on what is happening.

Later. —Sunset has come and gone. Fortunately it came at a time when there

was no distraction; for had it occurred whilst we were at a station, we might not

have secured the necessary calm and isolation. Mrs. Harker yielded to the

hypnotic influence even less readily than this morning. I am in fear that her power of reading the Count’s sensations may die away, just when we want it most. It seems to me that her imagination is beginning to work. Whilst she has

been in the trance hitherto she has confined herself to the simplest of facts. If this

goes on it may ultimately mislead us. If I thought that the Count’s power over her would die away equally with her power of knowledge it would be a happy

thought; but I am afraid that it may not be so. When she did speak, her words were enigmatical:—

“Something is going out; I can feel it pass me like a cold wind. I can hear, far

off, confused sounds—as of men talking in strange tongues, fierce-falling water,

and the howling of wolves.” She stopped and a shudder ran through her,

increasing in intensity for a few seconds, till, at the end, she shook as though in a

palsy. She said no more, even in answer to the Professor’s imperative

questioning. When she woke from the trance, she was cold, and exhausted, and

languid; but her mind was all alert. She could not remember anything, but asked

what she had said; when she was told, she pondered over it deeply for a long time and in silence.

30 October, 7 a. m. —We are near Galatz now, and I may not have time to write later. Sunrise this morning was anxiously looked for by us all. Knowing of

the increasing difficulty of procuring the hypnotic trance, Van Helsing began his

passes earlier than usual. They produced no effect, however, until the regular time, when she yielded with a still greater difficulty, only a minute before the sun rose. The Professor lost no time in his questioning; her answer came with equal quickness:—

“All is dark. I hear water swirling by, level with my ears, and the creaking of

wood on wood. Cattle low far off. There is another sound, a queer one like——”

She stopped and grew white, and whiter still.

“Go on; go on! Speak, I command you!” said Van Helsing in an agonised

voice. At the same time there was despair in his eyes, for the risen sun was reddening even Mrs. Harker’s pale face. She opened her eyes, and we all started

as she said, sweetly and seemingly with the utmost unconcern:—

“Oh, Professor, why ask me to do what you know I can’t? I don’t remember

anything.” Then, seeing the look of amazement on our faces, she said, turning from one to the other with a troubled look:—

“What have I said? What have I done? I know nothing, only that I was lying

here, half asleep, and heard you say go on! speak, I command you!’ It seemed so

funny to hear you order me about, as if I were a bad child!”

“Oh, Madam Mina,” he said, sadly, “it is proof, if proof be needed, of how I

love and honour you, when a word for your good, spoken more earnest than

ever, can seem so strange because it is to order her whom I am proud to obey!”

The whistles are sounding; we are nearing Galatz. We are on fire with anxiety

and eagerness.

Mina Harker’s Journal.

30 October. —Mr. Morris took me to the hotel where our rooms had been ordered by telegraph, he being the one who could best be spared, since he does

not speak any foreign language. The forces were distributed much as they had been at Varna, except that Lord Godalming went to the Vice-Consul, as his rank

might serve as an immediate guarantee of some sort to the official, we being in

extreme hurry. Jonathan and the two doctors went to the shipping agent to learn

particulars of the arrival of the *Czarina Catherine*.

Later. —Lord Godalming has returned. The Consul is away, and the Vice-Consul sick; so the routine work has been attended to by a clerk. He was very obliging, and offered to do anything in his power.

Jonathan Harker’s Journal.

30 October. —At nine o’clock Dr. Van Helsing, Dr. Seward, and I called on Messrs. Mackenzie & Steinkoff, the agents of the London firm of Hapgood.

They had received a wire from London, in answer to Lord Godalming’s

telegraphed request, asking us to show them any civility in their power. They were more than kind and courteous, and took us at once on board the *Czarina Catherine*, which lay at

anchor out in the river harbour. There we saw the Captain, Donelson by name, who told us of his voyage. He said that in all his life

he had never had so favourable a run.

“Man!” he said, “but it made us afeard, for we expeckit that we should have

to pay for it wi’ some rare piece o’ ill luck, so as to keep up the average. It’s no

canny to run frae London to the Black Sea wi’ a wind ahint ye, as though the Deil himself were blawin’ on yer sail for his ain purpose. An’ a’ the time we could no speer a thing. Gin we were nigh a ship, or a port, or a headland, a fog

fell on us and travelled wi’ us, till when after it had lifted and we looked out, the

deil a thing could we see. We ran by Gibraltar wi’oot bein’ able to signal; an’ till

we came to the Dardanelles and had to wait to get our permit to pass, we never

were within hail o’ aught. At first I inclined to slack off sail and beat about till

the fog was lifted; but whiles, I thocht that if the Deil was minded to get us into

the Black Sea quick, he was like to do it whether we would or no. If we had a

quick voyage it would be no to our miscredit wi’ the owners, or no hurt to our

traffic; an’ the Old Mon who had served his ain purpose wad be decently grateful

to us for no hinderin’ him.” This mixture of simplicity and cunning, of

superstition and commercial reasoning, aroused Van Helsing, who said:—

“Mine friend, that Devil is more clever than he is thought by some; and he know when he meet his match!” The skipper was not displeased with the

compliment, and went on:—

“When we got past the Bosphorus the men began to grumble; some o’ them,

the Roumanians, came and asked me to heave overboard a big box which had

been put on board by a queer lookin’ old man just before we had started frae London. I had seen them speer at the fellow, and put out their twa fingers when

they saw him, to guard against the evil eye. Man! but the supersteetion of foreigners is pairfectly rideeculous! I sent them aboot their business pretty quick;

but as just after a fog closed in on us I felt a wee bit as they did anent something, though I wouldn’t say it was agin the big box. Well, on we went, and as the fog

didn’t let up for five days I joost let the wind carry us; for if the Deil wanted to

get somewheres—well, he would fetch it up a'reet. An' if he didn't, well, we'd

keep a sharp lookout anyhow. Sure eneuch, we had a fair way and deep water all

the time; and two days ago, when the mornin' sun came through the fog, we found ourselves just in the river opposite Galatz. The Roumanians were wild, and wanted me right or wrong to take out the box and fling it in the river. I had

to argy wi' them aboot it wi' a handspike; an' when the last o' them rose off the

deck wi' his head in his hand, I had convinced them that, evil eye or no evil eye,

the property and the trust of my owners were better in my hands than in the river

Danube. They had, mind ye, taken the box on the deck ready to fling in, and as it

was marked Galatz *via* Varna, I thocht I'd let it lie till we discharged in the port an' get rid o't althegither. We didn't do much clearin' that day, an' had to remain

the nicht at anchor; but in the mornin', braw an' airly, an hour before sun-up, a

man came aboard wi' an order, written to him from England, to receive a box marked for one Count Dracula. Sure eneuch the matter was one ready to his

hand. He had his papers a' reet, an' glad I was to be rid o' the dam' thing, for I

was beginnin’ masel’ to feel uneasy at it. If the Deil did have any luggage aboord

the ship, I’m thinkin’ it was nane ither than that same!”

“What was the name of the man who took it?” asked Dr. Van Helsing with

restrained eagerness.

“I’ll be tellin’ ye quick!” he answered, and, stepping down to his cabin,

produced a receipt signed “Immanuel Hildesheim.” Burgen-strasse 16 was the

address. We found out that this was all the Captain knew; so with thanks we came away.

We found Hildesheim in his office, a Hebrew of rather the Adelphi Theatre

type, with a nose like a sheep, and a fez. His arguments were pointed with specie

—we doing the punctuation—and with a little bargaining he told us what he

knew. This turned out to be simple but important. He had received a letter from

Mr. de Ville of London, telling him to receive, if possible before sunrise so as to

avoid customs, a box which would arrive at Galatz in the *Czarina Catherine*.

This he was to give in charge to a certain Petrof Skinsky, who dealt with the Slovaks who traded down the river to the port. He had been paid for his work by

an English bank note, which had been duly cashed for gold at the Danube

International Bank. When Skinsky had come to him, he had taken him to the

ship and handed over the box, so as to save porterage. That was all he knew.

We then sought for Skinsky, but were unable to find him. One of his

neighbours, who did not seem to bear him any affection, said that he had gone away two days before, no one knew whither. This was corroborated by his

landlord, who had received by messenger the key of the house together with the

rent due, in English money. This had been between ten and eleven o’clock last

night. We were at a standstill again.

Whilst we were talking one came running and breathlessly gasped out that

the body of Skinsky had been found inside the wall of the churchyard of St.

Peter, and that the throat had been torn open as if by some wild animal. Those

we had been speaking with ran off to see the horror, the women crying out “This

is the work of a Slovak!” We hurried away lest we should have been in some way drawn into the affair, and so detained.

As we came home we could arrive at no definite conclusion. We were all

convinced that the box was on its way, by water, to somewhere; but where that

might be we would have to discover. With heavy hearts we came home to the hotel to Mina.

When we met together, the first thing was to consult as to taking Mina again

into our confidence. Things are getting desperate, and it is at least a chance, though a hazardous one. As a preliminary step, I was released from my promise

to her.

Mina Harker’s Journal.

30 October, evening. —They were so tired and worn out and dispirited that there was nothing to be done till they had some rest; so I asked them all to lie down for half an hour whilst I should enter everything up to the moment. I feel

so grateful to the man who invented the “Traveller’s” typewriter, and to Mr.

Morris for getting this one for me. I should have felt quite; astray doing the work

if I had to write with a pen....

It is all done; poor dear, dear Jonathan, what he must have suffered, what must he be suffering now. He lies on the sofa hardly seeming to breathe, and his

whole body appears in collapse. His brows are knit; his face is drawn with pain.

Poor fellow, maybe he is thinking, and I can see his face all wrinkled up with the

concentration of his thoughts. Oh! if I could only help at all.... I shall do what I

can.

I have asked Dr. Van Helsing, and he has got me all the papers that I have not

yet seen.... Whilst they are resting, I shall go over all carefully, and perhaps I may arrive at some conclusion. I shall try to follow the Professor’s example, and

think without prejudice on the facts before me....

I do believe that under God’s providence I have made a discovery. I shall get the maps and look over them....

I am more than ever sure that I am right. My new conclusion is ready, so I shall get our party together and read it. They can judge it; it is well to be accurate, and every minute is precious.

Mina Harker’s Memorandum.

(Entered in her Journal.)

Ground of inquiry. —Count Dracula’s problem is to get back to his own place.

(*a*) He must be *brought back* by some one. This is evident; for had he power to move himself as he wished he could go either as man, or wolf, or bat, or in some other way. He evidently fears discovery or interference, in the state of helplessness in which he must be—confined as he is between dawn and sunset in

his wooden box.

(*b*) *How is he to be taken?* —Here a process of exclusions may help us. By road, by rail, by water?

1. *By Road.* —There are endless difficulties, especially in leaving the city.

(*x*) There are people; and people are curious, and investigate. A hint, a surmise, a doubt as to what might be in the box, would destroy him.

(*y*) There are, or there may be, customs and octroi officers to pass.

(*z*) His pursuers might follow. This is his highest fear; and in order to prevent his being betrayed he has repelled, so far as he can, even his victim—me!

2. *By Rail.* —There is no one in charge of the box. It would have to take its chance of being delayed; and delay would be fatal, with enemies on the track.

True, he might escape at night; but what would he be, if left in a strange place

with no refuge that he could fly to? This is not what he intends; and he does not

mean to risk it.

3. *By Water.* —Here is the safest way, in one respect, but with most danger in

another. On the water he is powerless except at night; even then he can only summon fog and storm and snow and his wolves. But were he wrecked, the

living water would engulf him, helpless; and he would indeed be lost. He could

have the vessel drive to land; but if it were unfriendly land, wherein he was not

free to move, his position would still be desperate.

We know from the record that he was on the water; so what we have to do is

to ascertain *what* water.

The first thing is to realise exactly what he has done as yet; we may, then, get

a light on what his later task is to be.

Firstly. —We must differentiate between what he did in London as part of his

general plan of action, when he was pressed for moments and had to arrange as

best he could.

Secondly we must see, as well as we can surmise it from the facts we know

of, what he has done here.

As to the first, he evidently intended to arrive at Galatz, and sent invoice to

Varna to deceive us lest we should ascertain his means of exit from England; his

immediate and sole purpose then was to escape. The proof of this, is the letter of

instructions sent to Immanuel Hildesheim to clear and take away the box *before*

sunrise. There is also the instruction to Petrof Skinsky. These we must only guess at; but there must have been some letter or message, since Skinsky came

to Hildesheim.

That, so far, his plans were successful we know. The *Czarina Catherine* made

a phenomenally quick journey—so much so that Captain Donelson’s suspicions

were aroused; but his superstition united with his canniness played the Count’s

game for him, and he ran with his favouring wind through fogs and all till he brought up blindfold at Galatz. That the Count’s arrangements were well made,

has been proved. Hildesheim cleared the box, took it off, and gave it to Skinsky.

Skinsky took it—and here we lose the trail. We only know that the box is

somewhere on the water, moving along. The customs and the octroi, if there be

any, have been avoided.

Now we come to what the Count must have done after his arrival— *on land*,

at Galatz.

The box was given to Skinsky before sunrise. At sunrise the Count could

appear in his own form. Here, we ask why Skinsky was chosen at all to aid in the

work? In my husband’s diary, Skinsky is mentioned as dealing with the Slovaks

who trade down the river to the port; and the man’s remark, that the murder was

the work of a Slovak, showed the general feeling against his class. The Count wanted isolation.

My surmise is, this: that in London the Count decided to get back to his castle

by water, as the most safe and secret way. He was brought from the castle by Szgany, and probably they delivered their cargo to Slovaks who took the boxes

to Varna, for there they were shipped for London. Thus the Count had

knowledge of the persons who could arrange this service. When the box was on

land, before sunrise or after sunset, he came out from his box, met Skinsky and

instructed him what to do as to arranging the carriage of the box up some river.

When this was done, and he knew that all was in train, he blotted out his traces, as he thought, by murdering his agent.

I have examined the map and find that the river most suitable for the Slovaks

to have ascended is either the Pruth or the Sereth. I read in the typescript that in

my trance I heard cows low and water swirling level with my ears and the

creaking of wood. The Count in his box, then, was on a river in an open boat—

propelled probably either by oars or poles, for the banks are near and it is working against stream. There would be no such sound if floating down stream.

Of course it may not be either the Sereth or the Pruth, but we may possibly

investigate further. Now of these two, the Pruth is the more easily navigated, but

the Sereth is, at Fundu, joined by the Bistritza which runs up round the Borgo Pass. The loop it makes is manifestly as

close to Dracula’s castle as can be got

by water.

Mina Harker’s Journal—continued.

When I had done reading, Jonathan took me in his arms and kissed me. The

others kept shaking me by both hands, and Dr. Van Helsing said:—

“Our dear Madam Mina is once more our teacher. Her eyes have been where

we were blinded. Now we are on the track once again, and this time we may succeed. Our enemy is at his most helpless; and if we can come on him by day,

on the water, our task will be over. He has a start, but he is powerless to hasten,

as he may not leave his box lest those who carry him may suspect; for them to

suspect would be to prompt them to throw him in the stream where he perish.

This he knows, and will not. Now men, to our Council of War; for, here and now,

we must plan what each and all shall do.”

“I shall get a steam launch and follow him,” said Lord Godalming.

“And I, horses to follow on the bank lest by chance he land,” said Mr. Morris.

“Good!” said the Professor, “both good. But neither must go alone. There

must be force to overcome force if need be; the Slovak is strong and rough, and

he carries rude arms.” All the men smiled, for amongst them they carried a small

arsenal. Said Mr. Morris:—

“I have brought some Winchesters; they are pretty handy in a crowd, and

there may be wolves. The Count, if you remember, took some other precautions;

he made some requisitions on others that Mrs. Harker could not quite hear or understand. We must be ready at all points.” Dr. Seward said:—

“I think I had better go with Quincey. We have been accustomed to hunt

together, and we two, well armed, will be a match for whatever may come along.

You must not be alone, Art. It may be necessary to fight the Slovaks, and a chance thrust—for I don’t suppose these fellows carry guns—would undo all our

plans. There must be no chances, this time; we shall, not rest until the Count’s head and body have been separated, and we are sure that he cannot re-incarnate.”

He looked at Jonathan as he spoke, and Jonathan looked at me. I could see that

the poor dear was torn about in his mind. Of course he wanted to be with me; but

then the boat service would, most likely, be the one which would destroy the ...

the ... the ... Vampire. (Why did I hesitate to write the word?) He was silent awhile, and during his silence Dr. Van Helsing spoke:—

“Friend Jonathan, this is to you for twice reasons. First, because you are

young and brave and can fight, and all energies may be needed at the last; and

again that it is your right to destroy him—that—which has wrought such woe to

you and yours. Be not afraid for Madam Mina; she will be my care, if I may. I

am old. My legs are not so quick to run as once; and I am not used to ride so long or to pursue as need be, or to fight with lethal weapons. But I can be of other service; I can fight in other way. And I can die, if need be, as well as younger men. Now let me say that what I would is this: while you, my Lord Godalming and friend Jonathan go in your so swift little steamboat up the river,

and whilst John and Quincey guard the bank where perchance he might be

landed, I will take Madam Mina right into the heart of the enemy’s country.

Whilst the old fox is tied in his box, floating on the running stream whence he

cannot escape to land—where he dares not raise the lid of his coffin-box lest his

Slovak carriers should in fear leave him to perish—we shall go in the track where Jonathan went,—from Bistritz over the Borgo, and find our way to the

Castle of Dracula. Here, Madam Mina’s hypnotic power will surely help, and we

shall find our way—all dark and unknown otherwise—after the first sunrise

when we are near that fateful place. There is much to be done, and other places

to be made sanctify, so that that nest of vipers be obliterated.” Here Jonathan interrupted him hotly:—

“Do you mean to say, Professor Van Helsing, that you would bring Mina, in

her sad case and tainted as she is with that devil’s illness, right into the jaws of

his death-trap? Not for the world! Not for Heaven or Hell!” He became almost

speechless for a minute, and then went on:—

“Do you know what the place is? Have you seen that awful den of hellish

infamy—with the very moonlight alive with grisly shapes, and every speck of

dust that whirls in the wind a devouring monster in embryo? Have you felt the

Vampire’s lips upon your throat?” Here he turned to me, and as his eyes lit on my forehead he threw up his arms with a cry: “Oh, my God, what have we done

to have this terror upon us!” and he sank down on the sofa in a collapse of misery. The Professor’s voice, as he spoke in clear, sweet tones, which seemed to

vibrate in the air, calmed us all:—

“Oh, my friend, it is because I would save Madam Mina from that awful

place that I would go. God forbid that I should take her into that place. There is

work—wild work—to be done there, that her eyes may not see. We men here, all

save Jonathan, have seen with their own eyes what is to be done before that place can be purify. Remember that we are in terrible straits. If the Count escape

us this time—and he is strong and subtle and cunning—he may choose to sleep

him for a century, and then in time our dear one”—he took my hand—“would

come to him to keep him company, and would be as those others that you,

Jonathan, saw. You have told us of their gloating lips; you heard their ribald laugh as they clutched the moving bag

that the Count threw to them. You

shudder; and well may it be. Forgive me that I make you so much pain, but it is

necessary. My friend, is it not a dire need for the which I am giving, possibly my

life? If it were that any one went into that place to stay, it is I who would have to

go to keep them company."

"Do as you will," said Jonathan, with a sob that shook him all over, "we are

in the hands of God!"

Later. —Oh, it did me good to see the way that these brave men worked. How

can women help loving men when they are so earnest, and so true, and so brave!

And, too, it made me think of the wonderful power of money! What can it not do

when it is properly applied; and what might it do when basely used. I felt so thankful that Lord Godalming is rich, and that both he and Mr. Morris, who also

has plenty of money, are willing to spend it so freely. For if they did not, our little expedition could not start, either so promptly or so well equipped, as it will

within another hour. It is not three hours since it was arranged what part each of

us was to do; and now Lord Godalming and Jonathan have a lovely steam

launch, with steam up ready to start at a moment’s notice. Dr. Seward and Mr.

Morris have half a dozen good horses, well appointed. We have all the maps and

appliances of various kinds that can be had. Professor Van Helsing and I are to

leave by the 11:40 train to-night for Veresti, where we are to get a carriage to drive to the Borgo Pass. We are bringing a good deal of ready money, as we are

to buy a carriage and horses. We shall drive ourselves, for we have no one whom

we can trust in the matter. The Professor knows something of a great many

languages, so we shall get on all right. We have all got arms, even for me a large-

bore revolver; Jonathan would not be happy unless I was armed like the rest.

Alas! I cannot carry one arm that the rest do; the scar on my forehead forbids that. Dear Dr. Van Helsing comforts me by telling me that I am fully armed as

there may be wolves; the weather is getting colder every hour, and there are snow-flurries which come and go as warnings.

Later. —It took all my courage to say good-bye to my darling. We may never

meet again. Courage, Mina! the Professor is looking at you keenly; his look is a

warning. There must be no tears now—unless it may be that God will let them

fall in gladness.

Jonathan Harker's Journal.

October 30. Night. —I am writing this in the light from the furnace door of the steam launch: Lord Godalming is firing up. He is an experienced hand at the

work, as he has had for years a launch of his own on the Thames, and another on

the Norfolk Broads. Regarding our plans, we finally decided that Mina's guess was correct, and that if any waterway was chosen for the Count's escape back to

his Castle, the Sereth and then the Bistritza at its junction, would be the one. We

took it, that somewhere about the 47th degree, north latitude, would be the place

chosen for the crossing the country between the river and the Carpathians. We have no fear in running at good speed up the river at night; there is plenty of water, and the banks are wide enough apart to make steaming, even in the dark,

easy enough. Lord Godalming tells me to sleep for a while, as it is enough for

the present for one to be on watch. But I cannot sleep—how can I with the terrible danger hanging over my darling, and her going out into that awful

place.... My only comfort is that we are in the hands of God. Only for that faith it

would be easier to die than to live, and so be quit of all the trouble. Mr. Morris

and Dr. Seward were off on their long ride before we started; they are to keep up

the right bank, far enough off to get on higher lands where they can see a good

stretch of river and avoid the following of its curves. They have, for the first stages, two men to ride and lead their spare horses—four in all, so as not to excite curiosity. When they dismiss the men, which shall be shortly, they shall themselves look after the horses. It may be necessary for us to join forces; if so

they can mount our whole party. One of the saddles has a movable horn, and can

be easily adapted for Mina, if required.

It is a wild adventure we are on. Here, as we are rushing along through the darkness, with the cold from the river seeming to rise up and strike us; with all

the mysterious voices of the night around us, it all comes home. We seem to be

drifting into unknown places and unknown ways; into a whole world of dark and

dreadful things. Godalming is shutting the furnace door....

31 October. —Still hurrying along. The day has come, and Godalming is sleeping. I am on watch. The morning is bitterly cold; the furnace heat is grateful, though we have heavy fur coats. As yet we have passed only a few open boats, but none of them had on board any box or package of anything like

the size of the one we seek. The men were scared every time we turned our electric lamp on them, and fell on their knees and prayed.

1 November, evening. —No news all day; we have found nothing of the kind

we seek. We have now passed into the Bistritza; and if we are wrong in our surmise our chance is gone. We have over-hauled every boat, big and little. Early

this morning, one crew took us for a Government boat, and treated us

accordingly. We saw in this a way of smoothing matters, so at Fundu, where the

Bistritza runs into the Sereth, we got a Roumanian flag which we now fly

conspicuously. With every boat which we have over-hauled since then this trick

has succeeded; we have had every deference shown to us, and not once any

objection to whatever we chose to ask or do. Some of the Slovaks tell us that a

big boat passed them, going at more than usual speed as she had a double crew

on board. This was before they came to Fundu, so they could not tell us whether

the boat turned into the Bistritza or continued on up the Sereth. At Fundu we could not hear of any such boat, so she must have passed there in the night. I am

feeling very sleepy; the cold is perhaps beginning to tell upon me, and nature must have rest some time. Godalming insists that he shall keep the first watch.

God bless him for all his goodness to poor dear Mina and me.

2 November, morning. —It is broad daylight. That good fellow would not wake me. He says it would have been a sin to, for I slept peacefully and was forgetting my trouble. It seems brutally selfish to me to have slept so long, and

let him watch all night; but he was quite right. I am a new man this morning; and, as I sit here and watch him sleeping, I can do all that is necessary both as to

minding the engine, steering, and keeping watch. I can feel that my strength and

energy are coming back to me. I wonder where Mina is now, and Van Helsing.

They should have got to Veresti about noon on Wednesday. It would take them

some time to get the carriage and horses; so if they had started and travelled hard, they would be about now at the Borgo Pass. God guide and help them! I

am afraid to think what may happen. If we could only go faster! but we cannot;

the engines are throbbing and doing their utmost. I wonder how Dr. Seward and

Mr. Morris are getting on. There seem to be endless streams running down the mountains into this river, but as none of them are very large—at present, at all events, though they are terrible doubtless in winter and when the snow melts—

the horsemen may not have met much obstruction. I hope that before we get to

Strasba we may see them; for if by that time we have not overtaken the Count, it

may be necessary to take counsel together what to do next.

Dr. Seward's Diary.

2 November. —Three days on the road. No news, and no time to write it if there had been, for every moment is precious. We have had only the rest needful

for the horses; but we are both bearing it wonderfully. Those adventurous days

of ours are turning up useful. We must push on; we shall never feel happy till we

get the launch in sight again.

3 November. —We heard at Fundu that the launch had gone up the Bistritza. I

wish it wasn't so cold. There are signs of snow coming; and if it falls heavy it

will stop us. In such case we must get a sledge and go on, Russian fashion.

4 November. —To-day we heard of the launch having been detained by an accident when trying to force a way up the rapids. The Slovak boats get up all

right, by aid of a rope and steering with knowledge. Some went up only a few

hours before. Godalming is an amateur fitter himself, and evidently it was he who put the launch in trim again. Finally, they got up the rapids all right, with local help, and are off on the chase afresh. I fear that the boat is not any better

for the accident; the peasantry tell us that after she got upon smooth water again,

she kept stopping every now and again so long as she was in sight. We must push on harder than ever; our help may be wanted soon.

Mina Harker's Journal.

31 October. —Arrived at Veresti at noon. The Professor tells me that this morning at dawn he could hardly hypnotise me at all, and that all I could say was: "dark and quiet." He is off now buying a carriage and horses. He says that

he will later on try to buy additional horses, so that we may be able to change them on the way. We have something more than 70 miles before us. The country

is lovely, and most interesting; if only we were under different conditions, how

delightful it would be to see it all. If Jonathan and I were driving through it alone

what a pleasure it would be. To stop and see people, and learn something of their

life, and to fill our minds and memories with all the colour and picturesqueness

of the whole wild, beautiful country and the quaint people! But, alas!—

Later. —Dr. Van Helsing has returned. He has got the carriage and horses; we

are to have some dinner, and to start in an hour. The landlady is putting us up a

huge basket of provisions; it seems enough for a company of soldiers. The

Professor encourages her, and whispers to me that it may be a week before we

can get any good food again. He has been shopping too, and has sent home such

a wonderful lot of fur coats and wraps, and all sorts of warm things. There will

not be any chance of our being cold.

. . . . . .

We shall soon be off. I am afraid to think what may happen to us. We are truly in the hands of God. He alone knows what may be, and I pray Him, with all

the strength of my sad and humble soul, that He will watch over my beloved husband; that whatever may happen, Jonathan may know that I loved him and

honoured him more than I can say, and that my latest and truest thought will be

always for him.

CHAPTER XXVII

MINA HARKER’S JOURNAL

1 November. —All day long we have travelled, and at a good speed. The horses seem to know that they are being kindly treated, for they go willingly their full stage at best speed. We have now had so many changes and find the same thing so constantly that we are encouraged to think that the journey will be

an easy one. Dr. Van Helsing is laconic; he tells the farmers that he is hurrying to

Bistritz, and pays them well to make the exchange of horses. We get hot soup, or

coffee, or tea; and off we go. It is a lovely country; full of beauties of all imaginable kinds, and the people are brave, and strong, and simple, and seem full of nice qualities. They are *very, very* superstitious. In the first house where we stopped, when the woman who served us saw the scar on my forehead, she

crossed herself and put out two fingers towards me, to keep off the evil eye. I believe they went to the trouble of putting an extra amount of garlic into our food; and I can’t abide garlic. Ever since then I have taken care not to take off

my hat or veil, and so have escaped their suspicions. We are travelling fast, and

as we have no driver with us to carry tales, we go ahead of scandal; but I daresay

that fear of the evil eye will follow hard behind us all the way. The Professor seems tireless; all day he would not take any rest, though he made me sleep for a

long spell. At sunset time he hypnotised me, and he says that I answered as usual

“darkness, lapping water and creaking wood”; so our enemy is still on the river. I

am afraid to think of Jonathan, but somehow I have now no fear for him, or for

myself. I write this whilst we wait in a farmhouse for the horses to be got ready.

Dr. Van Helsing is sleeping, Poor dear, he looks very tired and old and grey, but

his mouth is set as firmly as a conqueror’s; even in his sleep he is instinct with

resolution. When we have well started I must make him rest whilst I drive. I shall tell him that we have days before us, and we must not break down when most of all his strength will be needed.... All is ready; we are off shortly.

2 November, morning. —I was successful, and we took turns driving all night;

now the day is on us, bright though cold. There is a strange heaviness in the air

—I say heaviness for want of a better word; I mean that it oppresses us both. It is

very cold, and only our warm furs keep us comfortable. At dawn Van Helsing hypnotised me; he says I answered “darkness, creaking wood and roaring water,”

so the river is changing as they ascend. I do hope that my darling will not run any chance of danger—more than need be; but we are in God’s hands.

2 November, night. —All day long driving. The country gets wilder as we go,

and the great spurs of the Carpathians, which at Veresti seemed so far from us and so low on the horizon, now seem to gather round us and tower in front. We

both seem in good spirits; I think we make an effort each to cheer the other; in

the doing so we cheer ourselves. Dr. Van Helsing says that by morning we shall

reach the Borgo Pass. The houses are very few here now, and the Professor says

that the last horse we got will have to go on with us, as we may not be able to

change. He got two in addition to the two we changed, so that now we have a rude four-in-hand. The dear horses are patient and good, and they give us no trouble. We are not worried with other travellers, and so even I can drive. We

shall get to the Pass in daylight; we do not want to arrive before. So we take it

easy, and have each a long rest in turn. Oh, what will to-morrow bring to us? We

go to seek the place where my poor darling suffered so much. God grant that we

may be guided aright, and that He will deign to watch over my husband and those dear to us both, and who are in such deadly peril. As for me, I am not worthy in His sight. Alas! I am unclean to His eyes, and shall be until He may

deign to let me stand forth in His sight as one of those who have not incurred His

wrath.

Memorandum by Abraham Van Helsing.

4 November. —This to my old and true friend John Seward, M.D., of Purfleet,

London, in case I may not see him. It may explain. It is morning, and I write by a

fire which all the night I have kept alive—Madam Mina aiding me. It is cold, cold; so cold that the grey heavy sky is full of snow, which when it falls will settle for all winter as the ground is hardening to receive it. It seems to have affected Madam Mina; she has been so heavy of head all day that she was not like herself. She sleeps, and sleeps, and sleeps! She who is usual so alert, have

done literally nothing all the day; she even have lost her appetite. She make no

entry into her little diary, she who write so faithful at every pause. Something whisper to me that all is not well. However, to-night she is more *vif*. Her long sleep all day have refresh and restore her, for now she is all sweet and bright as

ever. At sunset I try to hypnotise her, but alas! with no effect; the power has grown less and less with each day, and to-night it fail me altogether. Well, God's

will be done—whatever it may be, and whithersoever it may lead!

Now to the historical, for as Madam Mina write not in her stenography, I

must, in my cumbrous old fashion, that so each day of us may not go unrecorded.

We got to the Borgo Pass just after sunrise yesterday morning. When I saw

the signs of the dawn I got ready for the hypnotism. We stopped our carriage, and got down so that there might be no disturbance. I made a couch with furs,

and Madam Mina, lying down, yield herself as usual, but more slow and more short time than ever, to the hypnotic sleep. As before, came the answer:

"darkness and the swirling of water." Then she woke, bright and radiant and we

go on our way and soon reach the Pass. At this time and place, she become all on

fire with zeal; some new guiding power be in her manifested, for she point to a

road and say:—

“This is the way.”

“How know you it?” I ask.

“Of course I know it,” she answer, and with a pause, add: “Have not my

Jonathan travelled it and wrote of his travel?”

At first I think somewhat strange, but soon I see that there be only one such

by-road. It is used but little, and very different from the coach road from the Bukovina to Bistritz, which is more wide and hard, and more of use.

So we came down this road; when we meet other ways—not always were we

sure that they were roads at all, for they be neglect and light snow have fallen—

the horses know and they only. I give rein to them, and they go on so patient.

By-and-by we find all the things which Jonathan have note in that wonderful diary of him. Then we go on for long, long hours and hours. At the first, I tell

Madam Mina to sleep; she try, and she succeed. She sleep all the time; till at the

last, I feel myself to suspicious grow, and attempt to wake her. But she sleep on,

and I may not wake her though I try. I do not wish to try too hard lest I harm her;

for I know that she have suffer much, and sleep at times be all-in-all to her. I think I drowse myself, for all of sudden I feel guilt, as though I have done something; I find myself bolt up, with the reins in my hand, and the good horses

go along jog, jog, just as ever. I look down and find Madam Mina still sleep. It is

now not far off sunset time, and over the snow the light of the sun flow in big

yellow flood, so that we throw great long shadow on where the mountain rise so

steep. For we are going up, and up; and all is oh! so wild and rocky, as though it

were the end of the world.

Then I arouse Madam Mina. This time she wake with not much trouble, and

then I try to put her to hypnotic sleep. But she sleep not, being as though I were

not. Still I try and try, till all at once I find her and myself in dark; so I look

round, and find that the sun have gone down. Madam Mina laugh, and I turn and look at her. She is now quite awake, and look so well as I never saw her since

that night at Carfax when we first enter the Count’s house. I am amaze, and not

at ease then; but she is so bright and tender and thoughtful for me that I forget all

fear. I light a fire, for we have brought supply of wood with us, and she prepare

food while I undo the horses and set them, tethered in shelter, to feed. Then when I return to the fire she have my supper ready. I go to help her; but she smile, and tell me that she have eat already—that she was so hungry that she would not wait. I like it not, and I have grave doubts; but I fear to affright her,

and so I am silent of it. She help me and I eat alone; and then we wrap in fur and

lie beside the fire, and I tell her to sleep while I watch. But presently I forget all

of watching; and when I sudden remember that I watch, I find her lying quiet, but awake, and looking at me with so bright eyes. Once, twice more the same occur, and I get much sleep till before morning. When I wake I try to hypnotise

her; but alas! though she shut her eyes obedient, she may not sleep. The sun rise

up, and up, and up; and then sleep come to her too late, but so heavy that she will not wake. I have to lift her up, and place her sleeping in the carriage when I

have harnessed the horses and made all ready. Madam still sleep, and she look in

her sleep more healthy and more redder than before. And I like it not. And I am

afraid, afraid, afraid!—I am afraid of all things—even to think but I must go on

my way. The stake we play for is life and death, or more than these, and we must

not flinch.

5 November, morning. —Let me be accurate in everything, for though you and

I have seen some strange things together, you may at the first think that I, Van

Helsing, am mad—that the many horrors and the so long strain on nerves has at

the last turn my brain.

All yesterday we travel, ever getting closer to the mountains, and moving into

a more and more wild and desert land. There are great, frowning precipices and

much falling water, and Nature seem to have held sometime her carnival.

Madam Mina still sleep and sleep; and though I did have hunger and appeased it,

I could not waken her—even for food. I began to fear that the fatal spell of the

place was upon her, tainted as she is with that Vampire baptism. “Well,” said I to

myself, “if it be that she sleep all the day, it shall also be that I do not sleep at

night.” As we travel on the rough road, for a road of an ancient and imperfect kind there was, I held down my head and slept. Again I waked with a sense of

guilt and of time passed, and found Madam Mina still sleeping, and the sun low

down. But all was indeed changed; the frowning mountains seemed further

away, and we were near the top of a steep-rising hill, on summit of which was such a castle as Jonathan tell of in his diary. At once I exulted and feared; for now, for good or ill, the end was near.

I woke Madam Mina, and again tried to hypnotise her; but alas! unavailing

till too late. Then, ere the great dark came upon us—for even after down-sun the

heavens reflected the gone sun on the snow, and all was for a time in a great twilight—I took out the horses and fed them in what shelter I could. Then I make

a fire; and near it I make Madam Mina, now awake and more charming than

ever, sit comfortable amid her rugs. I got ready food: but she would not eat, simply saying that she had not hunger. I did not press her, knowing her

unavailingness. But I myself eat, for I must needs now be strong for all. Then,

with the fear on me of what might be, I drew a ring so big for her comfort, round

where Madam Mina sat; and over the ring I passed some of the wafer, and I broke it fine so that all was well guarded. She sat still all the time—so still as one dead; and she grew whiter and ever whiter till the snow was not more pale;

and no word she said. But when I drew near, she clung to me, and I could know

that the poor soul shook her from head to feet with a tremor that was pain to feel.

I said to her presently, when she had grown more quiet:—

“Will you not come over to the fire?” for I wished to make a test of what she

could. She rose obedient, but when she have made a step she stopped, and stood

as one stricken.

“Why not go on?” I asked. She shook her head, and, coming back, sat down

in her place. Then, looking at me with open eyes, as of one waked from sleep,

she said simply:—

“I cannot!” and remained silent. I rejoiced, for I knew that what she could not, none of those that we dreaded could. Though there might be danger to her

body, yet her soul was safe!

Presently the horses began to scream, and tore at their tethers till I came to them and quieted them. When they did feel my hands on them, they whinnied

low as in joy, and licked at my hands and were quiet for a time. Many times through the night did I come to them, till it arrive to the cold hour when all nature is at lowest; and every time my coming was with quiet of them. In the cold hour the fire began to die, and I was about stepping forth to replenish it, for

now the snow came in flying sweeps and with it a chill mist. Even in the dark

there was a light of some kind, as there ever is over snow; and it seemed as though the snow-flurries and the wreaths of mist took shape as of women with

trailing garments. All was in dead, grim silence only that the horses whinnied and cowered, as if in terror of the worst. I began to fear—horrible fears; but then

came to me the sense of safety in that ring wherein I stood. I began, too, to think that my imaginings were of the night, and the gloom, and the unrest that I have

gone through, and all the terrible anxiety. It was as though my memories of all

Jonathan’s horrid experience were befooling me; for the snow flakes and the

mist began to wheel and circle round, till I could get as though a shadowy glimpse of those women that would have kissed him. And then the horses

cowered lower and lower, and moaned in terror as men do in pain. Even the madness of fright was not to them, so that they could break away. I feared for my

dear Madam Mina when these weird figures drew near and circled round. I

looked at her, but she sat calm, and smiled at me; when I would have stepped to

the fire to replenish it, she caught me and held me back, and whispered, like a voice that one hears in a dream, so low it was:—

“No! No! Do not go without. Here you are safe!” I turned to her, and looking

in her eyes, said:—

“But you? It is for you that I fear!” whereat she laughed—a laugh, low and

unreal, and said:—

“Fear for *me*! Why fear for me? None safer in all the world from them than I

am,” and as I wondered at the meaning of her words, a puff of wind made the flame leap up, and I see the red scar on her forehead. Then, alas! I knew. Did I

not, I would soon have learned, for the wheeling figures of mist and snow came

closer, but keeping ever without the Holy circle. Then they began to materialise

till—if God have not take away my reason, for I saw it through my eyes—there

were before me in actual flesh the same three women that Jonathan saw in the room, when they would have kissed his throat. I knew the swaying round forms,

the bright hard eyes, the white teeth, the ruddy colour, the voluptuous lips. They

smiled ever at poor dear Madam Mina; and as their laugh came through the

silence of the night, they twined their arms and pointed to her, and said in those

so sweet tingling tones that Jonathan said were of the intolerable sweetness of the water-glasses:—

“Come, sister. Come to us. Come! Come!” In fear I turned to my poor Madam Mina, and my heart with gladness leapt like flame; for oh! the terror in

her sweet eyes, the repulsion, the horror, told a story to my heart that was all of

hope. God be thanked she was not, yet, of them. I seized some of the firewood

which was by me, and holding out some of the Wafer, advanced on them towards

the fire. They drew back before me, and laughed their low horrid laugh. I fed the

fire, and feared them not; for I knew that we were safe within our protections.

They could not approach, me, whilst so armed, nor Madam Mina whilst she

remained within the ring, which she could not leave no more than they could enter. The horses had ceased to moan, and lay still on the ground; the snow fell

on them softly, and they grew whiter. I knew that there was for the poor beasts

no more of terror.

And so we remained till the red of the dawn to fall through the snow-gloom. I

was desolate and afraid, and full of woe and terror; but when that beautiful sun

began to climb the horizon life was to me again. At the first coming of the dawn

the horrid figures melted in the whirling mist and snow; the wreaths of

transparent gloom moved away towards the castle, and were lost.

Instinctively, with the dawn coming, I turned to Madam Mina, intending to

hypnotise her; but she lay in a deep and sudden sleep, from which I could not wake her. I tried to hypnotise through her sleep, but she made no response, none

at all; and the day broke. I fear yet to stir. I have made my fire and have seen the

horses, they are all dead. To-day I have much to do here, and I keep waiting till

the sun is up high; for there may be places where I must go, where that sunlight,

though snow and mist obscure it, will be to me a safety.

I will strengthen me with breakfast, and then I will to my terrible work.

Madam Mina still sleeps; and, God be thanked! she is calm in her sleep....

Jonathan Harker's Journal.

4 November, evening. —The accident to the launch has been a terrible thing for us. Only for it we should have overtaken the boat long ago; and by now my

dear Mina would have been free. I fear to think of her, off on the wolds near that

horrid place. We have got horses, and we follow on the track. I note this whilst

Godalming is getting ready. We have our arms. The Szgany must look out if they

mean fight. Oh, if only Morris and Seward were with us. We must only hope! If I

write no more Good-bye, Mina! God bless and keep you.

Dr. Seward's Diary.

5 November. —With the dawn we saw the body of Szgany before us dashing

away from the river with their leiter-wagon. They surrounded it in a cluster, and hurried along as though beset. The snow is falling lightly and there is a strange

excitement in the air. It may be our own feelings, but the depression is strange.

Far off I hear the howling of wolves; the snow brings them down from the

mountains, and there are dangers to all of us, and from all sides. The horses are

nearly ready, and we are soon off. We ride to death of some one. God alone knows who, or where, or what, or when, or how it may be....

Dr. Van Helsing's Memorandum.

5 November, afternoon. —I am at least sane. Thank God for that mercy at all

events, though the proving it has been dreadful. When I left Madam Mina

sleeping within the Holy circle, I took my way to the castle. The blacksmith hammer which I took in the carriage from Veresti was useful; though the doors

were all open I broke them off the rusty hinges, lest some ill-intent or ill-chance

should close them, so that being entered I might not get out. Jonathan's bitter experience served me here. By memory of his diary I found my way to the old

chapel, for I knew that here my work lay. The air was oppressive; it seemed as if

there was some sulphurous fume, which at times made me dizzy. Either there

was a roaring in my ears or I heard afar off the howl of wolves. Then I bethought

me of my dear Madam Mina, and I was in terrible plight. The dilemma had me

between his horns.

Her, I had not dare to take into this place, but left safe from the Vampire in

that Holy circle; and yet even there would be the wolf! I resolve me that my work lay here, and that as to the wolves we must submit, if it were God’s will. At

any rate it was only death and freedom beyond. So did I choose for her. Had it

but been for myself the choice had been easy, the maw of the wolf were better to

rest in than the grave of the Vampire! So I make my choice to go on with my work.

I knew that there were at least three graves to find—graves that are inhabit;

so I search, and search, and I find one of them. She lay in her Vampire sleep, so

full of life and voluptuous beauty that I shudder as though I have come to do murder. Ah, I doubt not that in old time,

when such things were, many a man who set forth to do such a task as mine, found at the last his heart fail him, and

then his nerve. So he delay, and delay, and delay, till the mere beauty and the fascination of the wanton Un-Dead have hypnotise him; and he remain on and

on, till sunset come, and the Vampire sleep be over. Then the beautiful eyes of

the fair woman open and look love, and the voluptuous mouth present to a kiss

—and man is weak. And there remain one more victim in the Vampire fold; one

more to swell the grim and grisly ranks of the Un-Dead!...

There is some fascination, surely, when I am moved by the mere presence of

such an one, even lying as she lay in a tomb fretted with age and heavy with the

dust of centuries, though there be that horrid odour such as the lairs of the Count

have had. Yes, I was moved—I, Van Helsing, with all my purpose and with my

motive for hate—I was moved to a yearning for delay which seemed to paralyse

my faculties and to clog my very soul. It may have been that the need of natural

sleep, and the strange oppression of the air were beginning to overcome me.

Certain it was that I was lapsing into sleep, the open-eyed sleep of one who yields to a sweet fascination, when there came through the snow-stilled air a long, low wail, so full of woe and pity that it woke me like the sound of a clarion. For it was the voice of my dear Madam Mina that I heard.

Then I braced myself again to my horrid task, and found by wrenching away

tomb-tops one other of the sisters, the other dark one. I dared not pause to look

on her as I had on her sister, lest once more I should begin to be enthrall; but I go

on searching until, presently, I find in a high great tomb as if made to one much

beloved that other fair sister which, like Jonathan I had seen to gather herself out

of the atoms of the mist. She was so fair to look on, so radiantly beautiful, so exquisitely voluptuous, that the very instinct of man in me, which calls some of

my sex to love and to protect one of hers, made my head whirl with new

emotion. But God be thanked, that soul-wail of my dear Madam Mina had not

died out of my ears; and, before the spell could be wrought further upon me, I

had nerved myself to my wild work. By this time I had searched all the tombs in

the chapel, so far as I could tell; and as there had been only three of these Un-

Dead phantoms around us in the night, I took it that there were no more of active

Un-Dead existent. There was one great tomb more lordly than all the rest; huge

it was, and nobly proportioned. On it was but one word

DRACULA.

This then was the Un-Dead home of the King-Vampire, to whom so many

more were due. Its emptiness spoke eloquent to make certain what I knew.

Before I began to restore these women to their dead selves through my awful work, I laid in Dracula’s tomb some of the Wafer, and so banished him from it,

Un-Dead, for ever.

Then began my terrible task, and I dreaded it. Had it been but one, it had been

easy, comparative. But three! To begin twice more after I had been through a deed of horror; for if it was terrible with the sweet Miss Lucy, what would it not

be with these strange ones who had survived through centuries, and who had

been strengthened by the passing of the years; who would, if they could, have fought for their foul lives....

Oh, my friend John, but it was butcher work; had I not been nerved by

thoughts of other dead, and of the living over whom hung such a pall of fear, I

could not have gone on. I tremble and tremble even yet, though till all was over,

God be thanked, my nerve did stand. Had I not seen the repose in the first place,

and the gladness that stole over it just ere the final dissolution came, as realisation that the soul had been won, I could not have gone further with my butchery. I could not have endured the horrid screeching as the stake drove home; the plunging of writhing form, and lips of bloody foam. I should have fled

in terror and left my work undone. But it is over! And the poor souls, I can pity

them now and weep, as I think of them placid each in her full sleep of death for a

short moment ere fading. For, friend John, hardly had my knife severed the head

of each, before the whole body began to melt away and crumble in to its native

dust, as though the death that should have come centuries agone had at last assert

himself and say at once and loud “I am here!”

Before I left the castle I so fixed its entrances that never more can the Count

enter there Un-Dead.

When I stepped into the circle where Madam Mina slept, she woke from her

sleep, and, seeing, me, cried out in pain that I had endured too much.

“Come!” she said, “come away from this awful place! Let us go to meet my

husband who is, I know, coming towards us.” She was looking thin and pale and

weak; but her eyes were pure and glowed with fervour. I was glad to see her paleness and her illness, for my mind was full of the fresh horror of that ruddy

vampire sleep.

And so with trust and hope, and yet full of fear, we go eastward to meet our

friends—and *him*—whom Madam Mina tell me that she *know* are coming to meet us.

Mina Harker’s Journal.

6 November. —It was late in the afternoon when the Professor and I took our

way towards the east whence I knew Jonathan was coming. We did not go fast,

though the way was steeply downhill, for we had to take heavy rugs and wraps

with us; we dared not face the possibility of being left without warmth in the cold and the snow. We had to take some of our provisions, too, for we were in a

perfect desolation, and, so far as we could see through the snowfall, there was not even the sign of habitation. When we had gone about a mile, I was tired with

the heavy walking and sat down to rest. Then we looked back and saw where the

clear line of Dracula’s castle cut the sky; for we were so deep under the hill whereon it was set that the angle of perspective of the Carpathian mountains was

far below it. We saw it in all its grandeur, perched a thousand feet on the summit

of a sheer precipice, and with seemingly a great gap between it and the steep of

the adjacent mountain on any side. There was something wild and uncanny

about the place. We could hear the distant howling of wolves. They were far off,

but the sound, even though coming muffled through the deadening snowfall, was

full of terror. I knew from the way Dr. Van Helsing was searching about that he

was trying to seek some strategic point, where we would be less exposed in case

of attack. The rough roadway still led downwards; we could trace it through the

drifted snow.

In a little while the Professor signalled to me, so I got up and joined him. He

had found a wonderful spot, a sort of natural hollow in a rock, with an entrance

like a doorway between two boulders. He took me by the hand and drew me in:

“See!” he said, “here you will be in shelter; and if the wolves do come I can meet them one by one.” He brought in our furs, and made a snug nest for me, and got out some provisions and forced them upon me. But I could not eat; to even try to do so was repulsive to me, and, much as I would have liked to please

him, I could not bring myself to the attempt. He looked very sad, but did not reproach me. Taking his field-glasses from the case, he stood on the top of the rock, and began to search the horizon. Suddenly he called out:—

“Look! Madam Mina, look! look!” I sprang up and stood beside him on the

rock; he handed me his glasses and pointed. The snow was now falling more

heavily, and swirled about fiercely, for a high wind was beginning to blow.

However, there were times when there were pauses between the snow flurries

and I could see a long way round. From the height where we were it was

possible to see a great distance; and far off, beyond the white waste of snow, I

could see the river lying like a black ribbon in kinks and curls as it wound its way. Straight in front of us and not far off—in fact, so near that I wondered we

had not noticed before—came a group of mounted men hurrying along. In the

midst of them was a cart, a long leiter-wagon which swept from side to side, like

a dog’s tail wagging, with each stern inequality of the road. Outlined against the

snow as they were, I could see from the men’s clothes that they were peasants or

gypsies of some kind.

On the cart was a great square chest. My heart leaped as I saw it, for I felt that

the end was coming. The evening was now drawing close, and well I knew that

at sunset the Thing, which was till then imprisoned there, would take new

freedom and could in any of many forms elude all pursuit. In fear I turned to the

Professor; to my consternation, however, he was not there. An instant later, I saw him below me. Round the rock he had drawn a circle, such as we had found shelter in last night. When he had completed it he stood beside me again, saying:

—

“At least you shall be safe here from *him*!” He took the glasses from me, and

at the next lull of the snow swept the whole space below us. “See,” he said,

“they come quickly; they are flogging the horses, and galloping as hard as they

can.” He paused and went on in a hollow voice:—

“They are racing for the sunset. We may be too late. God’s will be done!”

Down came another blinding rush of driving snow, and the whole landscape was

blotted out. It soon passed, however, and once more his glasses were fixed on the

plain. Then came a sudden cry:—

“Look! Look! Look! See, two horsemen follow fast, coming up from the

south. It must be Quincey and John. Take the glass. Look before the snow blots

it all out!” I took it and looked. The two men might be Dr. Seward and Mr.

Morris. I knew at all events that neither of them was Jonathan. At the same time

I *knew* that Jonathan was not far off; looking around I saw on the north side of the coming party two other men, riding at break-neck speed. One of them I knew

was Jonathan, and the other I took, of course, to be Lord Godalming. They, too,

were pursuing the party with the cart. When I told the Professor he shouted in glee like a schoolboy, and, after looking intently till a snow fall made sight impossible, he laid his Winchester rifle ready for use against the boulder at the

opening of our shelter. “They are all converging,” he said. “When the time

comes we shall have gypsies on all sides.” I got out my revolver ready to hand,

for whilst we were speaking the howling of wolves came louder and closer.

When the snow storm abated a moment we looked again. It was strange to see

the snow falling in such heavy flakes close to us, and beyond, the sun shining more and more brightly as it sank down towards the far mountain tops.

Sweeping the glass all around us I could see here and there dots moving singly

and in twos and threes and larger numbers—the wolves were gathering for their

prey.

Every instant seemed an age whilst we waited. The wind came now in fierce

bursts, and the snow was driven with fury as it swept upon us in circling eddies.

At times we could not see an arm’s length before us; but at others, as the hollow-

sounding wind swept by us, it seemed to clear the air-space around us so that we

could see afar off. We had of late been so accustomed to watch for sunrise and

sunset, that we knew with fair accuracy when it would be; and we knew that before long the sun would set. It was hard to believe that by our watches it was

less than an hour that we waited in that rocky shelter before the various bodies began to converge close upon us. The wind came now with fiercer and more

bitter sweeps, and more steadily from the north. It seemingly had driven the snow clouds from us, for, with only occasional bursts, the snow fell. We could distinguish clearly the individuals of each party, the pursued and the pursuers.

Strangely enough those pursued did not seem to realise, or at least to care, that

they were pursued; they seemed, however, to hasten with redoubled speed as the

sun dropped lower and lower on the mountain tops.

Closer and closer they drew. The Professor and I crouched down behind our

rock, and held our weapons ready; I could see that he was determined that they

should not pass. One and all were quite unaware of our presence.

All at once two voices shouted out to: “Halt!” One was my Jonathan’s, raised

in a high key of passion; the other Mr. Morris’ strong resolute tone of quiet command. The gypsies may not have known the language, but there was no

mistaking the tone, in whatever tongue the words were spoken. Instinctively they

reined in, and at the instant Lord Godalming and Jonathan dashed up at one side

and Dr. Seward and Mr. Morris on the other. The leader of the gypsies, a

splendid-looking fellow who sat his horse like a centaur, waved them back, and

in a fierce voice gave to his companions some word to proceed. They lashed the

horses which sprang forward; but the four men raised their Winchester rifles, and

in an unmistakable way commanded them to stop. At the same moment Dr. Van

Helsing and I rose behind the rock and pointed our weapons at them. Seeing that

they were surrounded the men tightened their reins and drew up. The leader

turned to them and gave a word at which every man of the gypsy party drew what weapon he carried, knife or pistol, and held himself in readiness to attack.

Issue was joined in an instant.

The leader, with a quick movement of his rein, threw his horse out in front,

and pointing first to the sun—now close down on the hill tops—and then to the

castle, said something which I did not understand. For answer, all four men of our party threw themselves from their horses and dashed towards the cart. I should have felt terrible fear at seeing Jonathan in such danger, but that the ardour of battle must have been upon me as well as the rest of them; I felt no fear, but only a wild, surging desire to do something. Seeing the quick movement

of our parties, the leader of the gypsies gave a command; his men instantly formed round the cart in a sort of undisciplined endeavour, each one shouldering

and pushing the other in his eagerness to carry out the order.

In the midst of this I could see that Jonathan on one side of the ring of men,

and Quincey on the other, were forcing a way to the cart; it was evident that they

were bent on finishing their task before the sun should set. Nothing seemed to stop or even to hinder them. Neither the levelled weapons nor the flashing knives

of the gypsies in front, nor the howling of the wolves behind, appeared to even

attract their attention. Jonathan’s impetuosity, and the manifest singleness of his

purpose, seemed to overawe those in front of him; instinctively they cowered, aside and let him pass. In an instant he had jumped upon the cart, and, with a strength which seemed incredible, raised the great box, and flung it over the wheel to the ground. In the meantime, Mr. Morris had had to use force to pass

through his side of the ring of Szgany. All the time I had been breathlessly watching Jonathan I had, with the tail of my eye, seen him pressing desperately

forward, and had seen the knives of the gypsies flash as he won a way through

them, and they cut at him. He had parried with his great bowie knife, and at first

I thought that he too had come through in safety; but as he sprang beside Jonathan, who had by now jumped from the cart, I could see that with his left hand he was clutching at his side, and that the blood was spurting through his fingers. He did not delay notwithstanding this, for as Jonathan, with desperate energy, attacked one end of the chest, attempting to prize off the lid with his great Kukri knife, he attacked the

other frantically with his bowie. Under the efforts of both men the lid began to yield; the nails drew with a quick screeching

sound, and the top of the box was thrown back.

By this time the gypsies, seeing themselves covered by the Winchesters, and

at the mercy of Lord Godalming and Dr. Seward, had given in and made no

resistance. The sun was almost down on the mountain tops, and the shadows of

the whole group fell long upon the snow. I saw the Count lying within the box

upon the earth, some of which the rude falling from the cart had scattered over

him. He was deathly pale, just like a waxen image, and the red eyes glared with

the horrible vindictive look which I knew too well.

As I looked, the eyes saw the sinking sun, and the look of hate in them turned

to triumph.

But, on the instant, came the sweep and flash of Jonathan’s great knife. I shrieked as I saw it shear through the throat; whilst at the same moment Mr.

Morris’s bowie knife plunged into the heart.

It was like a miracle; but before our very eyes, and almost in the drawing of a

breath, the whole body crumble into dust and passed from our sight.

I shall be glad as long as I live that even in that moment of final dissolution,

there was in the face a look of peace, such as I never could have imagined might

have rested there.

The Castle of Dracula now stood out against the red sky, and every stone of

its broken battlements was articulated against the light of the setting sun.

The gypsies, taking us as in some way the cause of the extraordinary

disappearance of the dead man, turned, without a word, and rode away as if for

their lives. Those who were unmounted jumped upon the leiter-wagon and

shouted to the horsemen not to desert them. The wolves, which had withdrawn

to a safe distance, followed in their wake, leaving us alone.

Mr. Morris, who had sunk to the ground, leaned on his elbow, holding his

hand pressed to his side; the blood still gushed through his fingers. I flew to him,

for the Holy circle did not now keep me back; so did the two doctors. Jonathan

knelt behind him and the wounded man laid back his head on his shoulder. With

a sigh he took, with a feeble effort, my hand in that of his own which was unstained. He must have seen the anguish of my heart in my face, for he smiled

at me and said:—

“I am only too happy to have been of any service! Oh, God!” he cried

suddenly, struggling up to a sitting posture and pointing to me, “It was worth for

this to die! Look! look!”

The sun was now right down upon the mountain top, and the red gleams fell

upon my face, so that it was bathed in rosy light. With one impulse the men sank

on their knees and a deep and earnest “Amen” broke from all as their eyes followed the pointing of his finger. The dying man spoke:—

“Now God be thanked that all has not been in vain! See! the snow is not more

stainless than her forehead! The curse has passed away!”

And, to our bitter grief, with a smile and in silence, he died, a gallant gentleman.

NOTE

Seven years ago we all went through the flames; and the happiness of some

of us since then is, we think, well worth the pain we endured. It is an added joy

to Mina and to me that our boy's birthday is the same day as that on which Quincey Morris died. His mother holds, I know, the secret belief that some of our brave friend's spirit has passed into him. His bundle of names links all our

little band of men together; but we call him Quincey.

In the summer of this year we made a journey to Transylvania, and went over

the old ground which was, and is, to us so full of vivid and terrible memories. It

was almost impossible to believe that the things which we had seen with our own eyes and heard with our own ears were living truths. Every trace of all that

had been was blotted out. The castle stood as before, reared high above a waste

of desolation.

When we got home we were talking of the old time—which we could all look

back on without despair, for Godalming and Seward are both happily married. I

took the papers from the safe where they had been ever since our return so long

ago. We were struck with the fact, that in all the mass of material of which the

record is composed, there is hardly one authentic document; nothing but a mass

of typewriting, except the later note-books of Mina and Seward and myself, and

Van Helsing’s memorandum. We could hardly ask any one, even did we wish to,

to accept these as proofs of so wild a story. Van Helsing summed it all up as he

said, with our boy on his knee:—

“We want no proofs; we ask none to believe us! This boy will some day

know what a brave and gallant woman his mother is. Already he knows her

sweetness and loving care; later on he will understand how some men so loved

her, that they did dare much for her sake.”

JONATHAN HARKER.

THE END

There’s More to Follow!

More stories of the sort you like; more,

probably, by the author of this one; more than 500 titles all told by writers of world-wide reputation, in the Authors' Alphabetical List which you will find on the *reverse side* of the wrapper of this book. Look it over before you lay it aside. There are books here you are sure to want—some, possibly, that you have *always* wanted.

It is a *selected* list; every book in it has achieved a certain measure of *success*.

The Grosset & Dunlap list is not only the greatest Index of Good Fiction available, it represents in addition a generally accepted Standard of Value. It will pay you to

Look on the Other Side of the Wrapper!

In case the wrapper is lost write to the publishers for a complete catalog

DETECTIVE STORIES BY J. S. FLETCHER

May be had wherever books are sold. Ask for Grosset & Dunlap's list

THE SECRET OF THE BARBICAN

THE ANNEXATION SOCIETY

THE WOLVES AND THE LAMB

GREEN INK

THE KING versus WARGRAVE

THE LOST MR. LINTHWAITE

THE MILL OF MANY WINDOWS

THE HEAVEN-KISSED HILL

THE MIDDLE TEMPLE MURDER

RAVENSDENE COURT

THE RAYNER-SLADE AMALGAMATION

THE SAFETY PIN

THE SECRET WAY

THE VALLEY OF HEADSTRONG MEN

Ask for Complete free list of G. & D. Popular Copyrighted Fiction

GROSSET & DUNLAP, *Publishers*, NEW YORK

Typographical errors corrected by the etext transcriber:

in a very simply way=> in a very simple way {pg 68}

“The Westminister Gazette,” 25 September.=> “The Westminster Gazette,”

25 September. {pg 165}

It have told him=> She must have told him {pg 169}

from md sight=> from my sight {pg}184

Goldaming=> Godalming {pg 226}

I I did not want to hinder him=> I did not want to hinder him {pg 267}

They lay in a sort of or-orderly=> They lay in a sort of orderly {pg 279}

Translyvania=> Transylvania {pg 294}

this mrrning from Dardanelles=> this morning from Dardanelles {pg 313}

End of the Project Gutenberg EBook of Dracula, by Bram Stoker

*** END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK DRACULA ***

***** This file should be named 345-h.htm or 345-h.zip *****

This and all associated files of various formats will be found in:

http://www.gutenberg.org/3/4/345/

Produced by Chuck Greif and the Online Distributed

Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net (This file was

produced from images generously made available by The

Internet Archive)

Updated editions will replace the previous one--the old editions

will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no

one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation

(and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without

permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules,

set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to

copying and distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works to

protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG-tm concept and trademark. Project

Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you

charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you

do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the

rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose

such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and

research. They may be modified and printed and given away--you may do

practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is

subject to the trademark license, especially commercial

redistribution.

*** START: FULL LICENSE ***

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting the free

distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work

(or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project

Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project

Gutenberg-tm License (available with this file or online at

http://gutenberg.org/license).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to

and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property

(trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all

the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy

all copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in your possession.

If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the

terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or

entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be

used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few

things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works

even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See

paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement

and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation"

or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the

collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an

individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are

located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from

copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative

works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg

are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project

Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by

freely sharing Project Gutenberg-tm works in compliance with the terms of

this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg-tm name associated with

the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by

keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project

Gutenberg-tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern

what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in

a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check

the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement

before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or

creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project

Gutenberg-tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning

the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United

States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate

access to, the full Project Gutenberg-tm License must appear prominently

whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg-tm work (any work on which the

phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project

Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed,

copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with

almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or

re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included

with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org/license

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is derived

from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is

posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied

and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees

or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work

with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the

work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1

through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the

Project Gutenberg-tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or

1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is posted

with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution

must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional

terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked

to the Project Gutenberg-tm License for all works posted with the

permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this

work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg-tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this

electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without

prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with

active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project

Gutenberg-tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary,

compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any

word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or

distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg-tm work in a format other than

"Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version

posted on the official Project Gutenberg-tm web site (www.gutenberg.org),

you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a

copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon

request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other

form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying,

performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg-tm works

unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing

access to or distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works provided

that

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from

the use of Project Gutenberg-tm works calculated using the method

you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is

owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, but he

has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the

Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments

must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you

prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax

returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and

sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the

address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to

the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies

you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he

does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License. You must require such a user to return or

destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium

and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of

Project Gutenberg-tm works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any

money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the

electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days

of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free

distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set

forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from

both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael

Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark. Contact the

Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable

effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread

public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg-tm

collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain

"Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or

corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual

property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a

computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by

your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right

of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project

Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project

Gutenberg-tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all

liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal

fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT

LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE

PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE

TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE

LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR

INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH

DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a

defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can

receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a

written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you

received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with

your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with

the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a

refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity

providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to

receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy

is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further

opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth

in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS' WITH NO OTHER

WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO

WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied

warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages.

If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the

law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be

interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by

the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any

provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the

trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone

providing copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in accordance

with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production,

promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works,

harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees,

that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg-tm

work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any

Project Gutenberg-tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg-tm

Project Gutenberg-tm is synonymous with the free distribution of

electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers

including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists

because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from

people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the

assistance they need, are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg-tm's

goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg-tm collection will

remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project

Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure

and permanent future for Project Gutenberg-tm and future generations.

To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4

and the Foundation web page at http://www.pglaf.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive

Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit

501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the

state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal

Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification

number is 64-6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at

http://pglaf.org/fundraising. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg

Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent

permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S.

Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered

throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at

809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887, email

business@pglaf.org. Email contact links and up to date contact

information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official

page at http://pglaf.org

For additional contact information:

Dr. Gregory B. Newby

Chief Executive and Director

gbnewby@pglaf.org

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg

Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg-tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide

spread public support and donations to carry out its mission of

increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be

freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest

array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations

($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt

status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating

charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United

States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a

considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up

with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations

where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To

SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any

particular state visit http://pglaf.org

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we

have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition

against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who

approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make

any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from

outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation

methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other

ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations.

To donate, please visit: http://pglaf.org/donate

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works.

Professor Michael S. Hart is the originator of the Project Gutenberg-tm

concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared

with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project

Gutenberg-tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks are often created from several printed

editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S.

unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily

keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

http://www.gutenberg.org

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg-tm,

including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary

Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to

subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.

Document Outline

- D R A C U L A
  - CONTENTS
- D R A C U L A
  - CHAPTER I JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL
  - CHAPTER II JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL—continued
  - CHAPTER III JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL—continued
  - CHAPTER IV JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL—continued
  - CHAPTER V
  - CHAPTER VI MINA MURRAY’S JOURNAL
  - CHAPTER VII CUTTING FROM “THE DAILYGRAPH,” 8 AUGUST
  - CHAPTER VIII MINA MURRAY’S JOURNAL
  - CHAPTER IX
  - CHAPTER X
  - CHAPTER XI
  - CHAPTER XII DR. SEWARD’S DIARY
  - CHAPTER XIII DR. SEWARD’S DIARY—continued.
  - CHAPTER XIV MINA HARKER’S JOURNAL
  - CHAPTER XV DR. SEWARD’S DIARY—continued.
  - CHAPTER XVI DR. SEWARD’S DIARY—continued
  - CHAPTER XVII DR. SEWARD’S DIARY—continued
  - CHAPTER XVIII DR. SEWARD’S DIARY
  - CHAPTER XIX JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL
  - CHAPTER XX JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL
  - CHAPTER XXI DR. SEWARD’S DIARY
  - CHAPTER XXII JONATHAN HARKER’S JOURNAL
  - CHAPTER XXIII DR. SEWARD’S DIARY

- CHAPTER XXIV DR. SEWARD’S PHONOGRAPH DIARY, SPOKEN BY VAN HELSING
- CHAPTER XXV DR. SEWARD’S DIARY
- CHAPTER XXVI DR. SEWARD’S DIARY
- CHAPTER XXVII MINA HARKER’S JOURNAL
- NOTE